

1 **EXHIBITS**

2 Exhibit	3 Page No(s).
4 Exhibit A	1-2
5 Exhibit B	3-4
6 Exhibit C	5-51
7 Exhibit D	52-89
8 Exhibit E	90-128

EXHIBIT A



BIOSEARCH TECHNOLOGIES, INC. COMPREHENSIVE LIMITED USE AGREEMENT

Black Hole Quencher®, CAL Fluor® & Quasar Dyes^{®1} Limited Use Agreement

The BHQ®, CAL Fluor® and Quasar® dyes and products incorporating them are to be used for research & development purposes only and may not be used for any commercial, clinical, *in vitro* diagnostic or other use.

Products incorporating these dyes are subject to the proprietary world-wide rights of Biosearch Technologies, Inc. and are made and sold under license from Biosearch Technologies, Inc. There is no implied license for commercial use with respect to the Products and a license must be obtained directly from Biosearch Technologies, Inc. with respect to any proposed commercial use of the Products.

"Commercial Use" includes but is not limited to the sale, lease, license or other transfer of the products or any material derived there from; the sale, lease, license or other grant of rights to use the Products or any material derived or produced from them, or the use of the Products to perform services for a fee for third parties (including fee for service or contract research). Please forward all licensing inquires to licensing@biosearchtech.com.

BHQplus™ Probes² Limited Use Agreement

This product is covered by patents or patents pending owned by Biosearch Technologies, Inc. and Isis Pharmaceuticals, Inc. ("Isis"). Purchase of this product includes a limited license to use this product solely for internal research and development. This license specifically excludes (and you have no right to use this product for):

- (a) therapeutic or diagnostic applications (including products or services that incorporate this product),
- (b) any *in vivo* toxicity/safety study in support of an investigational new drug application (or foreign counterpart),
- (c) resale (including sale of any products or services that incorporate this product), or
- (d) gene functionalization activities (including products or services that incorporate data derived from gene functionalization activities) if such activities have commercial application, any and all of which require a separate license from Isis.

NEITHER THIS PRODUCT NOR ANY PRODUCT CREATED THROUGH ITS USE MAY BE USED IN HUMAN CLINICAL TRIALS.

In the event you have separate agreements with Isis Pharmaceuticals regarding this product which explicitly state that the foregoing is not applicable to you, your use of this product will be governed by the terms of such agreements. In no event does the limited license included with the purchase of this product expand or alter the scope of the license granted pursuant to such agreement.

Biosearch Oligonucleotide Products for Non-Coding Analysis Limited Use Agreement

BTI has been granted a worldwide license to manufacture and distribute oligos, probes and primers for non-commercial research use only (RUO) covered under patents owned by Genetic Technologies Limited (GTG). The GTG patents³ pertain to methods and processes relating to non-coding regions of all genomes. The GTG license includes Single Nucleotide Polymorphisms (SNP) genotyping and allelic discrimination for RUO.

All Oligonucleotide Products bought from Biosearch (or a Biosearch agent) and used for analysis of non-coding regions, are covered under the GTG non-coding DNA IP for non-commercial research use only (RUO). These Products may not be used for any commercial, clinical, *in vitro* diagnostic or any other non-RUO use. For Product use outside the RUO field, a license must be obtained directly from Genetic Technologies Limited.

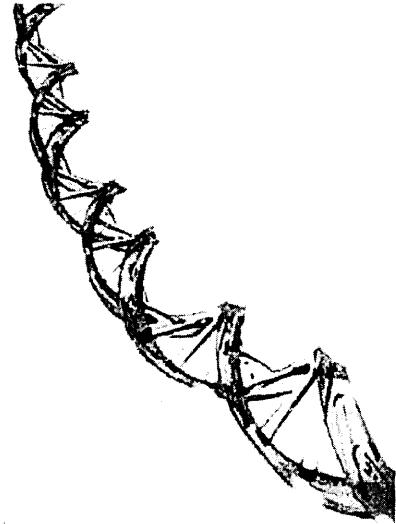
¹ "Black Hole Quencher", "BHQ", "CAL Fluor" and "Quasar" are fully registered trademarks of Biosearch Technologies, Inc., Novato, California. The BHQ technology is protected by U.S. Patent No. 7,019,129. The CAL Fluor and Quasar technologies are covered by U.S. Patent Applications No. US2005/0170363A1 and US2005/0214834A1 respectively.

² BHQplus™ Probes are sold for research use only under agreement with Isis Pharmaceuticals, Inc. of Carlsbad, CA.

³ The Non-Coding Patents include: US Patent No. 5,789,568; US Patent No. 5,192,659; US Patent No. 5,612,179; US Patent No. 5,851,762; and Foreign counterparts.

EXHIBIT B

Oligonucleotides



Influenza A (H1N1) Primer and Probe Set (Cat. no. A11400)

The Influenza A (H1N1) Primer and Probe Set contains the 12 primers and probes listed below. These primers and probes match the WHO/CDC Protocol titled "CDC protocol of realtime RTPCR for swine influenza A(H1N1)" and "28 April 2009 revision 1 (30 April 2009)".

Primers and probes	Sequence (5' → 3')	Concentration	Quantity
InfA Forward	GAC CRA TCC TGT CAC CTC TGA C	40 µM	10 nmol
InfA Reverse	AGG GCA TTG TGG ACA AAK CGT CTA	40 µM	10 nmol
InfA Probe ¹	TGC AGT CCT CGC TCA CTG GGC ACG	10 µM	2.5 nmol
SW InfA Forward	GCA CGG TCA GCA CTT ATY CTR AG	40 µM	10 nmol
SW InfA Reverse	GTG RGC TGG GTT TTC ATT TGG TC	40 µM	10 nmol
SW InfA Probe ²	CYA CTG CAA GCC CA*T ACA CAC AAG CAG GCA	10 µM	2.5 nmol
SW H1 Forward	GTG CTA TAA ACA CCA GCC TYC CA	40 µM	10 nmol
SW H1 Reverse	CGG GAT ATT CCT TAA TCC TGT RGC	40 µM	10 nmol
SW H1 Probe ²	CA GAA TAT ACA *T*CC RGT CAC AAT TGG ARA A	10 µM	2.5 nmol
RnaseP Forward	AGA TTT GGA CCT GCG AGC G	40 µM	10 nmol
RnaseP Reverse	GAG CGG CTG TCT CCA CAA GT	40 µM	10 nmol
RnaseP Probe ¹	TTC TGA CCT GAA GGC TCT GCG CG	10 µM	2.5 nmol

1. TaqMan® probes are labeled at the 5'-end with the reporter molecule 6-carboxyfluorescein (FAM) and with the quencher Blackhole Quencher (BHQ1) (Bioscience Technologies, Inc., Novato, CA) at the 3'-end.

2. TaqMan® probes are labeled at the 5'-end with the reporter molecule 6-carboxyfluorescein (FAM) and quenched internally at a modified T-residue with BHQ1, with a modified 3'-end to prevent probe extension by Taq polymerase.

This product is not for sale or use in the United States.

TaqMan® is a registered trademark owned by Roche and licensed exclusively to Applied Biosystems in the research related fields.

Practice of the patented 5' Nuclease Process requires a license from Applied Biosystems. The purchase of the Influenza A (H1N1) Primer and Probe Set includes an immunity from suit under patents specified in the product insert to use only the amount purchased for the purchaser's own internal research when used with the separate purchase of an Authorized 5' Nuclease Core Kit. No other patent rights are conveyed expressly, by implication, or by estoppel. For further information on purchasing licenses contact the Director of Licensing, Applied Biosystems, 850 Lincoln Centre Drive, Foster City, California 94404, USA.

NOTICE TO PURCHASER: LIMITED LICENSE

A license to perform the patented 5' Nuclease Process for research is obtained by the purchase of (i) both Licensed Probe and Authorized 5' Nuclease Core Kit, (ii) a Licensed 5' Nuclease Kit, or (iii) license rights from Applied Biosystems.

The Influenza A (H1N1) Primer and Probes Set contains Licensed Probe. Use of this product is covered by one or more of the following US patents and corresponding patent claims outside the US: 5,538,848, 5,723,591, 5,876,930, 6,030,787, 6,258,569, and 5,804,375 (claims 1-12 only). The purchase of this product includes a limited, non-transferable immunity from suit under the foregoing patent claims for using only this amount of product for the purchaser's own internal research. The right to use this product in the 5' Nuclease Process under the applicable claims of US Patents Nos. 5,210,015 and 5,487,972, and corresponding patent claims outside the United States, can be obtained through purchase of an Authorized 5' Nuclease Core Kit. Except under separate license rights available from Applied Biosystems, no right under any other patent claim, or to perform commercial services of any kind, including without limitation reporting the results of purchaser's activities for a fee or other commercial consideration, or to sublicense, repackage with other products, or resell in any form, is conveyed expressly, by implication, or by estoppel. This product is for research use only. Diagnostic uses under Roche patents require a separate license from Roche. Further information on purchasing licenses may be obtained from the Director of Licensing, Applied Biosystems, 850 Lincoln Centre Drive, Foster City, California 94404, USA.



www.invitrogen.com

For research use only. Not intended for any animal or human therapeutic or diagnostic use, unless otherwise stated.

© 2009 Life Technologies Corporation. All rights reserved. The trademarks mentioned herein are the property of Life Technologies Corporation or their respective owners. TaqMan is a registered trademark of Roche Molecular Systems, Inc. These products may be covered by one or more Limited Use Label Licenses (see Invitrogen catalog or www.invitrogen.com). By use of these products you accept the terms and conditions of all applicable Limited Use Label Licenses. F-085513 0509

EXHIBIT C



US007019129B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Cook et al.

(10) **Patent No.:** US 7,019,129 B1
(45) **Date of Patent:** Mar. 28, 2006

(54) **DARK QUENCHERS FOR
DONOR-ACCEPTOR ENERGY TRANSFER**

(75) Inventors: **Ronald M. Cook**, Novato, CA (US);
Matt Lytle, Point Reyes Station, CA
(US); **Daren Dick**, San Geronimo, CA
(US)

(73) Assignee: **Bioscience Technologies, Inc.**, Novato,
CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this
patent is extended or adjusted under 35
U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: 09/567,863

(22) Filed: May 9, 2000

(51) **Int. Cl.**

C07H 19/04 (2006.01)
C12Q 1/68 (2006.01)
C12M 3/00 (2006.01)
C07K 1/00 (2006.01)

(52) U.S. Cl. **536/26.6**; 435/4; 435/5;
435/6; 435/287.2; 436/501; 530/350

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 435/6;
536/26.6; 534/727

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,523,936 A 8/1970 Toji
4,482,490 A * 11/1984 Imahori et al. 534/797
5,312,738 A 5/1994 Hamill et al. 435/75
5,401,847 A 3/1995 Glazer et al.
5,612,221 A 3/1997 Simons et al.
6,037,130 A 3/2000 Tyagi
6,117,986 A * 9/2000 Nardone et al. 534/727
6,790,945 B1 * 9/2004 Lukhtanov et al. 536/23.1

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0 008 029 A 2/1980
EP 0 009 191 A 4/1980

EP	0 601 889 A2	6/1994
EP	0 909 823 A2	4/1999
FR	1544951	11/1968
JP	5-142600	6/1993
JP	6-258676	9/1994
WO	WO 90/03446	4/1990
WO	WO 9502848 A1	1/1995
WO	WO 98/10096 A1	3/1998
WO	WO 00 05411 A	2/2000

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hodgkiss et al. Biochemical Pharmacology, vol. 41, No. 4, pp. 533-541, 1991 *

Ediss et al. International Journal of Applied Radiation and Isotopes 1982, 33(4) pp. 296-297, Abstract only.*

Usdenky . De la Cellule au Cerveau: le Cystosquelette, Communication Intra- et Inter-Cellulaire, le Systeme Nerveux Central, Les Houches, [Ecole d'Ete de Physique Theorique] 65th, Les Houches, Fr. Meeting Dates Jul. 8-26, 1996.*

Endo et al. (Chemical Abstract vol. 64, 1228e, 1966).*

Tyagi, et al., "Molecular beacons: Probes that fluoresce upon hybridization," Nature Biotechnology, 14:303-308 (Mar. 1996).

Bumelis, et al., DATABASE CA 'Online!, Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 85:125772 XP002243719 (Abstract only) (1974).

(Continued)

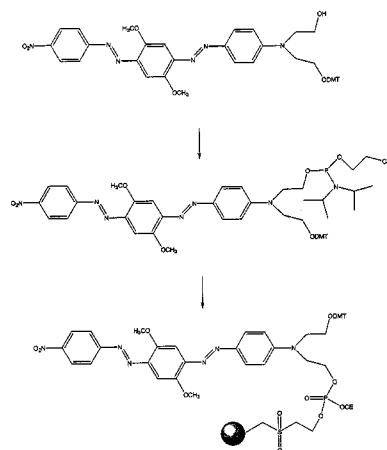
Primary Examiner—Jezia Riley

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention provides a family of dark quenchers, termed Black Hole Quenchers ("BHQS"), that are efficient quenchers of excited state energy but which are themselves substantially non-fluorescent. Also provided are methods of using the BHQS, probes incorporating the BHQS and methods of using the probes.

35 Claims, 9 Drawing Sheets



US 7,019,129 B1

Page 2

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Gonzalez-Gomez, et al., *DATABASE CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S. ; Database accession No. 98:209380 XP002243718 (Abstract only) (1983).
Jerzy, et al., *DATABASE CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S. ; Database accession No. 110:136859 XP002243716 (Abstract only) (1988).
Juarranz, et al., *DATABASE CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database acces-

sion No. 105:38550 XP002243717 (Abstract only) (1986).
Kazimierz, *DATABASE CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S. ; Database accession No. 131:287725 XP002243715 (Abstract only) (1999).

Riccardo, et al., *DATABASE CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 122:215261 XP002243714 (Abstract only) (1995).

* cited by examiner

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 1 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

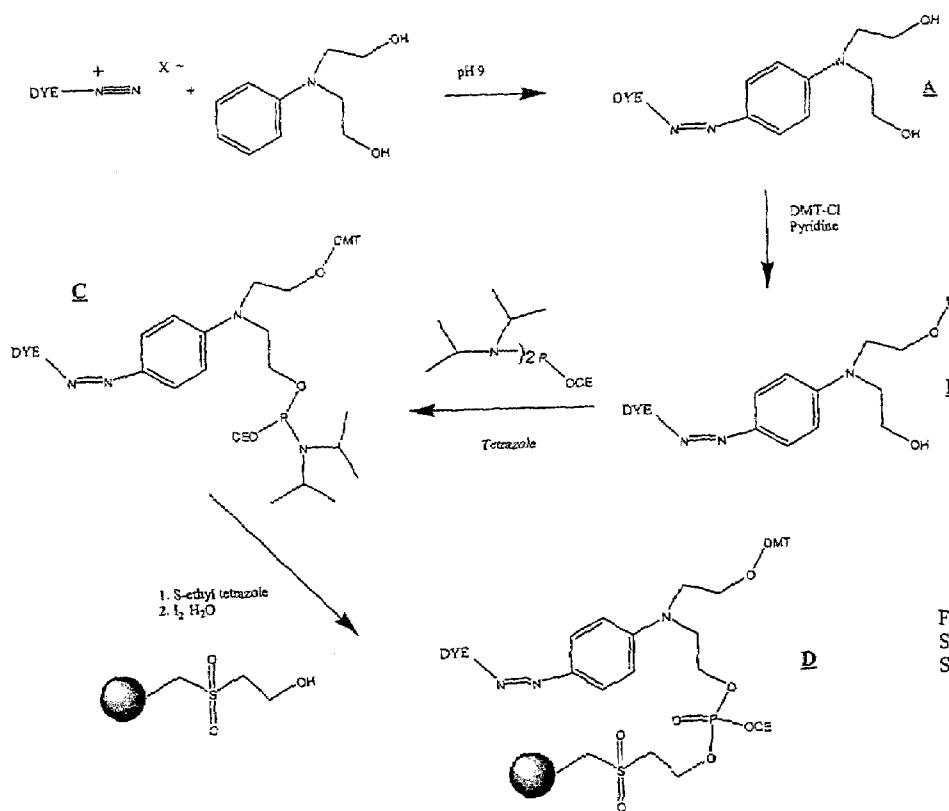


Figure 1.
Synthesis
Schematic

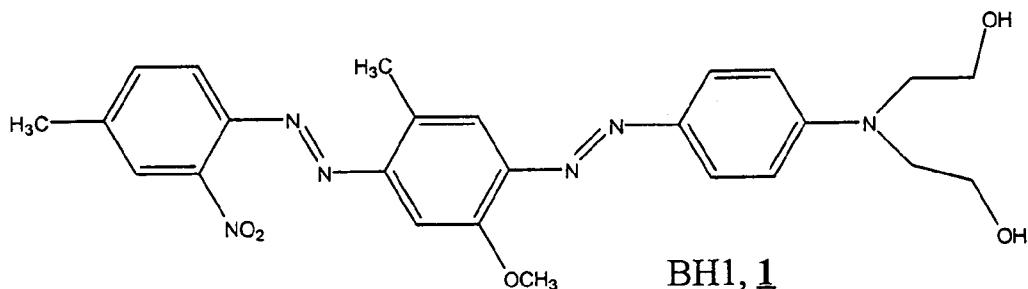
FIG. 1

U.S. Patent

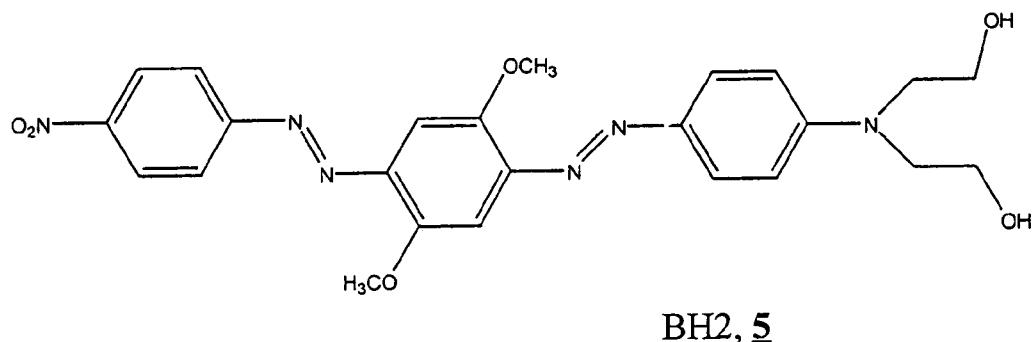
Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 2 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1



BH1, 1



BH2, 5

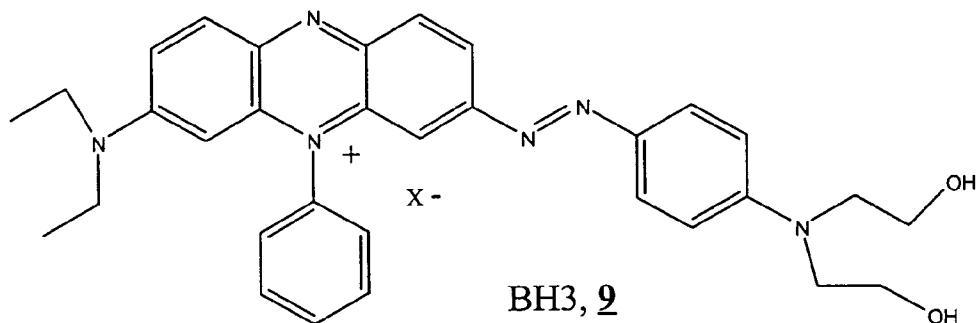


FIG. 2

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 3 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

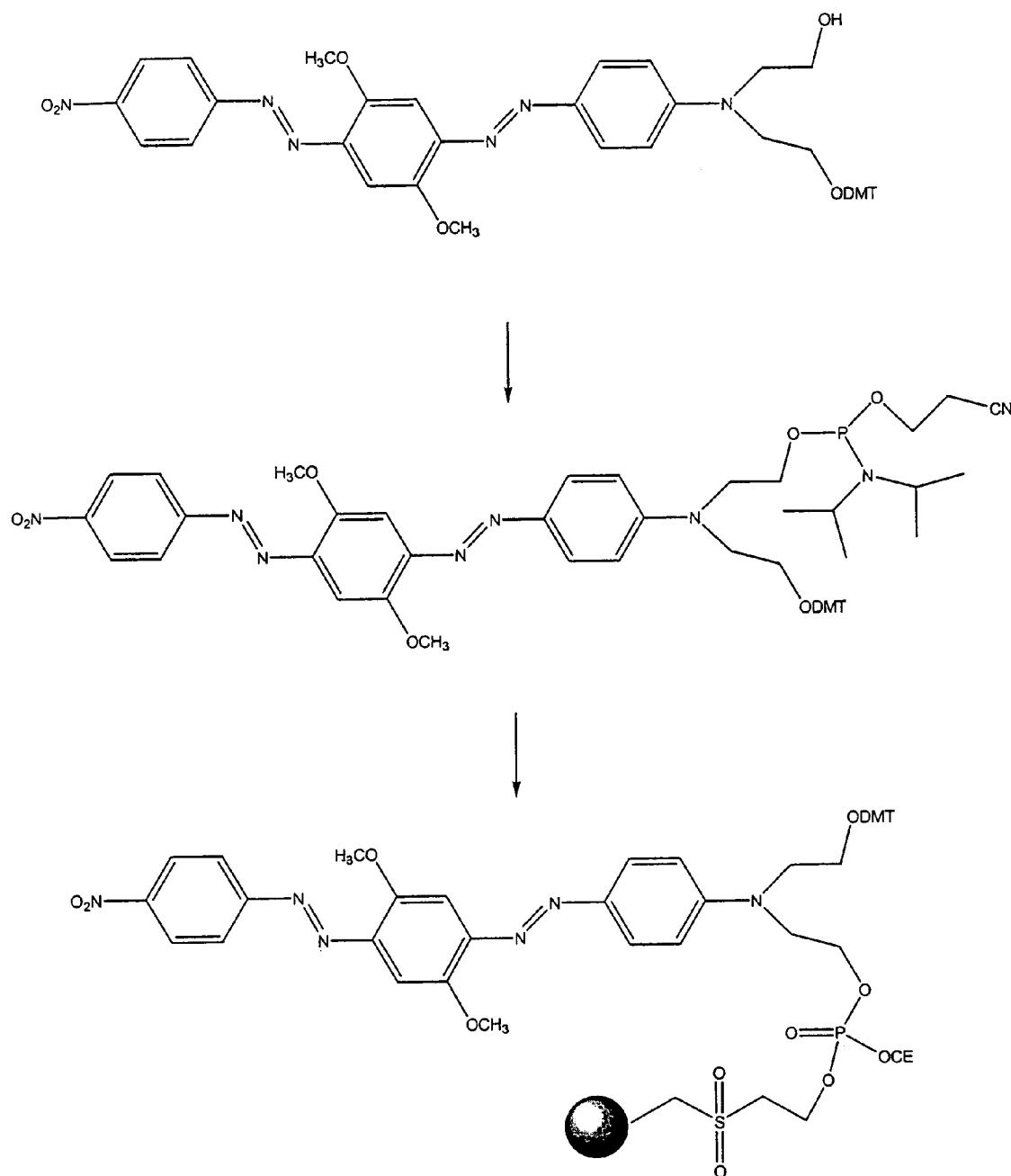


FIG. 3

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 4 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

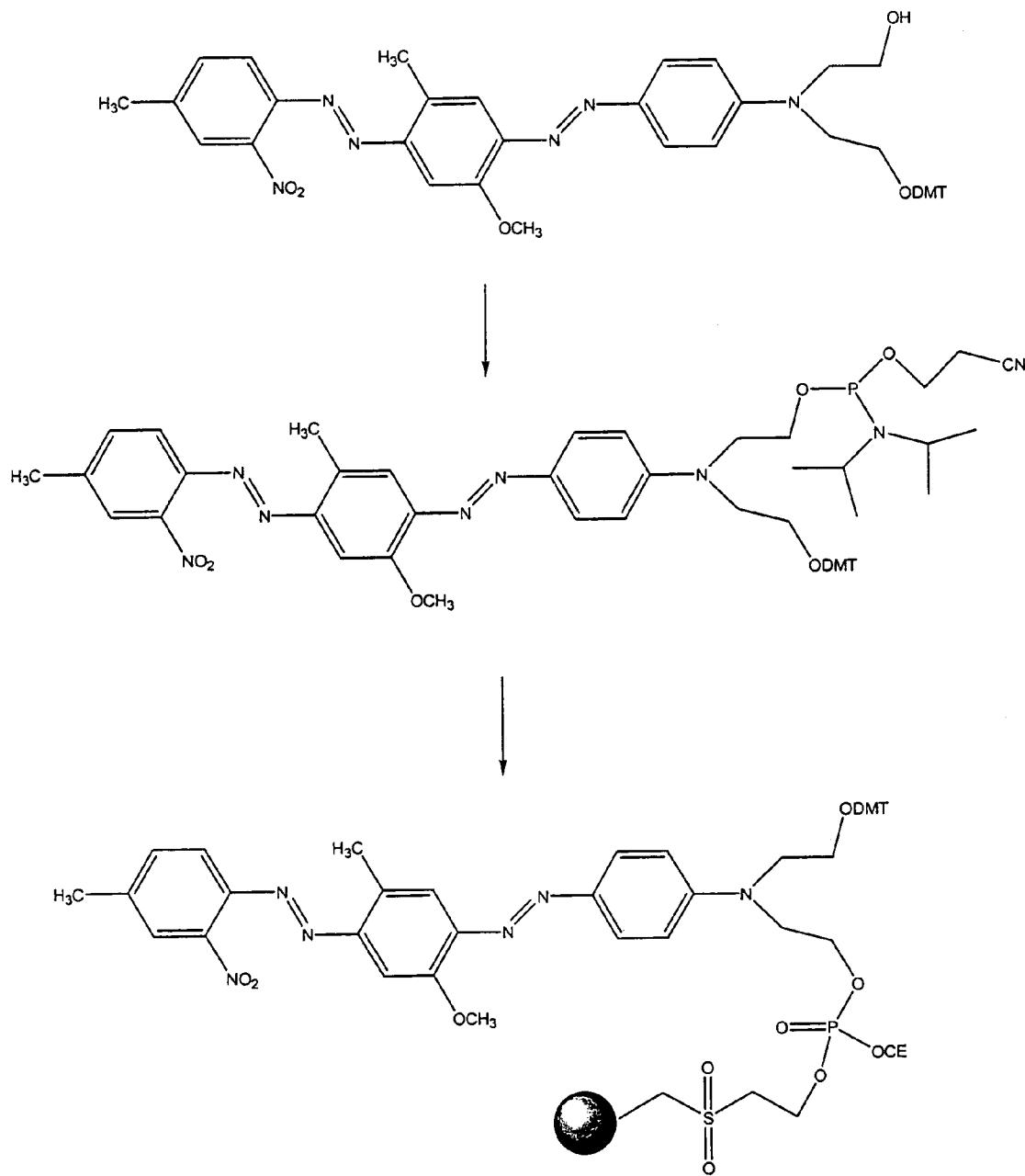


FIG. 4

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 5 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

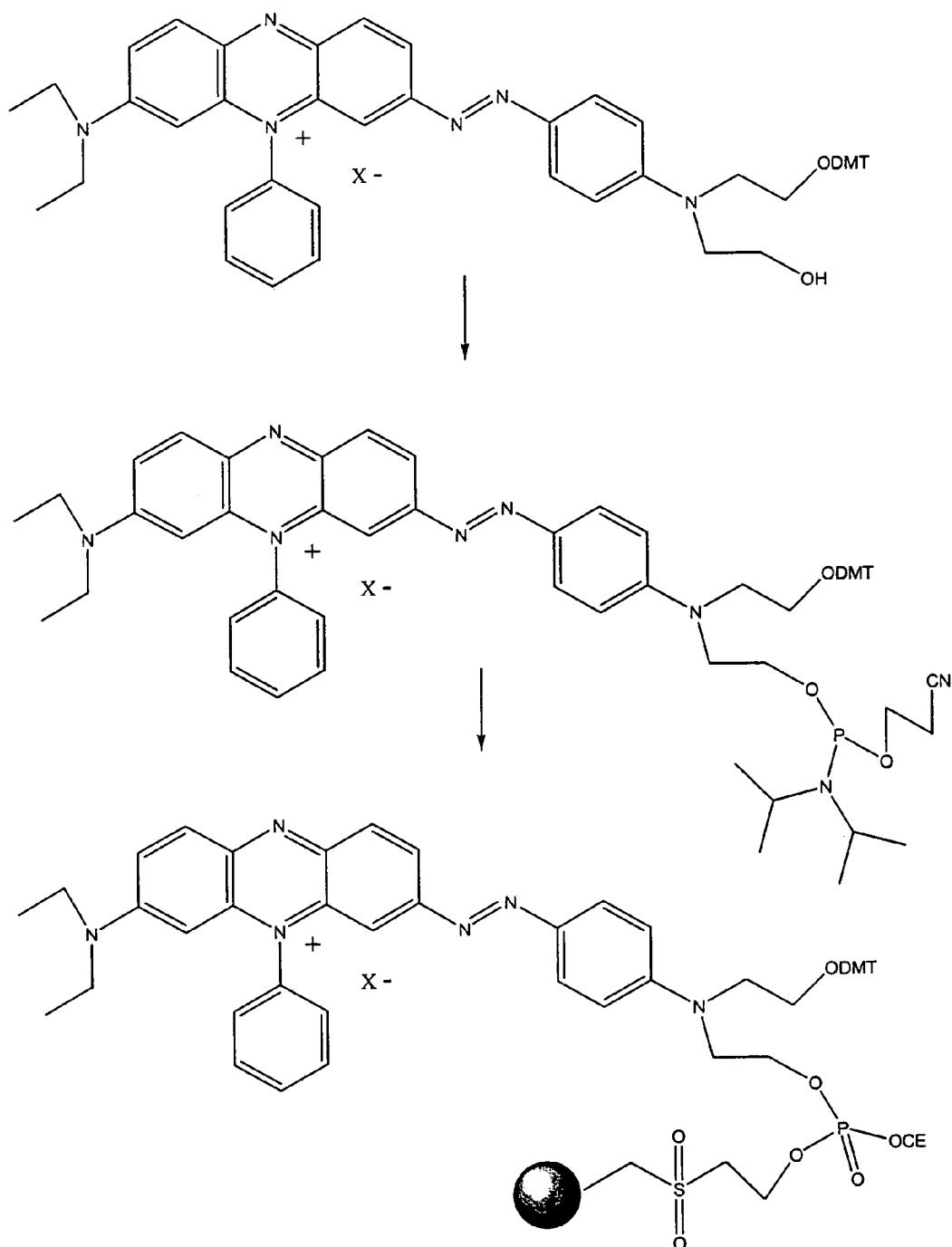


FIG. 5

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 6 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

BH1

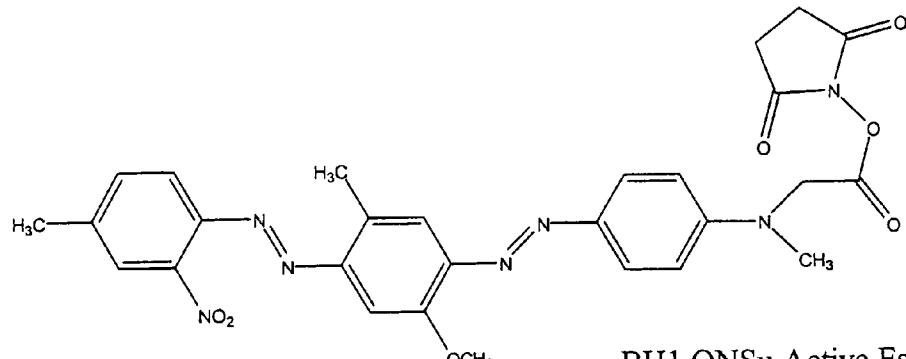
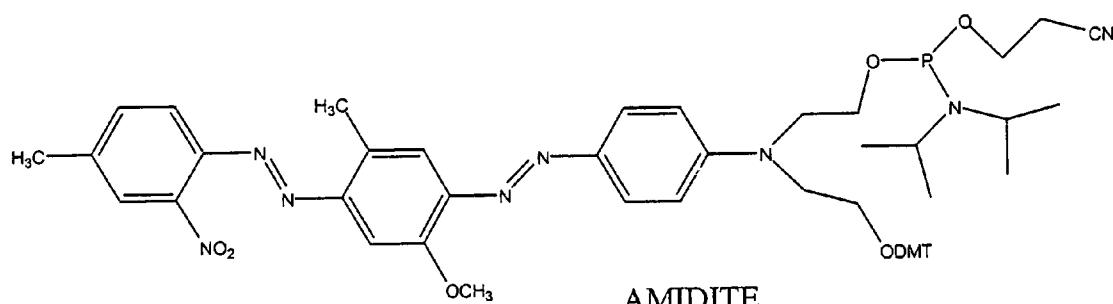
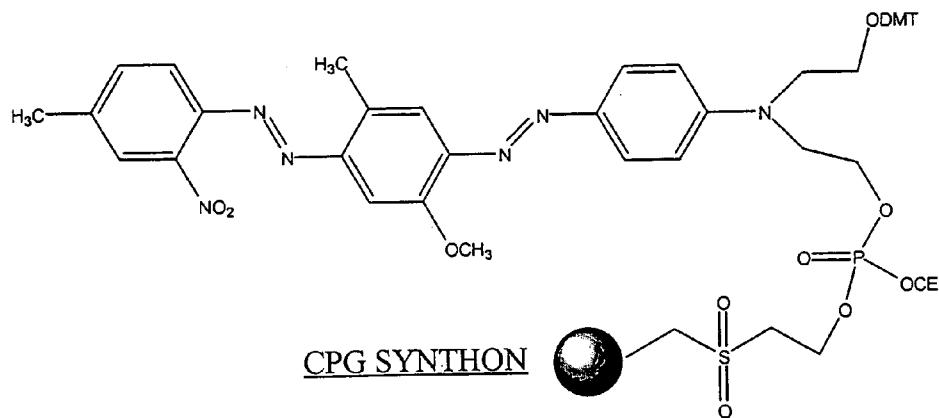
BH1 ONSu Active EsterAMIDITE

FIG. 6

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 7 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

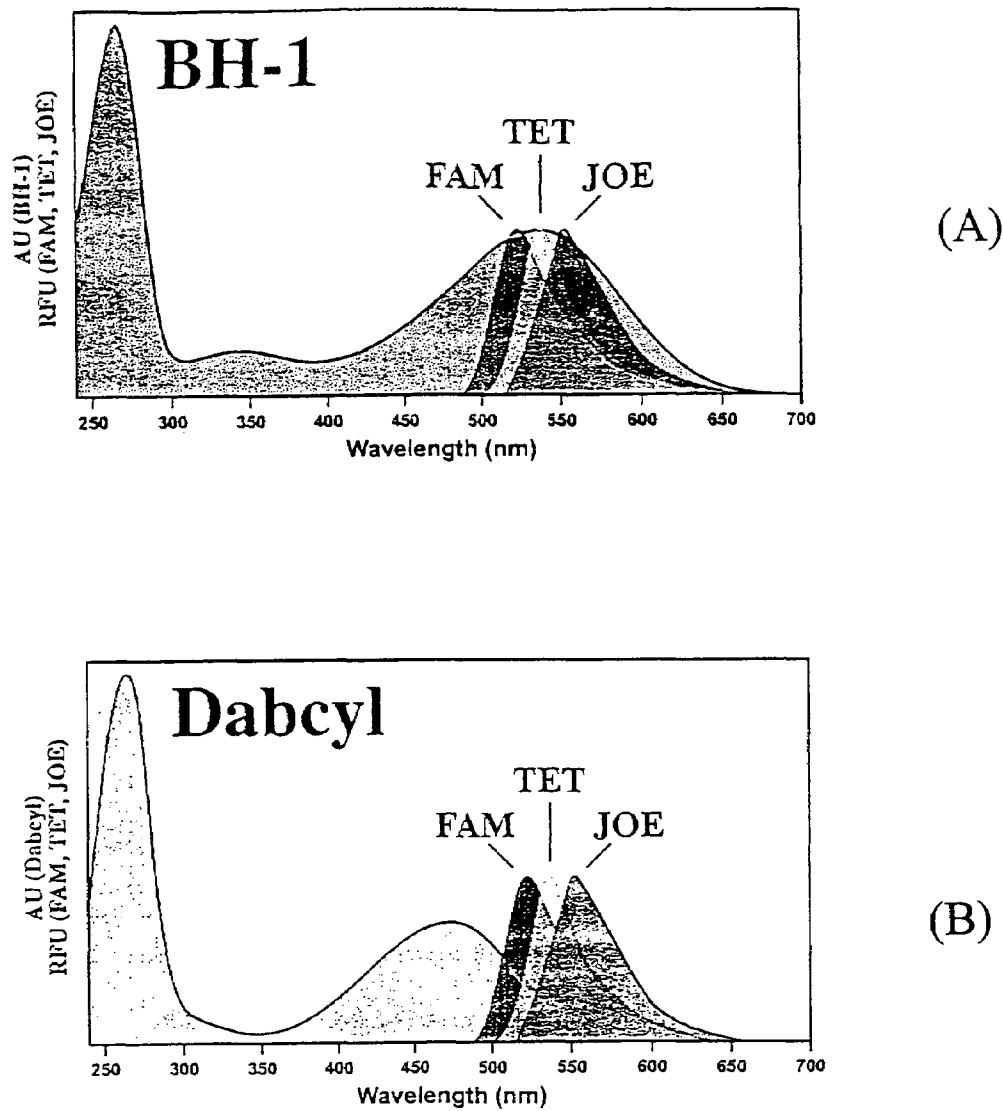


FIG. 7

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 8 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

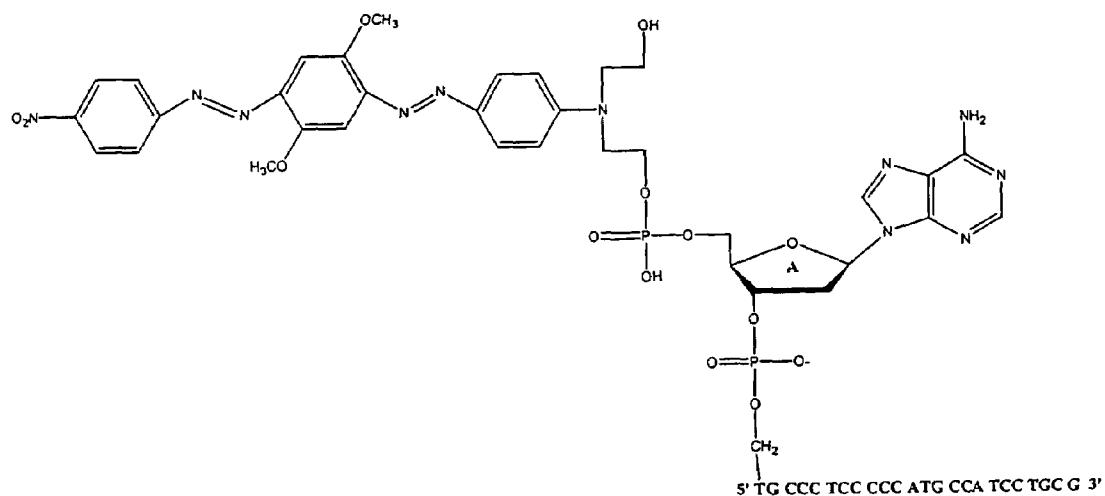
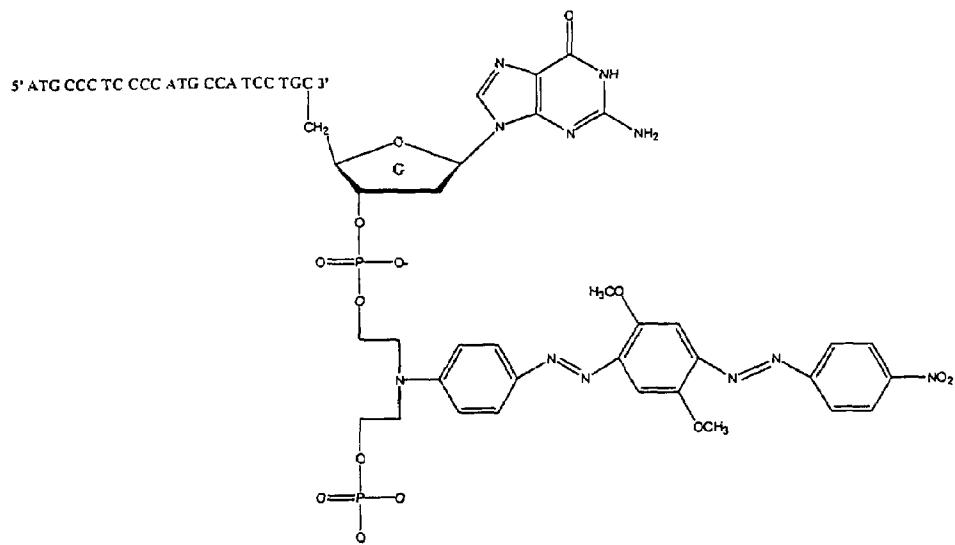


FIG. 8

U.S. Patent

Mar. 28, 2006

Sheet 9 of 9

US 7,019,129 B1

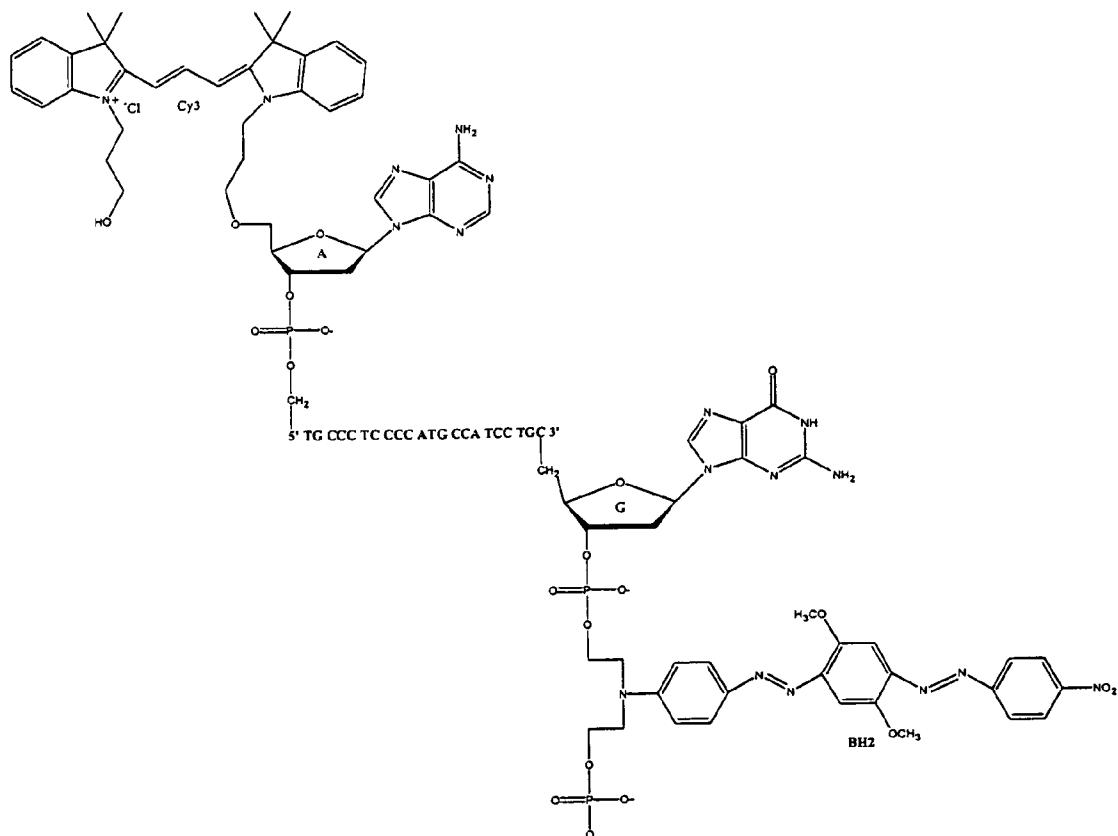


FIG. 8 (continued)

US 7,019,129 B1

1

**DARK QUENCHERS FOR
DONOR-ACCEPTOR ENERGY TRANSFER**

STATEMENT OF GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

This invention was made with government support under Grant Nos. IR43GM60848-01 and 2R44GM60848-02 awarded by the National Institutes of Health. The government has certain rights in the invention.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

There is a continuous and expanding need for rapid, highly specific methods of detecting and quantifying chemical, biochemical and biological substances as analytes in research and diagnostic mixtures. Of particular value are methods for measuring small quantities of nucleic acids, peptides, pharmaceuticals, metabolites, microorganisms and other materials of diagnostic value. Examples of such materials include narcotics and poisons, drugs administered for therapeutic purposes, hormones, pathogenic microorganisms and viruses, antibodies, and enzymes and nucleic acids, particularly those implicated in disease states.

The presence of a particular analyte can often be determined by binding methods that exploit the high degree of specificity, which characterizes many biochemical and biological systems. Frequently used methods are based on, for example, antigen-antibody systems, nucleic acid hybridization techniques, and protein-ligand systems. In these methods, the existence of a complex of diagnostic value is typically indicated by the presence or absence of an observable "label" which has been attached to one or more of the interacting materials. The specific labeling method chosen often dictates the usefulness and versatility of a particular system for detecting an analyte of interest. Preferred labels are inexpensive, safe, and capable of being attached efficiently to a wide variety of chemical, biochemical, and biological materials without significantly altering the important binding characteristics of those materials. The label should give a highly characteristic signal, and should be rarely, and preferably never, found in nature. The label should be stable and detectable in aqueous systems over periods of time ranging up to months. Detection of the label is preferably rapid, sensitive, and reproducible without the need for expensive, specialized facilities or the need for special precautions to protect personnel. Quantification of the label is preferably relatively independent of variables such as temperature and the composition of the mixture to be assayed.

A wide variety of labels have been developed, each with particular advantages and disadvantages. For example, radioactive labels are quite versatile, and can be detected at very low concentrations, such labels are, however, expensive, hazardous, and their use requires sophisticated equipment and trained personnel. Thus, there is wide interest in non-radioactive labels, particularly in labels that are observable by spectrophotometric, spin resonance, and luminescence techniques, and reactive materials, such as enzymes that produce such molecules.

Labels that are detectable using fluorescence spectroscopy are of particular interest, because of the large number of such labels that are known in the art. Moreover, the literature is replete with syntheses of fluorescent labels that are derivatized to allow their facile attachment to other molecules, and many such fluorescent labels are commercially available.

2

In addition to being directly detected, many fluorescent labels operate to quench the fluorescence of an adjacent second fluorescent label. Because of its dependence on the distance and the magnitude of the interaction between the quencher and the fluorophore, the quenching of a fluorescent species provides a sensitive probe of molecular conformation and binding, or other, interactions. An excellent example of the use of fluorescent reporter quencher pairs is found in the detection and analysis of nucleic acids.

Fluorescent nucleic acid probes are important tools for genetic analysis, in both genomic research and development, and in clinical medicine. As information from the Human Genome Project accumulates, the level of genetic interrogation mediated by fluorescent probes will expand enormously. One particularly useful class of fluorescent probes includes self-quenching probes, also known as fluorescence energy transfer probes, or FET probes. The design of different probes using this motif may vary in detail. In an exemplary FET probe, both a fluorophore and a quencher are tethered to nucleic acid. The probe is configured such that the fluorophore is proximate to the quencher and the probe produces a signal only as a result of its hybridization to an intended target. Despite the limited availability of FET probes, techniques incorporating their use are rapidly displacing alternative methods.

Probes containing a fluorophore-quencher pair have been developed for nucleic acid hybridization assays where the probe forms a hairpin structure, i.e., where the probe hybridizes to itself to form a loop such that the quencher molecule is brought into proximity with the reporter molecule in the absence of a complementary nucleic acid sequence to prevent the formation of the hairpin structure (see, for example, WO 90/03446; European Patent Application No. 0 601 889 A2). When a complementary target sequence is present, hybridization of the probe to the complementary target sequence disrupts the hairpin structure and causes the probe to adopt a conformation where the quencher molecule is no longer close enough to the reporter molecule to quench the reporter molecule. As a result, the probes provide an increased fluorescence signal when hybridized to a target sequence than when they are unhybridized.

Assays have also been developed for detecting a selected nucleic acid sequence and for identifying the presence of a hairpin structure using two separate probes, one containing a reporter molecule and the other a quencher molecule (see, Meringue, et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 22: 920-928 (1994)). In these assays, the fluorescence signal of the reporter molecule decreases when hybridized to the target sequence due to the quencher molecule being brought into proximity with the reporter molecule.

One particularly important application for probes including a reporter quencher molecule pair is their use in nucleic acid amplification reactions, such as polymerase chain reactions (PCR), to detect the presence and amplification of a target nucleic acid sequence. In general, nucleic acid amplification techniques have opened broad new approaches to genetic testing and DNA analysis (see, for example, Arnheim et al. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 61: 131-156 (1992)). PCR, in particular, has become a research tool of major importance with applications in, for example, cloning, analysis of genetic expression, DNA sequencing, genetic mapping and drug discovery (see, Arnheim et al., *supra*; Gilliland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87: 2725-2729 (1990); Bevan et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 1: 222-228 (1992); Green et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 1: 77-90 (1991); Blackwell et al., *Science*, 250: 1104-1110 (1990)).

US 7,019,129 B1

3

Commonly used methods for detecting nucleic acid amplification products require that the amplified product be separated from unreacted primers. This is typically achieved either through the use of gel electrophoresis, which separates the amplification product from the primers on the basis of a size differential, or through the immobilization of the product, allowing free primer to be washed away. However, a number of methods for monitoring the amplification process without prior separation of primer have been described. All of them are based on FET, and none of them detect the amplified product directly. Instead, the methods detect some event related to amplification. For that reason, they are accompanied by problems of high background, and are not quantitative, as discussed below.

One method, described in Wang et al. (U.S. Pat. No. 5,348,853; and *Anal. Chem.*, 67: 1197–1203 (1995)), uses an energy transfer system in which energy transfer occurs between two fluorophores on the probe. In this method, detection of the amplified molecule takes place in the amplification reaction vessel, without the need for a separation step. This method, however, does not detect the amplified product, but instead detects the dissociation of primer from the “energy-sink” nucleic acid. Thus, this method is dependent on detection of a decrease in emissions; a significant portion of labeled primer must be utilized in order to achieve a reliable difference between the signals before and after the reaction.

A second method detecting an amplification product without prior separation of primer and product is the 5'-nuclease PCR assay (also referred to as the TaqMan™ assay) (Holland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 88: 7276–7280 (1991); Lee et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 21: 3761–3766 (1993)). This assay detects the accumulation of a specific PCR product by hybridization and cleavage of a doubly labeled fluorogenic probe (the “TaqMan” probe) during the amplification reaction. The fluorogenic probe consists of an nucleic acid labeled with both a fluorescent reporter dye and a quencher dye. During PCR, this probe is cleaved by the 5'-exonuclease activity of DNA polymerase if, and only if, it hybridizes to the segment being amplified. Cleavage of the probe generates an increase in the fluorescence intensity of the reporter dye.

In the TaqMan assay, the donor and quencher are preferably located on the 3'- and 5'-ends of the probe, because the requirement that 5'-3' hydrolysis be performed between the fluorophore and quencher may be met only when these two moieties are not too close to each other (Lyamichev et al., *Science*, 260:778–783 (1993)). This requirement is a serious drawback of the assay as the efficiency of energy transfer decreases with the inverse sixth power of the distance between the reporter and quencher. Thus, if the quencher is not close enough to the reporter to achieve the most efficient quenching the background emissions from the probe can be quite high.

Yet another method of detecting amplification products that relies on the use of energy transfer is the “beacon probe” method described by Tyagi et al. (*Nature Biotech.*, 14:303–309 (1996)) which is also the subject of U.S. Pat. No. 5,312,728 to Lizardi et al. This method employs nucleic acid hybridization probes that can form hairpin structures. On one end of the hybridization probe (either the 5'- or 3'-end) there is a donor fluorophore, and on the other end, an acceptor moiety. In this method, the acceptor moiety is a quencher, absorbing energy from the donor. Thus when the beacon is in the open conformation, the fluorescence of the donor fluorophore is detectable, whereas when the beacon is in hairpin (closed) conformation, the fluorescence of the

4

donor fluorophore is quenched. When employed in PCR, the molecular beacon probe, which hybridizes to one of the strands of the PCR product, is in “open conformation,” and fluorescence is detected, while those that remain unhybridized will not fluoresce. As a result, the amount of fluorescence will increase as the amount of PCR product increases, and thus can be used as a measure of the progress of the PCR.

Certain limitations impede the application and use of FET probes, or result in assays that are less sensitive than they could be. Foremost among these limitations is the presence of background fluorescence attributable to the emission of the quencher, giving the probe a higher fluorescent noise background than is desirable. An approach that has been utilized to ameliorate this limitation is the use of a quencher that is not a fluorophore (“dark quenchers”), such as derivatives of 4-(dimethylamino)azobenzene (DABCYL). DABCYL is useful as a quenching agent for a limited group of fluorophores with whose emission characteristics, the absorption characteristics of DABCYL overlap. The limited absorption range of DABCYL restricts the utility of this compound by allowing the use of a limited number of fluorophores in conjunction with DABCYL. Because relatively few fluorophores can be used with DABCYL in FET pairs, multiplex applications, where it is desired to use two or more fluorophores with clearly resolved fluorescence emission spectra are difficult to design using this quencher.

In view of the limitations of presently available dark quenchers and probes, such as FET probes constructed with these quenchers, there exists in the art a need for improved quenchers that can be incorporated into probes for detecting analytes rapidly, sensitively, reliably and quantitatively. Ideal quenchers would be have little to no fluorescent quenching signal, and be easily and inexpensively prepared. Moreover, a series of quenchers having similar physical properties, but distinct spectral properties would be particularly advantageous. Quite surprisingly, the present invention provides such quenchers, probes incorporating these quenchers and methods for using the quenchers and probes.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides a family of quenchers of excited state energy that are substantially non-fluorescent, termed “Black Hole Quenchers” (“BHQS”). The quenchers of the invention remedy many of the deficiencies of currently utilized dark quenchers, probes assembled using these quenchers and methods using such quenchers and probes. The present invention provides a class of dark quenchers that are functionalized to allow their rapid attachment to probe components using techniques well known in the art, or modifications of such techniques that are well within the abilities of those of skill in the art. Moreover, the present invention provides a class of dark quenchers that can be engineered to have a desired light absorption profile. The provision of this class of dark quenchers represents a substantial improvement in the design of probes incorporating dark quenchers and methods using such probes.

Many of the nucleic acid probes presently used rely on an interaction between the fluorophore and the quencher in order to minimize the fluorescence of the probe in the absence of its hybridization to a complementary nucleic acid. The interaction between the fluorophore and the quencher is typically brought about by using a nucleic acid probe sequence that forms a secondary structure (e.g., hairpin, loop, etc.). Requiring that a probe adopt a secondary structure significantly complicates the design of the probe

US 7,019,129 B1

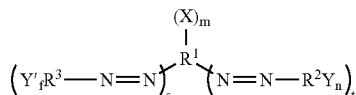
5

and greatly restricts the nucleic acid sequences that can be used as components of the probes. In contrast, nucleic acid probes using BHQs of the present invention are found to facilitate the interaction between the quencher and the fluorophore without requiring concomitant formation of nucleic acid secondary structure, thereby allowing a much greater diversity of nucleic acid sequences to be used as components of fluorescent probes.

Moreover, by varying the number and identity of the members of the conjugated system of the BHQs, the spectral properties (e.g., absorbance) of a BHQ can be "tuned" to match the spectral characteristics (e.g., emission) of one or more fluorophores. For example, as the BHQs of the present invention can be selected to have a broad range of absorbance maxima, these quenchers are uniquely suited for use in multiplexing applications. Furthermore, the ability to select a BHQ having a particular spectral characteristic allows the use of BHQs in multiplexing applications using one or more distinct fluorophore in combination with one or more distinct BHQ, thereby expanding the choices of donor-acceptor pairs that can be incorporated into probes.

Thus, in a first aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond, the quencher further comprising a reactive functional group providing a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule.

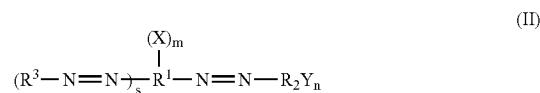
In a second aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula I:



wherein R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl. X , Y and Y' are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (fxs) is greater than 1, the Y' groups are the same or different; m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when (nxt) is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R^3 groups are the same or different; and t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R^2 groups are the same or different, and when t is 1 and s is 0, a member selected from R^1 , R^2 and combinations thereof is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic aryl and substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic heteroaryl groups.

In a third aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula II:

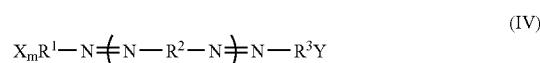
6



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number selected from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R^3 groups are the same or different. R^1 , R^2 , and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

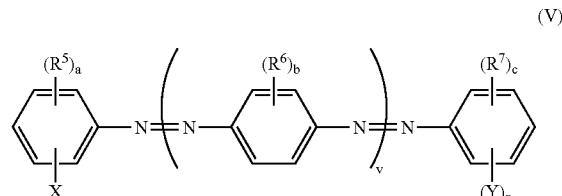
In each of the above-described aspects of the invention X is preferably a member selected from $-COOH$, $-OH$ and $-NR'R''$, wherein R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H and substituted or unsubstituted alkyl groups.

In a fourth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula IV:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; c is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R^3 groups are the same or different; v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, more preferably from 1 to 6, inclusive and more preferably still between 2 and 4, inclusive. When v is greater than 1, the R^2 groups are the same or different. R^1 , R^2 , and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof.

In a fifth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula V:



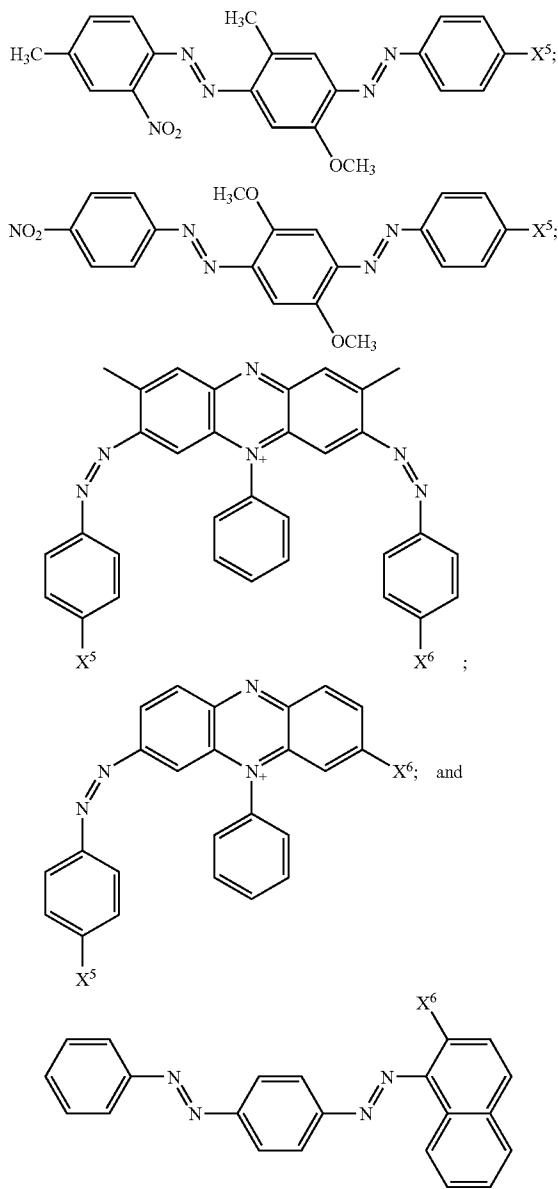
wherein, R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are members independently selected from $-NR'R''$, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_6 alkyl, and substituted or

US 7,019,129 B1

7

unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkoxy, wherein R' and R" are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkyl. X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups; m is a number from 1 to 2, inclusive, such that when m is 2, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive; a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (v×b) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the b phenyl rings is the same or different.

In a sixth aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure, which is a member selected from:



8

wherein, X⁵ and X⁶ are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkyl, —OR', —COOR', —NRR", —SH, —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂), in which R' and R" are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl, with the proviso that at least one of X⁵ and X⁶ is a reactive functional group. X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from CN, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkyl.

In a seventh aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method includes: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct that includes a fluorophore; (b) exciting said fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of said sample, wherein the presence of said enzyme in said sample results in a change in said fluorescence property.

Preferred peptide constructs include: i) a fluorophore; ii) a quencher comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond; and iii) a cleavage recognition site for the enzyme. Moreover, the peptide is preferably in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the quencher when the fluorophore is excited.

In another aspect, the invention provides a method for determining whether a compound alters an activity of an enzyme. Preferred embodiments of this aspect of the invention include the steps recited in connection with the above-recited aspect of the invention and further include a step (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein said activity of said enzyme in said sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

In an ninth aspect, the present invention provides a method for detecting a nucleic acid target sequence. The method includes: (a) contacting the target sequence with a detector nucleic acid; (b) hybridizing the target binding sequence to the target sequence, thereby altering the conformation of the detector nucleic acid, causing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (c) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the nucleic acid target sequence.

In the methods described herein, unless otherwise noted, a preferred detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence. The binding sequence has linked thereto: i) a fluorophore; and ii) a BHQ of the invention.

In an tenth aspect, the invention provides a method for detecting amplification of a target sequence. The method includes the use of an amplification reaction including the following steps: (a) hybridizing the target sequence and a detector nucleic acid. The detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence and an intramolecularly associated secondary structure 5' to the target binding sequence. At least a portion of the detector sequence forms a single stranded tail which is available for hybridization to the target sequence; (b) extending the hybridized detector nucleic acid on the target sequence with a polymerase to produce a detector nucleic acid extension product and separating the detector nucleic acid extension product from the target sequence; (c) hybridizing a primer to the detector nucleic acid extension product and extending the primer with the polymerase, thereby linearizing the intramolecularly associated secondary structure and producing a change in the fluorescence parameter; and

US 7,019,129 B1

9

(d) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the target sequence.

In an eleventh aspect, the invention provides a method of ascertaining whether a first nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid hybridize. In this method, the first nucleic acid includes a BHQ according to the invention. The method includes: (a) contacting the first nucleic acid with the second nucleic acid; (b) detecting an alteration in a fluorescent property of a member selected from the first nucleic acid, the second nucleic acid and a combination thereof, thereby ascertaining whether the hybridization occurs.

In a twelfth aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method comprises: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct; (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the presence of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

Peptide constructs useful in practicing the invention include those with the following features: i) a fluorophore; ii) a BHQ of the invention; and iii) a cleavage recognition site for the enzyme.

In a thirteenth aspect, the invention provides methods of determining the amount of activity of an enzyme in a sample from an organism. The method includes: (a) contacting a sample comprising the enzyme and the compound with a peptide construct comprising (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the activity of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property. Peptide constructs useful in this aspect of the invention are substantially similar to those described immediately above.

In a fourteenth aspect, the invention provides a microarray comprising a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The quencher is conjugated directly to a solid support or to a carrier molecule attached to the solid support.

In a fifteenth aspect, the invention provides a method of probing a microarray for the presence of a compound. The method includes: (a) contacting the microarray with a probe interacting with the compound. Preferred probes include a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond; and (b) detecting a difference in a fluorescence property of a member selected from the probe, the compound and combinations thereof, thereby ascertaining the presence of the compound.

In a sixteenth aspect, the present invention provides a mixture including at least a first carrier molecule and a second carrier molecule. The first carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a first quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The second carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a second quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond.

10

Additional objects and advantages of the present invention will be apparent to those of skill in the art upon examination of the detailed description that follows.

5 BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is an exemplary synthetic scheme for preparing a BHQ of the invention.

10 FIG. 2 is a collection of structures of exemplary BHQs (BH1, BH2 and BH3) of the invention.

15 FIG. 3 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH1-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH1-CPG.

19 FIG. 4 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH2-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH2-CPG.

20 FIG. 5 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH3-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH3-CPG.

25 FIG. 6 is a collection of structures of activated derivatives of BH1.

29 FIG. 7 (a-b) is a comparison of the absorbance spectra of Dabcyl and the BHQs of the invention:

(a) is an overlay plot of the absorbance spectra of BH1 and the emission spectra of three commonly used fluorophores FAM, TET and JOE;

(b) is an overlay plot of the absorbance spectra of DABCYL and the emission spectra of three commonly used fluorophores FAM, TET and JOE.

30 FIG. 8 is a series of nucleic acid structures incorporating exemplary BHQs of the invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION AND THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Abbreviations

“BHQ,” as used herein, refers to “Black Hole Quenchers.”

“FET,” as used herein, refers to “Fluorescence Energy Transfer.” “FRET,” as used herein, refers to “Fluorescence Resonance Energy Transfer.” These terms are used herein to refer to both radiative and non-radiative energy transfer processes. For example, processes in which a photon is emitted and those involving long range electron transfer are included within these terms. Throughout this specification, both of these phenomena are subsumed under the general term “donor-acceptor energy transfer.”

Definitions

50 Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein generally have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. Generally, the nomenclature used herein and the laboratory procedures in cell culture, molecular genetics, organic chemistry and nucleic acid chemistry and hybridization described below are those well known and commonly employed in the art. Standard techniques are used for nucleic acid and peptide synthesis. Generally, enzymatic reactions and purification steps are performed according to the manufacturer’s specifications. The techniques and procedures are generally performed according to conventional methods in the art and various general references (see generally, Sambrook et al. MOLECULAR CLONING: A LABORATORY MANUAL, 2d ed. (1989) Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y., which is incorporated herein by reference), which are provided throughout this document. The

US 7,019,129 B1

11

nomenclature used herein and the laboratory procedures in analytical chemistry, and organic synthetic described below are those well known and commonly employed in the art. Standard techniques, or modifications thereof, are used for chemical syntheses and chemical analyses.

“Analyte”, as used herein means any compound or molecule of interest for which a diagnostic test is performed. An analyte can be, for example, a protein, peptide, carbohydrate, polysaccharide, glycoprotein, hormone, receptor, antigen, antibody, virus, substrate, metabolite, transition state analog, cofactor, inhibitor, drug, dye, nutrient, growth factor, etc., without limitation.

As used herein, “energy transfer” refers to the process by which the excited state energy of an excited group is altered by a modifying group, such as a quencher. If the excited state energy-modifying group is a quenching group, then the fluorescence emission from the fluorescent group is attenuated (quenched). Energy transfer can occur through fluorescence resonance energy transfer, or through direct energy transfer. The exact energy transfer mechanisms in these two cases are different. It is to be understood that any reference to energy transfer in the instant application encompasses all of these mechanistically-distinct phenomena.

As used herein, “energy transfer pair” refers to any two molecules that participate in energy transfer. Typically, one of the molecules acts as a fluorescent group, and the other acts as a fluorescence-modifying group. The preferred energy transfer pair of the instant invention comprises a fluorescent group and a quenching group of the invention. There is no limitation on the identity of the individual members of the energy transfer pair in this application. All that is required is that the spectroscopic properties of the energy transfer pair as a whole change in some measurable way if the distance between the individual members is altered by some critical amount. “Energy transfer pair” is used to refer to a group of molecules that form a complex within which energy transfer occurs. Such complexes may include, for example, two fluorescent groups, which may be different from one another and one quenching group, two quenching groups and one fluorescent group, or multiple fluorescent groups and multiple quenching groups. In cases where there are multiple fluorescent groups and/or multiple quenching groups, the individual groups may be different from one another.

As used herein, “fluorescence-modifying group” refers to a molecule of the invention that can alter in any way the fluorescence emission from a fluorescent group. A fluorescence-modifying group generally accomplishes this through an energy transfer mechanism. Depending on the identity of the fluorescence-modifying group, the fluorescence emission can undergo a number of alterations, including, but not limited to, attenuation, complete quenching, enhancement, a shift in wavelength, a shift in polarity, and a change in fluorescence lifetime. One example of a fluorescence-modifying group is a quenching group.

As used herein, “quenching group” refers to any fluorescence-modifying group of the invention that can attenuate at least partly the light emitted by a fluorescent group. This attenuation is referred to herein as “quenching”. Hence, illumination of the fluorescent group in the presence of the quenching group leads to an emission signal that is less intense than expected, or even completely absent. Quenching typically occurs through energy transfer between the fluorescent group and the quenching group.

As used herein, “nucleic acid” means DNA, RNA, single-stranded, double-stranded, or more highly aggregated hybridization motifs, and any chemical modifications

12

thereof. Modifications include, but are not limited to, those providing chemical groups that incorporate additional charge, polarizability, hydrogen bonding, electrostatic interaction, and fluxionality to the nucleic acid ligand bases or to the nucleic acid ligand as a whole. Such modifications include, but are not limited to, peptide nucleic acids (PNAs), phosphodiester group modifications (e.g., phosphorothioates, methylphosphonates), 2'-position sugar modifications, 5-position pyrimidine modifications, 8-position purine modifications, modifications at exocyclic amines, substitution of 4-thiouridine, substitution of 5-bromo or 5-iodouracil; backbone modifications, methylations, unusual base-pairing combinations such as the isobases, isocytidine and isoguanidine and the like. Nucleic acids can also include non-natural bases, such as, for example, nitroindole. Modifications can also include 3' and 5' modifications such as capping with a BHQ, a fluorophore or another moiety.

“Peptide” refers to a polymer in which the monomers are amino acids and are joined together through amide bonds, alternatively referred to as a polypeptide. When the amino acids are α -amino acids, either the L-optical isomer or the D-optical isomer can be used. Additionally, unnatural amino acids, for example, β -alanine, phenylglycine and homoarginine are also included. Commonly encountered amino acids that are not gene-encoded may also be used in the present invention. All of the amino acids used in the present invention may be either the D- or L-isomer. The L-isomers are generally preferred. In addition, other peptidomimetics are also useful in the present invention. For a general review, see, Spatola, A. F., in CHEMISTRY AND BIOCHEMISTRY OF AMINO ACIDS, PEPTIDES AND PROTEINS, B. Weinstein, eds., Marcel Dekker, New York, p. 267 (1983).

“Bioactive species,” refers to molecules that, when administered to an organism, affect that organism. Exemplary bioactive species include pharmaceuticals, pesticides, herbicides, growth regulators and the like. Bioactive species encompasses small molecules (i.e., approximately <1000 daltons), oligomers, polymers and the like. Also included are nucleic acids and their analogues, peptides and their analogues and the like.

The term “alkyl” is used herein to refer to a branched or unbranched, saturated or unsaturated, monovalent and divalent hydrocarbon radical, generally having from about 1–30 carbons and preferably, from 4–20 carbons and more preferably from 6–18 carbons. When the alkyl group has from 1–6 carbon atoms, it is referred to as a “lower alkyl.” Suitable alkyl radicals include, for example, structures containing one or more methylene, methine and/or methyne groups. Branched structures have a branching motif similar to i-propyl, t-butyl, i-butyl, 2-ethylpropyl, etc. As used herein, the term encompasses “substituted alkyls,” and “cyclic alkyl.”

“Substituted alkyl” refers to alkyl as just described including one or more substituents such as, for example, lower alkyl, aryl, acyl, halogen (i.e., alkylhalos, e.g., CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, thioamido, acyloxy, aryloxy, aryloxyalkyl, mercapto, thia, aza, oxo, both saturated and unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbons, heterocycles and the like. These groups may be attached to any carbon or substituent of the alkyl moiety. Additionally, these groups may be pendent from, or integral to, the alkyl chain.

The term “aryl” is used herein to refer to an aromatic substituent, which may be a single aromatic ring or multiple aromatic rings which are fused together, linked covalently, or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The common linking group may also be a carbonyl as in benzophenone. The aromatic ring(s) may

US 7,019,129 B1

13

include phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, diphenylmethyl and benzophenone among others. The term "aryl" encompasses "arylalkyl" and "substituted aryl."

"Substituted aryl" refers to aryl as just described including one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, phenoxy, mercapto and both saturated and unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbons which are fused to the aromatic ring(s), linked covalently or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The linking group may also be a carbonyl such as in cyclohexyl phenyl ketone. The term "substituted aryl" encompasses "substituted arylalkyl."

The term "arylalkyl" is used herein to refer to a subset of "aryl" in which the aryl group is attached to another group by an alkyl group as defined herein.

"Substituted arylalkyl" defines a subset of "substituted aryl" wherein the substituted aryl group is attached to another group by an alkyl group as defined herein.

The term "acyl" is used to describe a ketone substituent, —C(O)R, where R is alkyl or substituted alkyl, aryl or substituted aryl as defined herein.

The term "halogen" is used herein to refer to fluorine, bromine, chlorine and iodine atoms.

The term "hydroxy" is used herein to refer to the group —OH.

The term "amino" is used to —NRR', wherein R and R' are independently H, alkyl, aryl or substituted analogues thereof. "Amino" encompasses "alkylamino" denoting secondary and tertiary amines and "acylamino" describing the group RC(O)NR'.

The term "alkoxy" is used herein to refer to the —OR group, where R is alkyl, or a substituted analogue thereof. Suitable alkoxy radicals include, for example, methoxy, ethoxy, t-butoxy, etc.

As used herein, the term "aryloxy" denotes aromatic groups that are linked to another group directly through an oxygen atom. This term encompasses "substituted aryloxy" moieties in which the aromatic group is substituted as described above for "substituted aryl." Exemplary aryloxy moieties include phenoxy, substituted phenoxy, benzyloxy, phenethyloxy, etc.

As used herein "aryloxyalkyl" defines aromatic groups attached, through an oxygen atom to an alkyl group, as defined herein. The term "aryloxyalkyl" encompasses "substituted aryloxyalkyl" moieties in which the aromatic group is substituted as described for "substituted aryl."

As used herein, the term "mercapto" defines moieties of the general structure R wherein R is H, alkyl, aryl or heterocyclic as described herein.

The term "saturated cyclic hydrocarbon" denotes groups such as the cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, etc., and substituted analogues of these structures. These cyclic hydrocarbons can be single- or multi-ring structures.

The term "unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbon" is used to describe a monovalent non-aromatic group with at least one double bond, such as cyclopentene, cyclohexene, etc. and substituted analogues thereof. These cyclic hydrocarbons can be single- or multi-ring structures.

The term "heteraryl" as used herein refers to aromatic rings in which one or more carbon atoms of the aromatic ring(s) are replaced by a heteroatom such as nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur. Heteroaryl refers to structures that may be a single aromatic ring, multiple aromatic ring(s), or one or more aromatic rings coupled to one or more non-aromatic ring(s). In structures having multiple rings, the rings can be fused together, linked covalently, or linked to a common

14

group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The common linking group may also be a carbonyl as in phenyl pyridyl ketone. As used herein, rings such as thiophene, pyridine, isoxazole, phthalimide, pyrazole, indole, furan, etc. or benzo-fused analogues of these rings are defined by the term "heteroaryl."

"Heteroarylalkyl" defines a subset of "heteroaryl" wherein an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heteroaryl group to another group.

"Substituted heteroaryl" refers to heteroaryl as just described wherein the heteroaryl nucleus is substituted with one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, mercapto, etc. Thus, substituted analogues of heteroaromatic rings such as thiophene, pyridine, isoxazole, phthalimide, pyrazole, indole, furan, etc. or benzo-fused analogues of these rings are defined by the term "substituted heteroaryl." "Substituted heteroarylalkyl" refers to a subset of "substituted heteroaryl" as described above in which an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heteroaryl group to another group.

The term "heterocyclic" is used herein to describe a monovalent saturated or unsaturated non-aromatic group having a single ring or multiple condensed rings from 1-12 carbon atoms and from 1-4 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen within the ring. Such heterocycles are, for example, tetrahydrofuran, morpholine, piperidine, pyrrolidine, etc.

The term "substituted heterocyclic" as used herein describes a subset of "heterocyclic" wherein the heterocycle nucleus is substituted with one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, mercapto, etc.

The term "heterocyclicalkyl" defines a subset of "heterocyclic" wherein an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heterocyclic group to another group.

Introduction

The present invention provides a class of fluorescence modifiers, particularly quenchers, of excited state energy. The compounds of the invention absorb excited state energy from a reporter fluorophore, but are themselves substantially nonfluorescent. The fluorophore transferring the excited state energy to the quenchers of the invention will generally be a label that is attached to an analyte or a species that interacts with, and allows detection and/or quantification of the analyte.

Fluorescent labels have the advantage of requiring few precautions in handling, and being amenable to high-throughput visualization techniques (optical analysis including digitization of the image for analysis in an integrated system comprising a computer). Preferred labels are typically characterized by one or more of the following: high sensitivity, high stability, low background, low environmental sensitivity and high specificity in labeling. Many fluorescent labels are commercially available from the SIGMA chemical company (Saint Louis, Mo.), Molecular Probes (Eugene, Oreg.), R&D systems (Minneapolis, Minn.), Pharmacia LKB Biotechnology (Piscataway, N.J.), CLONTECH Laboratories, Inc. (Palo Alto, Calif.), Chem Genes Corp., Aldrich Chemical Company (Milwaukee, Wis.), Glen Research, Inc., GIBCO BRL Life Technologies, Inc. (Gaithersburg, Md.), Fluka Chemica-Biochemika Analytika (Fluka Chemie AG, Buchs, Switzerland), and Applied Biosystems (Foster City, Calif.), as well as many other commercial sources known to one of skill. Furthermore, those of skill in

US 7,019,129 B1

15

the art will recognize how to select an appropriate fluorophore for a particular application and, if it not readily available commercially, will be able to synthesize the necessary fluorophore de novo or synthetically modify commercially available fluorescent compounds to arrive at the desired fluorescent label.

In addition to small molecule fluorophores, naturally occurring fluorescent proteins and engineered analogues of such proteins are useful in the present invention. Such proteins include, for example, green fluorescent proteins of cnidarians (Ward et al., *Photochem. Photobiol.* 35:803–808 (1982); Levine et al., *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.*, 72B:77–85 (1982)), yellow fluorescent protein from *Vibrio fischeri* strain (Baldwin et al., *Biochemistry* 29:5509–15 (1990)), Peridinin-chlorophyll from the dinoflagellate *Symbiodinium* sp. (Morris et al., *Plant Molecular Biology* 24:673:77 (1994)), phycobiliproteins from marine cyanobacteria, such as *Synechococcus*, e.g., phycoerythrin and phycocyanin (Wilbanks et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:1226–35 (1993)), and the like.

The compounds, probes and methods discussed in the following sections are generally representative of the compositions of the invention and the methods in which such compositions can be used. The following discussion is intended as illustrative of selected aspects and embodiments of the present invention and it should not be interpreted as limiting the scope of the present invention.

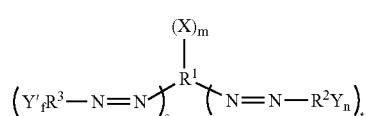
Black Hole Quenchers

The present invention provides a family of dark quenchers that are referred to herein as “Black Hole Quenchers™”, (“BHQ’s”). The quenchers of the invention include conjugated π-bonded systems that are preferably azo-linked aromatic species.

In a first aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond, the quencher further comprising a reactive functional group providing a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule. Although the quenchers can be used in their free unbound form, it is generally preferred that they be tethered to another species, thus, preferred quenchers further comprise a reactive functional group that provides a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule.

In another preferred embodiment, the BHQs of the invention described herein have substantially no native fluorescence, particularly near their absorbance maxima or near the absorbance maxima of fluorophores used in conjunction with the BHQs. The BHQs will preferably have an absorbance maximum of from about 400 nm to about 760 nm, and more preferably, of from about 500 nm to about 600 nm.

In a second aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula I:

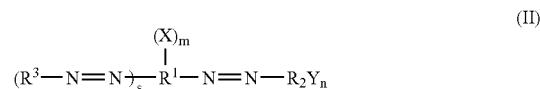


wherein R¹, R² and R’ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsub-

16

stituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl. X, Y and Y’ are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (fxs) is greater than 1, the Y’ groups are the same or different; m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when (nxt) is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R³ groups are the same or different; and t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R² groups are the same or different, and when t is 1 and s is 0, a member selected from R¹, R² and combinations thereof is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic aryl and substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic heteroaryl groups.

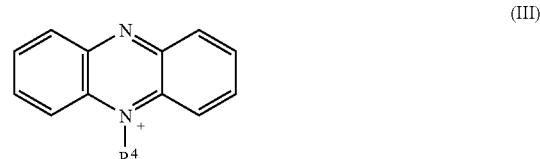
In a third aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula II:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number selected from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

In a preferred embodiment, m is 1; n is 0; c is 1; and R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from aryl and substituted aryl.

In a preferred embodiment of each of the above-described aspects of the invention, R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from aryl and aryl substituted with a member selected from amino, amino derivatives, nitro, C₁–C₆ alkyl, C₁–C₆ alkoxy and combinations thereof, and still more preferably, R¹ includes a structure according to Formula III:

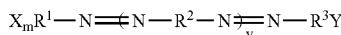


US 7,019,129 B1

17

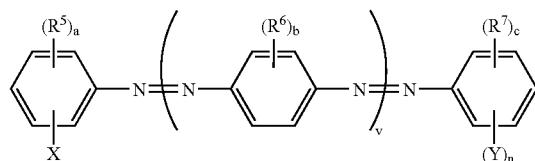
wherein R⁴ is a member selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

In a fourth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula IV:



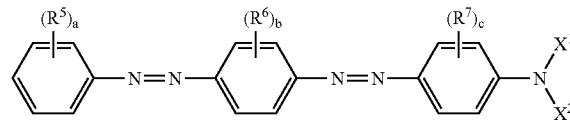
in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; c is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different; v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, more preferably from 1 to 6, inclusive and more preferably still between 2 and 4, inclusive. When v is greater than one the R² groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof.

In a fifth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula V:



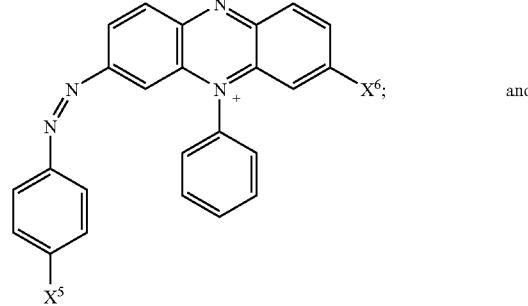
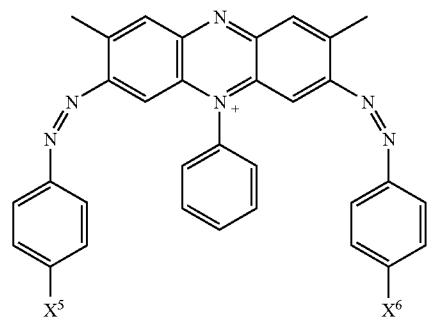
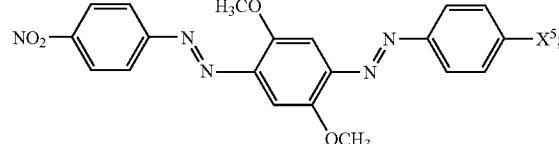
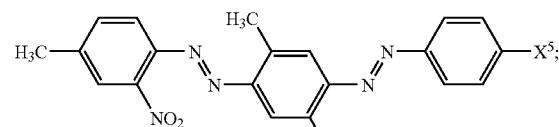
wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R'', substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy, wherein R' and R'' are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl. X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups; n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive; a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (vxb) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the v phenyl rings is the same or different.

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula VI:

18

wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from amine, alkyl amine, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy; a is a number between 0 and 5, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when b is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and X¹ and X² are members independently selected from C₁—C₆ alkyl or C₁—C₆ substituted alkyl, —OH, —POOH, —NR'R'', SH, —OP(OX³)(N(R'R'')₂), in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl.

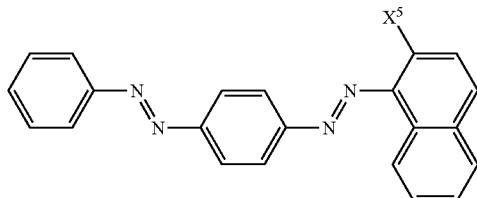
In a sixth aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure, which is a member selected from:



US 7,019,129 B1

19

-continued



X⁵ and X⁶ are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, —OR', —COOR', —NR'R''—SH, —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂), in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl. At least one of X⁵ and X⁶ is a reactive functional group. X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from CN, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

The following discussion is generally relevant to the identity of the reactive groups of the compounds of the invention and is particularly relevant to the groups X, X¹ and X² in each of the above-described aspects of the invention.

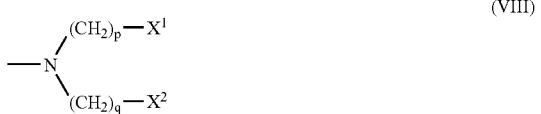
In a preferred embodiment, X is a member selected from amine, alkyl amine, substituted alkyl amine, and aryl amine groups, more preferably X has a structure according to Formula VII:



wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl; and X¹ and X² are members independently selected from —CH₃, —OH, OOH, —NH₂, —SH, —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂), wherein, X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl, and preferably X³ is cyanoethyl; and X⁴ is isopropyl.

In another preferred embodiment, a member selected from R⁹, R¹⁰ and combinations thereof comprises a polyether. Preferred polyethers include, for example, poly(ethylene glycol), poly(propyleneglycol) and copolymers thereof.

In a further preferred embodiment, X has a structure according to Formula VIII:



wherein, X¹, X², X³ and X⁴ are substantially as described above and p and q are numbers independently selected from 1 to 20, inclusive, preferably from 2 to 16, inclusive.

The compounds of the invention can be prepared as a single isomer or a mixture of isomers, including, for example cis-isomers, trans-isomers, diastereomers and stereoisomers. In a preferred embodiment, the compounds are prepared as substantially a single isomer. Isomerically pure compounds are prepared by using synthetic intermediates

20

that are isomerically pure in combination with reactions that either leave the stereochemistry at a chiral center unchanged or result in its complete inversion. Alternatively, the final product or intermediates along the synthetic route can be resolved into a single isomer. Techniques for inverting or leaving unchanged a particular stereocenter, and those for resolving mixtures of stereoisomers are well known in the art and it is well within the ability of one of skill in the art to choose an appropriate resolution or synthetic method for a particular situation. See, generally, Furniss et al. (eds.), VOGEL'S ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY 5 ED., Longman Scientific and Technical Ltd., Essex, 1991, pp. 809-816; and Heller, *Acc. Chem. Res.* 23: 128 (1990).

15 Reactive Functional Groups

The compounds of the invention bear a reactive functional group, which can be located at any position on an aryl nucleus or on a chain, such as an alkyl chain, attached to an aryl nucleus. When the reactive group is attached to an alkyl,

20 or substituted alkyl chain tethered to an aryl nucleus, the reactive group is preferably located at a terminal position of an alkyl chain. Reactive groups and classes of reactions useful in practicing the present invention are generally those that are well known in the art of bioconjugate chemistry.

25 Currently favored classes of reactions available with reactive BHQs are those which proceed under relatively mild conditions. These include, but are not limited to nucleophilic substitutions (e.g., reactions of amines and alcohols with acyl halides, active esters), electrophilic substitutions (e.g., enamine reactions) and additions to carbon-carbon and carbon-heteroatom multiple bonds (e.g., Michael reaction, Diels-Alder addition). These and other useful reactions are discussed in, for example, March, ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, 3rd Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1985; Hermanson, BIOCONJUGATE TECHNIQUES, Academic Press, San Diego, 1996; and Feeney et al., MODIFICATION OF PROTEINS; Advances in Chemistry Series, Vol. 198, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C., 1982.

30 Useful reactive functional groups include, for example:

(a) carboxyl groups and various derivatives thereof including, but not limited to, N-hydroxysuccinimide esters, N-hydroxybenztriazole esters, acid halides, acyl imidazoles, thioesters, p-nitrophenyl esters, alkyl, alk-enyl, alkynyl and aromatic esters;

35 (b) hydroxyl groups, which can be converted to esters, ethers, aldehydes, etc.

(c) haloalkyl groups, wherein the halide can be later displaced with a nucleophilic group such as, for example, an amine, a carboxylate anion, thiol anion, carbanion, or an alkoxide ion, thereby resulting in the covalent attachment of a new group at the site of the halogen atom;

40 (d) dienophile groups, which are capable of participating in Diels-Alder reactions such as, for example, male-imido groups;

45 (e) aldehyde or ketone groups, such that subsequent derivatization is possible via formation of carbonyl derivatives such as, for example, imines, hydrazones, semicarbazones or oximes, or via such mechanisms as Grignard addition or alkyllithium addition;

(f) sulfonyl halide groups for subsequent reaction with amines, for example, to form sulfonamides;

50 (g) thiol groups, which can be, for example, converted to disulfides or reacted with acyl halides;

(h) amine or sulphydryl groups, which can be, for example, acylated, alkylated or oxidized;

US 7,019,129 B1

21

- (i) alkenes, which can undergo, for example, cycloadditions, acylation, Michael addition, etc;
- (j) epoxides, which can react with, for example, amines and hydroxyl compounds; and
- (k) phosphoramidites and other standard functional groups useful in nucleic acid synthesis.

The reactive functional groups can be chosen such that they do not participate in, or interfere with, the reactions necessary to assemble the reactive BHQ analogue. Alternatively, a reactive functional group can be protected from participating in the reaction by the presence of a protecting group. Those of skill in the art understand how to protect a particular functional group such that it does not interfere with a chosen set of reaction conditions. For examples of useful protecting groups, see, for example, Greene et al., PROTECTIVE GROUPS IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1991.

Donor and Acceptor Moieties

One of the advantages of the compounds of the invention is that a wide range of energy donor molecules can be used in conjunction with the BHQS. A vast array of fluorophores are known to those of skill in the art. See, for example, Cardullo et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 8790-8794 (1988); Dexter, D. L., *J of Chemical Physics* 21: 836-850 (1953); Hochstrasser et al., *Biophysical Chemistry* 45: 133-141 (1992); Selvin, P., *Methods in Enzymology* 246: 300-334 (1995); Steinberg, I. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 40: 83-114 (1971); Stryer, L. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 47: 819-846 (1978); Wang et al., *Tetrahedron Letters* 31: 6493-6496 (1990); Wang et al., *Anal. Chem.* 67: 11971203 (1995).

A non-limiting list of exemplary donors that can be used in conjunction with the quenchers of the invention is provided in Table 1.

TABLE 1

Suitable moieties that can be selected as donors or acceptors in donor-acceptor energy transfer pairs	
4-acetamido-4'-isothiocyanostilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid	
acridine and derivatives:	
acridine	
acridine isothiocyanate	
5-(2'-aminoethyl)aminonaphthalene-1-sulfonic acid (EDANS)	
4-amino-N-[3-vinylsulfonyl]phenyl]naphthalimide-3,5 disulfonate	
N-(4-anilino-1-naphthyl)maleimide	
anthranilamide	
BODIPY	
Brilliant Yellow	
coumarin and derivatives:	
coumarin	
7-amino-4-methylcoumarin (AMC, Coumarin 120)	
7-amino-4-trifluoromethylcoumarin (Coumaran 151)	
cyanine dyes	
cyanosine	
4',6-diaminidino-2-phenylindole (DAPI)	
5',5"-dibromopyrogallol-sulfonaphthalene (Bromopyrogallol Red)	
7-diethylamino-3-(4'-isothiocyanatophenyl)-4-methylcoumarin	
diethylenetriamine pentaacetate	
4,4'-diisothiocyanatodihydro-stilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid	
4,4'-diisothiocyanatostilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid	
5-[dimethylamino]naphthalene-1-sulfonyl chloride (DNS, dansylchloride)	
4-(4'-dimethylaminophenylazo)benzoic acid (DABCYL)	
4-dimethylaminophenylazophenyl-4'-isothiocyanate (DABITC)	
eosin and derivatives:	
eosin	
eosin isothiocyanate	
erythrosin and derivatives:	
erythrosin B	
erythrosin isothiocyanate	
ethidium	
fluorescein and derivatives:	
5-carboxyfluorescein (FAM)	

22

TABLE 1-continued

Suitable moieties that can be selected as donors or acceptors in donor-acceptor energy transfer pairs	
5	5-(4,6-dichlorotriazin-2-yl)aminofluorescein (DTAF)
	2',7'-dimethoxy-4'5'-dichloro-6-carboxyfluorescein (JOE)
	fluorescein
	fluorescein isothiocyanate
	QFITC (XRITC)
10	fluorescamine
	IR144
	IR1446
	Malachite Green isothiocyanate
	4-methylumbelliferon
	ortho cresolphthalein
15	nitrotyrosine
	pararosaniline
	Phenol Red
	B-phycoerythrin
	o-phthalodialdehyde
	pyrene and derivatives:
20	pyrene
	pyrene butyrate
	succinimidyl 1-pyrene butyrate
	quantum dots
	Reactive Red 4 (Cibacron™ Brilliant Red 3B-A)
	rhodamine and derivatives:
25	6-carboxy-X-rhodamine (ROX)
	6-carboxyrhodamine (R6G)
	lissamine rhodamine B sulfonyl chloride rhodamine (Rhod)
	rhodamine B
	rhodamine 123
	rhodamine X isothiocyanate
	sulforhodamine B
	sulforhodamine 101
	sulfonyl chloride derivative of sulforhodamine 101 (Texas Red)
	N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-6-carboxyrhodamine (TAMRA)
	tetramethyl rhodamine
	tetramethyl rhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC)
30	riboflavin
	rosolic acid
	terbium chelate derivatives

There is a great deal of practical guidance available in the literature for selecting appropriate donor-acceptor pairs for particular probes, as exemplified by the following references: Pesce et al., Eds., FLUORESCENCE SPECTROSCOPY (Marcel Dekker, New York, 1971); White et al., FLUORESCENCE ANALYSIS: A PRACTICAL APPROACH (Marcel Dekker, New York, 1970); and the like. The literature also includes references providing exhaustive lists of fluorescent and chromogenic molecules and their relevant optical properties for choosing reporter-quencher pairs (see, for example, Berlin, HANDBOOK OF FLUORESCENCE SPECTRA OF AROMATIC MOLECULES, 2nd Edition (Academic Press, New York, 1971); Griffiths, COLOUR AND CONSTITUTION OF ORGANIC MOLECULES (Academic Press, New York, 1976); Bishop, Ed., INDICATORS (Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1972); Haugland, HANDBOOK OF FLUORESCENT PROBES AND RESEARCH CHEMICALS (Molecular Probes, Eugene, 1992) Pringsheim, FLUORESCENCE AND PHOSPHORESCENCE (Interscience Publishers, New York, 1949); and the like. Further, there is extensive guidance in the literature for derivatizing reporter and quencher molecules for covalent attachment via common reactive groups that can be added to a nucleic acid, as exemplified by the following references: Haugland (supra); Ullman et al., U.S. Pat. No. 3,996,345; Khanna et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,351,760. Thus, it is well within the abilities of those of skill in the art to choose an energy exchange pair for a particular application and to conjugate the members of this

US 7,019,129 B1

23

pair to a probe molecule, such as, for example, a nucleic acid, peptide or other polymer.

Generally, it is preferred that an absorbance band of the BHQ substantially overlap the fluorescence emission band of the donor. When the donor (fluorophore) is a component of a probe that utilizes donor-acceptor energy transfer, the donor fluorescent moiety and the quencher (acceptor) of the invention are preferably selected so that the donor and acceptor moieties exhibit donor-acceptor energy transfer when the donor moiety is excited. One factor to be considered in choosing the fluorophore-quencher pair is the efficiency of donor-acceptor energy transfer between them. Preferably, the efficiency of FRET between the donor and acceptor moieties is at least 10%, more preferably at least 50% and even more preferably at least 80%. The efficiency of FRET can easily be empirically tested using the methods both described herein and known in the art.

The efficiency of energy transfer between the donor-acceptor pair can also be adjusted by changing the ability of the donor and acceptor groups to dimerize or closely associate. If the donor and acceptor moieties are known or determined to closely associate, an increase or decrease in association can be promoted by adjusting the length of a linker moiety, or of the probe itself, between the donor and acceptor. The ability of donor-acceptor pair to associate can be increased or decreased by tuning the hydrophobic or ionic interactions, or the steric repulsions in the probe construct. Thus, intramolecular interactions responsible for the association of the donor-acceptor pair can be enhanced or attenuated. Thus, for example, the association between the donor-acceptor pair can be increased by, for example, utilizing a donor bearing an overall negative charge and an acceptor with an overall positive charge.

In addition to fluorophores that are attached directly to a probe, the fluorophores can also be attached by indirect means. In this embodiment, a ligand molecule (e.g., biotin) is generally covalently bound to the probe species. The ligand then binds to another molecules (e.g., streptavidin) molecule, which is either inherently detectable or covalently bound to a signal system, such as a fluorescent compound, or an enzyme that produces a fluorescent compound by conversion of a non-fluorescent compound. Useful enzymes of interest as labels include, for example, hydrolases, particularly phosphatases, esterases and glycosidases, hydrolases, peptidases or oxidases, particularly peroxidases, and. Fluorescent compounds include fluorescein and its derivatives, rhodamine and its derivatives, dansyl, umbelliferone, etc., as discussed above. For a review of various labeling or signal producing systems that can be used, see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,391,904.

Presently preferred donors of use in conjunction with BHQ, include, for example, xanthene dyes, including fluoresceins, cyanine dyes and rhodamine dyes. Many suitable forms of these compounds are widely available commercially with substituents on their phenyl moieties, which can be used as the site for bonding or as the bonding functionality for attachment to an nucleic acid. Another group of preferred fluorescent compounds are the naphthylamines, having an amino group in the alpha or beta position. Included among such naphthylamino compounds are 1-dimethylaminonaphthal-5-sulfonate, 1-anilino-8-naphthalene sulfonate and 2-p-touidinyl-6-naphthalene sulfonate. Other donors include 3-phenyl-7-isocyanatoacridine, acridines, such as 9-isothiocyanatoacridine and acridine orange; N-(p-(2-benzoxazolyl)phenyl)maleimide; benzoxadiazoles, stilbenes, pyrenes, and the like.

24

For clarity of illustration, the discussion below focuses on attaching BHQs and fluorophores to nucleic acids. The focus on nucleic acid probes is not intended to limit the scope of probe molecules to which BHQs can be attached. Those of skill in the art will appreciate that BHQs can also be attached to small molecules, proteins, peptides, synthetic polymers, solid supports and the like using standard synthetic chemistry.

In a presently preferred embodiment, in which the probe ¹⁰ is a nucleic acid probe, the reporter molecule is a fluorescein dye (FAM). The fluorescein moiety is preferably attached to either the 3'- or the 5'-terminus of the nucleic acid, although internal sites are also accessible and have utility for selected purposes. Whichever terminus the FAM derivative is ¹⁵ attached to, the BHQ will generally be attached to its antipode, or at a position internal to the nucleic acid chain. The FAM donor is preferably introduced using a 6-FAM amidite. Different donor groups are also preferably introduced using an amidite derivative of the donor. Alternatively, ²⁰ donor groups comprising reactive groups (e.g., isothiocyanates, active esters, etc.) can be introduced via reaction with a reactive moiety on a tether or linker arm attached to the nucleic acid (e.g., hexyl amine).

In yet another preferred embodiment, the donor moiety ²⁵ can be attached at the 3'-terminus of a nucleic acid by the use of a derivatized synthesis support. For example, TAMRA (tetramethylrhodamine carboxylic acid) is attached to a nucleic acid 3'-terminus using a solid support that is derivatized with an analogue of this fluorophore (Biosearch Technologies, Inc.).

In view of the well-developed body of literature concerning the conjugation of small molecules to nucleic acids, many other methods of attaching donor/acceptor pairs to nucleic acids will be apparent to those of skill in the art. For example, rhodamine and fluorescein dyes are conveniently attached to the 5'-hydroxyl of an nucleic acid at the conclusion of solid phase synthesis by way of dyes derivatized with a phosphoramidite moiety (see, for example, Woo et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,231,191; and Hobbs, Jr., U.S. Pat. No. 4,997,928).

More specifically, there are many linking moieties and methodologies for attaching groups to the 5'- or 3'-termini of nucleic acids, as exemplified by the following references: Eckstein, editor, *Nucleic acids and Analogues: A Practical Approach* (IRL Press, Oxford, 1991); Zuckerman et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 15: 5305-5321 (1987) (3'-thiol group on nucleic acid); Sharma et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 19: 3019 (1991) (3'-sulphydryl); Giusti et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 2: 223-227 (1993) and Fung et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,757,141 (5'-phosphoamino group via Aminolink TM II available from P. E. Biosystems, CA.) Stabinsky, U.S. Pat. No. 4,739,044 (3-aminoalkylphosphoryl group); Agrawal et al., *Tetrahedron Letters*, 31: 1543-1546 (1990) (attachment via phosphoramidate linkages); Sproat et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 15: 4837 (1987) (5-mercapto group); Nelson et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 17: 7187-7194 (1989) (3'-amino group), and the like.

Means of detecting fluorescent labels are well known to those of skill in the art. Thus, for example, fluorescent labels ⁶⁰ can be detected by exciting the fluorophore with the appropriate wavelength of light and detecting the resulting fluorescence. The fluorescence can be detected visually, by means of photographic film, by the use of electronic detectors such as charge coupled devices (CCDs) or photomultipliers and the like. Similarly, enzymatic labels may be detected by providing the appropriate substrates for the enzyme and detecting the resulting reaction product.

US 7,019,129 B1

25

Synthesis

The compounds of the invention are synthesized by an appropriate combination of generally well-known synthetic methods. Techniques useful in synthesizing the compounds of the invention are both readily apparent and accessible to those of skill in the relevant art. The discussion below is offered to illustrate certain of the diverse methods available for use in assembling the compounds of the invention, it is not intended to define the scope of reactions or reaction sequences that are useful in preparing the compounds of the present invention.

One method of synthesizing compounds of the invention is set forth in Scheme 1 (FIG. 1). Scheme 1 is a generalized schematic of one synthetic scheme useful with the BHQs of the invention. An azido derivative of a dye is coupled to an aryl derivative 1, at pH 9, forming the corresponding diazo adduct 2. The diol 2 is monoprotected with a group, such as the dimethoxytrityl group to form compound 3, having one free hydroxyl moiety. Compound 3 is converted to phosphoramidite 4 by contacting it with an agent, such as 2-cyanoethyl diisopropylchlorophosphoramidite in the presence of a mildly acidic activator, such as tetrazole. The phosphoramidite is coupled to a hydroxyl-bearing controlled pore glass support and subsequently oxidized to the corresponding phosphotriester derivative, thereby forming an appropriate starting material, 5, for the synthesis of an array of nucleic acids derivatized at the 3'-position with a BHQ.

The above-recited synthetic scheme is intended to be exemplary of one embodiment of the invention, those of skill in the art will recognize that many other synthetic strategies employing reactive BHQ analogues are available. For example, by a slight modification of the method above, a derivative appropriate for modification of a nucleic acid at the 5'-position is easily accessible. In an alternative scheme, compound 4, is not tethered to a solid support, but is added as the final subunit during nucleic acid synthesis, to prepare a nucleic acid with a 5'-BHQ group.

The above-described synthetic scheme can be practiced using a variety of BHQ compounds of the invention, such as those set forth in FIG. 2. FIG. 2 provides the structures of three exemplary BHQs, BH1 (6), BH2 (10) and BH3 (14).

FIG. 3 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (8) of BH1 (7), and a derivative of BH1, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (9). Both the phosphoramidite and the CPG conjugate can be prepared by art-recognized methods, including those set forth herein. Similarly, FIG. 4 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (12) of BH2 (11), and a derivative of BH2, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (13) and FIG. 5 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (16) of BH1 (15), and a derivative of BH3, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (17).

In a still further modification of the scheme of FIG. 1, compound 4 is coupled to a nucleic acid intermediate between the 3'- and 5'-positions, the DMT group is removed using standard nucleic acid chemistry, or a modification thereof, and a nucleic acid subunit is tethered to the deprotected primary hydroxyl group as though the hydroxyl group were the 5'-hydroxyl of a preceding nucleic acid subunit, thereby providing a nucleic acid having a BHQ moiety at an internal position.

Assays and BHQ-Bearing Probes

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a BHQ that is tethered to another molecule, such as a probe molecule and assays using these probes.

26

Assays

The following discussion is generally relevant to the assays described herein. This discussion is intended to illustrate the invention by reference to certain preferred embodiments and should not be interpreted as limiting the scope of probes and assay types in which the compounds of the invention find use. Other assay formats utilizing the compounds of the invention will be apparent to those of skill in the art.

10 In general, to determine the concentration of a target molecule, such as, for example, a nucleic acid, it is preferable to first obtain reference data in which constant amounts of probe and nucleic acid ligand are contacted with varying amounts of target. The fluorescence emission of each of the 15 reference mixtures is used to derive a graph or table in which target concentration is compared to fluorescence emission. For example, a probe that: a) hybridizes to a target-free nucleic acid ligand; and b) has a stem-loop architecture with the 5' and 3' termini being the sites of fluorescent group and 20 BHQ labeling, can be used to obtain such reference data. Such a probe gives a characteristic emission profile in which the fluorescence emission decreases as the target concentration increases in the presence of a constant amount of probe and nucleic acid ligand. Then, a test mixture with an unknown amount of target is contacted with the same amount of first nucleic acid ligand and second probe, and the fluorescence emission is determined. The value of the fluorescence emission is then compared with the reference data to obtain the concentration of the target in the test mixture.

Multiplex Analyses

In another preferred embodiment, the quenchers of the invention are utilized as a component of one or more probes used in a multiplex assay for detecting one or more species in a mixture.

35 Probes that include the BHQs of the invention are particularly useful in performing multiplex-type analyses and assays. In a typical multiplex analysis, two or more distinct species (or regions of one or more species) are detected using two or more probes, wherein each of the probes is 40 labeled with a different fluorophore. Preferred species used in multiplex analyses relying on donor-acceptor energy transfer meet at least two criteria: the fluorescent species is bright and spectrally well-resolved; and the energy transfer between the fluorescent species and the quencher is efficient.

45 Thus, in a further embodiment, the invention provides a mixture comprising at least a first carrier molecule and a second carrier molecule. The first carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a first quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof. At least two of the radicals are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The mixture also includes a second carrier molecule. The second carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a second quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the radicals are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond.

55 60 The BHQs of the invention allow for the design of multiplex assays in which more than one quencher structure is used in the assay. A number of different multiplex assays using the BHQs of the invention will be apparent to one of skill in the art. In one exemplary assay, each of at least two distinct BHQ quenchers is used to quench energy derived from one or more identical fluorophore. Alternatively, an assay can be practiced in which each distinct BHQ

US 7,019,129 B1

27

quenches energy derived from a distinct fluorophore to which the BHQ is "matched." The fluorophores can be bound to the same molecule as the BHQ or to a different molecule. Moreover, similar to the BHQs and the fluorophores, the carrier molecules of use in a particular assay system can be the same or different.

In addition to the mixtures described above, the present invention also provides a method for detecting or quantifying a particular molecular species. The method includes: (a) contacting the species with a mixture such as that described above; and (b) detecting a change in a fluorescent property of one or more component of the mixture, the molecular species or a combination thereof, thereby detecting or quantifying the molecular species.

Because of the ready availability of BHQs of the invention having different absorbance characteristics, the compounds of the invention are particularly well suited for use in multiplex applications. Access to BHQs having a range of absorbance characteristics allows for the design of donor-acceptor energy transfer probes in which the acceptor emission properties and the BHQ absorbance properties are substantially matched, thereby providing a useful level of spectral overlap (see, for example, FIG. 7).

The simultaneous use of two or more probes using donor-acceptor energy transfer is known in the art. For example, multiplex assays using nucleic acid probes with different sequence specificities have been described. Fluorescent probes have been used to determine whether an individual is homozygous wild-type, homozygous mutant or heterozygous for a particular mutation. For example, using one quenched-fluorescein molecular beacon that recognizes the wild-type sequence and another rhodamine-quenched molecular beacon that recognizes a mutant allele, it is possible to genotype individuals for the β -chemokine receptor (Kostrikis et al. *Science* 279:1228–1229 (1998)). The presence of only a fluorescein signal indicates that the individual is wild-type, and the presence of rhodamine signal only indicates that the individual is a homozygous mutant. The presence of both rhodamine and fluorescein signal is diagnostic of a heterozygote. Tyagi et al. *Nature Biotechnology* 16: 49–53 (1998)) have described the simultaneous use of four differently labeled molecular beacons for allele discrimination, and Lee et al., *BioTechniques* 27: 342–349 (1999) have described seven color homogenous detection of six PCR products.

The quenchers of the present invention can be used in multiplex assays designed to detect and/or quantify substantially any species, including, for example, whole cells, viruses, proteins (e.g., enzymes, antibodies, receptors), glycoproteins, lipoproteins, subcellular particles, organisms (e.g., *Salmonella*), nucleic acids (e.g., DNA, RNA, and analogues thereof), polysaccharides, lipopolysaccharides, lipids, fatty acids, non-biological polymers and small molecules (e.g., toxins, drugs, pesticides, metabolites, hormones, alkaloids, steroids).

Probes

The invention provides probes including BHQ moieties conjugated to, for example, a target species (e.g., receptor, enzyme, etc.) a ligand for a target species (e.g., nucleic acid, peptide, etc.), a small molecule (e.g., drug, pesticide, etc.), and the like. The probes can be used for *in vitro* and *in vivo* applications.

A particularly unexpected and surprising advantage of the BHQs is their ability to quench excited state energy from fluorophores attached to carrier molecules (e.g., nucleic acids) without the need to design secondary structure forming components (e.g., hairpins, loops, etc.) into the carrier

28

molecule to bring the fluorophore and the BHQ into proximity. The energy transfer pairs of probes presently used in the art typically require the introduction of some form of secondary structure in order to function properly, thereby seriously constraining the identity of species that can be used as carrier molecules. Thus, the probes of the present invention can be of simple design, can be produced more inexpensively and used to probe a much greater array of systems in much less time than current art-recognized probes.

Yet another unexpected property of the BHQs of the invention is their robustness under a variety of synthetic conditions used to attach the BHQs to a carrier molecule. For example, many of the BHQs of the invention survive the conditions necessary for automated synthesis of nucleic acids without undergoing any substantial degree of degradation or alteration. In contrast, many of the art-recognized quenchers presently in use require the use of special conditions to assemble the carrier molecule to which they are attached, or they have to be attached after the completion of the carrier molecule synthesis. The additional complexity of the synthesis of a probe increases both the duration of the synthesis and its cost.

Small Molecule Probes

The BHQs of the invention can be used as components of small molecule probes. In a preferred design, a small molecule probe includes a fluorophore or fluorophore precursor and a BHQ. In an exemplary embodiment, an agent, such as an enzyme cleaves the BHQ, the fluorophore or both from the small molecule generating fluorescence in the system under investigation (see, for example, Zlokarnik et al., *Science* 279: 84–88 (1998)).

Nucleic Acid Probes

The dark quenchers of the invention are useful in conjunction with nucleic-acid probes and they can be used as components of detection agents in a variety of DNA amplification/quantification strategies including, for example, 5'-nuclease assay, Strand Displacement Amplification (SDA), Nucleic Acid Sequence-Based Amplification (NASBA), Rolling Circle Amplification (RCA), as well as for direct detection of targets in solution phase or solid phase (e.g., array) assays. Furthermore, the BHQ-derivatized nucleic acids can be used in probes of substantially any format, including, for example, format selected from molecular beacons, Scorpion probesTM, Sunrise probesTM, conformationally assisted probes, light up probes, Invader Detection probes, and TaqMamm probes. See, for example, Cardullo, R., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 85:8790–8794 (1988); Dexter, D. L., *J. Chem. Physics*, 21:836–850 (1953); Hochstrasser, R. A., et al., *Biophysical Chemistry*, 45:133–141 (1992); Selvin, P., *Methods in Enzymology*, 246:300–334 (1995); Steinberg, I., *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 40:83–114 (1971); Stryer, L., *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 47:819–846 (1978); Wang, G., et al., *Tetrahedron Letters*, 51:6493–6496 (1990); Wang, Y., et al., *Anal. Chem.*, 67:1197–1203 (1995); Debouck, C., et al., in supplement to *nature genetics*, 21:48–50 (1999); Rehman, F. N., et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 27:649–655 (1999); Cooper, J. P., et al., *Biochemistry*, 29:9261–9268 (1990); Gibson, E. M., et al., *Genome Methods*, 6:995–1001 (1996); Hochstrasser, R. A., et al., *Biophysical Chemistry*, 45:133–141 (1992); Holland, P. M., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 88:7276–7289 (1991); Lee, L. G., et al., *Nucleic Acids Resch.*, 21:3761–3766 (1993); Livak, K. J., et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 65 Cold Spring Harbor Press (1995); Vamosi, G., et al., *Biophysical Journal*, 71:972–994 (1996); Wittwer, C. T., et al., *Biotechniques*, 22:176–181 (1997); Wittwer, C. T., et al.,

US 7,019,129 B1

29

Biotechniques, 22:130–38 (1997); Giesendorf, B. A. J., et al., *Clinical Chemistry*, 44:482–486 (1998); Kostrikis, L. G., et al., *Science*, 279:1228–1229 (1998); Matsuo, T., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 1379:178–184 (1998); Piatek, A. S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 16:359–363 (1998); Schofield, P., et al., *Appl. Environ. Microbiology*, 63:1143–1147 (1997); Tyagi S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 16:49–53 (1998); Tyagi, S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 14:303308 (1996); Nazarenko, I. A., et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 25:2516–2521 (1997); Uehara, H., et al., *Biotechniques*, 26:552–558 (1999); D. Whitcombe, et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 17:804–807 (1999); Lyamichev, V., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 17:292 (1999); Daubendiek, et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 15:273–277 (1997); Lizardi, P. M., et al., *Nature Genetics*, 19:225–232 (1998); Walker, G., et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 20:16911696 (1992); Walker, G. T., et al., *Clinical Chemistry*, 42:9–13 (1996); and Compton, J., *Nature*, 350:91–92 (1991).

Thus, in a further aspect, the present invention provides a method for detecting a nucleic acid target sequence. The method includes: (a) contacting the target sequence with a detector nucleic acid; (b) hybridizing the target binding sequence to the target sequence, thereby altering the conformation of the detector nucleic acid, causing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (c) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the nucleic acid target sequence.

In the methods described herein, unless otherwise noted, a preferred detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence. The binding sequence has linked thereto: i) a fluorophore; and ii) a BHQ of the invention. Moreover, prior to its hybridization to a complementary sequence, the detector nucleic acid is preferably in a conformation that allows donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the BHQ when the fluorophore is excited. Furthermore, in each of the methods described in this section, a change in fluorescence is detected as an indication of the presence of the target sequence. The change in fluorescence is preferably detected in-real time.

Presently preferred nucleic acid probes do not require the carrier molecule to adopt a secondary structure for the probe to function.

In this method, and unless otherwise noted, the other methods described in this section, the detector nucleic acid can assume substantially any intramolecularly associated secondary structure, but this structure is preferably a member selected from hairpins, stem-loop structures, pseudoknots, triple helices and conformationally assisted structures. Moreover, the intramolecularly base-paired secondary structure preferably comprises a portion of the target binding sequence.

In another aspect, the invention provides a method for detecting amplification of a target sequence. The method includes the use of an amplification reaction including the following steps: (a) hybridizing the target sequence and a detector nucleic acid. The detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence and an intramolecularly associated secondary structure 5' to the target binding sequence. At least a portion of the detector sequence forms a single stranded tail which is available for hybridization to the target sequence; (b) extending the hybridized detector nucleic acid on the target sequence with a polymerase to produce a detector nucleic acid extension product and separating the detector nucleic acid extension product from the target sequence; (c) hybridizing a primer to the detector nucleic acid extension product and extending the primer with the polymerase, thereby linearizing the intramolecu-

30

larly associated secondary structure and producing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (d) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the target sequence.

In yet a further aspect, the invention provides a method of ascertaining whether a first nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid hybridize. In this method, the first nucleic acid includes a BHQ according to the invention. The method includes: (a) contacting the first nucleic acid with the second nucleic acid; (b) detecting an alteration in a fluorescent property of a member selected from the first nucleic acid, the second nucleic acid and a combination thereof, thereby ascertaining whether the hybridization occurs.

A probe bearing both a BHQ and a fluorophore can be used or, alternatively, one or more of the nucleic acids can be singly labeled with a BHQ or fluorophore. When a nucleic acid singly labeled with a BHQ is the probe, the interaction between the first and second nucleic acids can be detected by observing the interaction between the BHQ and the nucleic acid or, more preferably, the quenching by the BHQ of the fluorescence of a fluorophore attached to the second nucleic acid.

In addition to their general utility in probes designed to investigate nucleic acid amplification, detection and quantification, the present dark quenchers can be used in substantially any nucleic acid probe format now known or later discovered. For example, the dark quenchers of the invention can be incorporated into probe motifs, such as Taqman™ probes (Held et al., *Genome Res.* 6: 986–994 (1996), Holland et al., *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 7276–7280 (1991), Lee et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 21: 3761–3766 (1993)), molecular beacons (Tyagi et al., *Nature Biotechnology* 14:303–308 (1996), Jayasena et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,989,823, issued Nov. 23, 1999)) scorpion probes (Whitcomb et al., *Nature Biotechnology* 17: 804–807 (1999)), sunrise probes (Nazarenko et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 25: 2516–2521 (1997)), conformationally assisted probes (Cook, R., copending and commonly assigned U.S. Provisional Application 60/138,376, filed Jun. 9, 1999), peptide nucleic acid (PNA)-based light up probes (Kubista et al., WO 97/45539, December 1997), double-strand specific DNA dyes (Higuchi et al., *Bio/Technology* 10: 413–417 (1992), Wittwer et al., *BioTechniques* 22: 130–138 (1997)) and the like. These and other probe motifs with which the present quenchers can be used are reviewed in NONISOTOPIC DNA PROBE TECHNIQUES, Academic Press, Inc. 1992.

The nucleic acids for use in the probes of the invention can be any suitable size, and are preferably in the range of from about 10 to about 100 nucleotides, more preferably from about 10 to about 80 nucleotides and more preferably still, from about 20 to about 40 nucleotides. The precise sequence and length of a nucleic acid probe of the invention depends in part on the nature of the target polynucleotide to which it binds. The binding location and length may be varied to achieve appropriate annealing and melting properties for a particular embodiment. Guidance for making such design choices can be found in many art-recognized references.

Preferably, the 3'-terminal nucleotide of the nucleic acid probe is blocked or rendered incapable of extension by a nucleic acid polymerase. Such blocking is conveniently carried out by the attachment of a donor or acceptor moiety to the terminal 3'-position of the nucleic acid probe, either directly or by a linking moiety.

The nucleic acid can comprise DNA, RNA or chimeric mixtures or derivatives or modified versions thereof. Both

US 7,019,129 B1

31

the probe and target nucleic acid can be present as a single strand, duplex, triplex, etc. Moreover, the nucleic acid can be modified at the base moiety, sugar moiety, or phosphate backbone with other groups such as radioactive labels, minor groove binders, intercalating agents, donor and/or acceptor moieties and the like.

For example, the nucleic acid can comprise at least one modified base moiety which is selected from the group including, but not limited to, 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-iodouracil, hypoxanthine, xanthine, 4-acetylcytosine, 5-(carboxyhydroxymethyl) uracil, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thiouridine, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyluracil, dihydrouracil, beta-D-galactosylqueosine, inosine, N⁶-isopentenyladenine, 1-methylguanine, 1-methylinosine, 2,2-dimethylguanine, 2-methyladenine, 2-methylguanine, 3-methylcytosine, 5-methylcytosine, N⁶-adenine, 7-methylguanine, 5-methylaminomethyluracil, 5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouracil, beta-D-mannosylqueosine, 5'-methoxycarboxymethyluracil, 5-methoxyuracil, 2-methylthio-N⁶-isopentenyladenine, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), wybutoxosine, pseudouracil, queosine, 2-thiocytosine, 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 2-thiouracil, 4-thiouracil, 5-methyluracil, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid methyl ester, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 3-(3-amino-3-N-2-carboxypropyl) uracil, (acp3)w, 5-nitroindole, and 2,6-diaminopurine.

In another embodiment, the nucleic acid comprises at least one modified sugar moiety selected from the group including, but not limited to, arabinose, 2-fluoroarabinose, xylulose, and hexose.

In yet another embodiment, the nucleic acid comprises at least one modified phosphate backbone selected from the group including, but not limited to, a peptide nucleic acid hybrid, a phosphorothioate, a phosphorodithioate, a phosphoramidothioate, a phosphoramidate, a phosphordiamidate, a methylphosphonate, an alkyl phosphotriester, and a formacetal or analog thereof.

Phosphodiester linked nucleic acids of the invention can be synthesized by standard methods known in the art, e.g. by use of an automated DNA synthesizer (such as are commercially available from P.E. Biosystems, etc.) using commercially available amidite chemistries. Nucleic acids bearing modified phosphodiester linking groups can be synthesized by methods known in the art. For example, phosphorothioate nucleic acids may be synthesized by the method of Stein et al. (*Nucl. Acids Res.* 16:3209 (1988)), methylphosphonate nucleic acids can be prepared by use of controlled pore glass polymer supports (Sarin et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 85:7448–7451 (1988)). Other methods of synthesizing both phosphodiester- and modified phosphodiester-linked nucleic acids will be apparent to those of skill in the art.

Nucleic acid probes of the invention can be synthesized by a number of approaches, e.g., Ozaki et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 20: 5205–5214 (1992); Agrawal et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 18: 5419–5423 (1990); or the like. The nucleic acid probes of the invention are conveniently synthesized on an automated DNA synthesizer, e.g., a P.E. Biosystems, Inc. (Foster City, Calif.) model 392 or 394 DNA/RNA Synthesizer, using standard chemistries, such as phosphoramidite chemistry (see, for example, disclosed in the following references, Beaucage et al., *Tetrahedron*, 48: 2223–2311 (1992); Molko et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,980,460; Koster et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,725,677; Caruthers et al., U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,415,732; 4,458,066; and 4,973,679. Alternative chemistries resulting in non-natural backbone groups, such as phosphorothioate, phosphoramidate, and the like, can also be employed.

32

When the nucleic acids are synthesized utilizing an automated nucleic acid synthesizer, the donor and acceptor moieties are preferably introduced during automated synthesis. Alternatively, one or more of these moieties can be introduced either before or after the automated synthesis procedure has commenced. For example, donor and/or acceptor groups can be introduced at the 3'-terminus using a solid support modified with the desired group(s). Additionally, donor and/or acceptor groups can be introduced at the 5'-terminus by, for example a derivative of the group that includes a phosphoramidite. In another exemplary embodiment, one or more of the donor and/or acceptor groups is introduced after the automated synthesis is complete.

In the dual labeled probes, the donor moiety is preferably separated from the BHQ by at least about 10 nucleotides, and more preferably by at least about 15 nucleotides. The donor moiety is preferably attached to either the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotides of the probe. The BHQ moiety is also preferably attached to either the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotides of the probe. More preferably, the donor and acceptor moieties are attached to the 3'- and 5'- or 5'- and 3'-terminal nucleotides of the probe, respectively, although internal placement is also useful.

Once the desired nucleic acid is synthesized, it is preferably cleaved from the solid support on which it was synthesized and treated, by methods known in the art, to remove any protecting groups present (e.g., 60° C., 5 h, concentrated ammonia). In those embodiments in which a base-sensitive group is attached to the nucleic acids (e.g., TAMRA), the deprotection will preferably use milder conditions (e.g., butylamine: water 1:3, 8 hours, 70° C.). Deprotection under these conditions is facilitated by the use of quick deprotect amides (e.g., dC-acetyl, dG-dmf).

Following cleavage from the support and deprotection, the nucleic acid is purified by any method known in the art, including chromatography, extraction and gel purification. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleic acid is purified using HPLC. The concentration and purity of the isolated nucleic acid is preferably determined by measuring the optical density at 260 nm in a spectrophotometer.

Peptide Probes

Peptides, proteins and peptide nucleic acids that are labeled with a fluorophore and a quencher of the invention can be used in both *in vivo* and *in vitro* enzymatic assays.

Thus, in another aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method comprises: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct; (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the presence of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

Peptide constructs useful in practicing the invention include those with the following features: i) a fluorophore; ii) a BHQ of the invention; and iii) a cleavage or assembly recognition site for the enzyme. Moreover, the peptide construct is preferably of a length and orientation and in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the BHQ when the fluorophore is excited.

When the probe is used to detect an enzyme, such as a degradative enzyme (e.g., protease), and a degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer that is lower than an expected amount is observed, this is generally indicative of the presence of an enzyme. The degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample can be determined, for example, as a function of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety, the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moi-

US 7,019,129 B1

33

ety, the ratio of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety to the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety or the excitation state lifetime of the donor moiety.

The assay also is useful for determining the amount of enzyme in a sample by determining the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer at a first and second time after contact between the enzyme and the tandem construct, and determining the difference in the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer. The difference in the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer reflects the amount of enzyme in the sample.

The assay methods also can also be used to determine whether a compound alters the activity of an enzyme, i.e., screening assays. Thus, in a further aspect, the invention provides methods of determining the amount of activity of an enzyme in a sample from an organism. The method includes: (a) contacting a sample comprising the enzyme and the compound with a peptide construct comprising (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the activity of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property. Peptide constructs useful in this aspect of the invention are substantially similar to those described immediately above.

In a preferred embodiment, the amount of enzyme activity in the sample is determined as a function of the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample and the amount of activity in the sample is compared with a standard activity for the same amount of the enzyme. A difference between the amount of enzyme activity in the sample and the standard activity indicates that the compound alters the activity of the enzyme.

Representative enzymes with which the present invention can be practiced include, for example, trypsin, enterokinase, HIV-1 protease, prohormone convertase, interleukin-1b-converting enzyme, adenovirus endopeptidase, cytomegalovirus assemblin, leishmanolysin, β -secretase for amyloid precursor protein, thrombin, renin, angiotensin-converting enzyme, cathepsin-D and a kininogenase, and proteases in general.

Proteases play essential roles in many disease processes such as Alzheimer's, hypertension, inflammation, apoptosis, and AIDS. Compounds that block or enhance their activity have potential as therapeutic agents. Because the normal substrates of peptidases are linear peptides and because established procedures exist for making non-peptidic analogs, compounds that affect the activity of proteases are natural subjects of combinatorial chemistry. Screening compounds produced by combinatorial chemistry requires convenient enzymatic assays.

The most convenient assays for proteases are based on donor-acceptor energy transfer from a donor fluorophore to a quencher placed at opposite ends of a short peptide chain containing the potential cleavage site (see, Knight C. G., *Methods in Enzymol.* 248:18–34 (1995)). Proteolysis separates the fluorophore and quencher, resulting in increased intensity in the emission of the donor fluorophore. Existing protease assays use short peptide substrates incorporating unnatural chromophoric amino acids, assembled by solid phase peptide synthesis.

Assays of the invention are also useful for determining and characterizing substrate cleavage sequences of proteases or for identifying proteases, such as orphan proteases. In one embodiment the method involves the replacement of a defined linker moiety amino acid sequence with one that contains a randomized selection of amino acids. A library of fluorescent BHQ-bearing probes, wherein the fluorophore

34

and the BHQ are linked by a randomized peptide linker moiety can be generated using recombinant engineering techniques or synthetic chemistry techniques. Screening the members of the library can be accomplished by measuring a signal related to cleavage, such as donor-acceptor energy transfer, after contacting the cleavage enzyme with each of the library members of the tandem fluorescent peptide construct. A degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer that is lower than an expected amount indicates the presence of a linker sequence that is cleaved by the enzyme. The degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample can be determined, for example, as a function of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety, the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor donor moiety, or the ratio of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety to the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety or the excitation state lifetime of the donor moiety.

In the tandem constructs of the invention, the donor and acceptor moieties are connected through a linker moiety. The linker moiety, preferably, includes a peptide moiety, but can be or can include another organic molecular moiety, as well. In a preferred embodiment, the linker moiety includes a cleavage recognition site specific for an enzyme or other cleavage agent of interest. A cleavage site in the linker moiety is useful because when a tandem construct is mixed with the cleavage agent, the linker is a substrate for cleavage by the cleavage agent. Rupture of the linker moiety results in separation of the fluorophore and the quencher of the invention. The separation is measurable as a change in donor-acceptor energy transfer. Alternatively, peptide assembly can be detected by an increase in donor-acceptor energy transfer between a peptide fragment bearing a BHQ and a peptide fragment bearing a donor moiety.

When the cleavage agent of interest is a protease, the linker generally includes a peptide containing a cleavage recognition sequence for the protease. A cleavage recognition sequence for a protease is a specific amino acid sequence recognized by the protease during proteolytic cleavage. Many protease cleavage sites are known in the art, and these and other cleavage sites can be included in the linker moiety. See, e.g., Matayoshi et al. *Science* 247: 954 (1990); Dunn et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 241: 254 (1994); Seid et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 175 (1994); Thomberry, *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 615 (1994); Weber et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 595 (1994); Smith et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 412 (1994); Bouvier et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 248: 614 (1995), Hardy et al., in AMYLOID PROTEIN PRECURSOR IN DEVELOPMENT, AGING, AND ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE, ed. Masters et al. pp. 190–198 (1994).

50 Solid Support Immobilized BHQ Analogues

The BHQs of the invention can be immobilized on substantially any polymer, biomolecule, and solid or semi-solid material having any useful configuration. Moreover, any conjugate comprising one or more BHQs can be similarly immobilized. When the support is a solid or semi-solid, examples of preferred types of supports for immobilization of the nucleic acid probe include, but are not limited to, controlled pore glass, glass plates, polystyrene, avidin coated polystyrene beads, cellulose, nylon, acrylamide gel and activated dextran. These solid supports are preferred because of their chemical stability, ease of functionalization and well-defined surface area. Solid supports such as, controlled pore glass (CPG, 500 Å, 1000 Å) and non-swelling high cross-linked polystyrene (1000 Å) are particularly preferred.

According to the present invention, the surface of a solid support is functionalized with a quencher of the invention or

US 7,019,129 B1

35

a species including a quencher of the invention. For clarity of illustration, the following discussion focuses on attaching a reactive BHQ to a solid support. The following discussion is also broadly relevant to attaching a species that includes within its structure a reactive BHQ to a solid support, and the attachment of such species and reactive BHQ analogues to other molecules and structures.

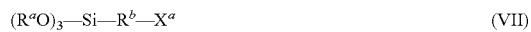
The BHQs are preferably attached to a solid support by forming a bond between a reactive group on the BHQ and a reactive group on the surface of the solid support or a linker attached to the solid support, thereby derivatizing the solid support with one or more BHQ analogues. The bond between the solid support and the BHQ is preferably a covalent bond, although ionic, dative and other such bonds are useful as well. Reactive groups which can be used in practicing the present invention are discussed in detail above and include, for example, amines, hydroxyl groups, carboxylic acids, carboxylic acid derivatives, alkenes, sulphydryls, siloxanes, etc.

A large number of solid supports appropriate for practicing the present invention are available commercially and include, for example, peptide synthesis resins, both with and without attached amino acids and/or peptides (e.g., alkoxybenzyl alcohol resin, aminomethyl resin, aminopolystyrene resin, benzhydrylamine resin, etc. (Bachem)), functionalized controlled pore glass (BioSearch Technologies, Inc.), ion exchange media (Aldrich), functionalized membranes (e.g., —COOH membranes; Asahi Chemical Co., Asahi Glass Co., and Tokuyama Soda Co.), and the like.

Moreover, for applications in which an appropriate solid support is not commercially available, a wide variety of reaction types are available for the functionalization of a solid support surface. For example, supports constructed of a plastic such as polypropylene, can be surface derivatized by chromic acid oxidation, and subsequently converted to hydroxylated or aminomethylated surfaces. The functionalized support is then reacted with a BHQ of complementary reactivity, such as a BHQ active ester, acid chloride or sulfonate ester, for example. Supports made from highly crosslinked divinylbenzene can be surface derivatized by chloromethylation and subsequent functional group manipulation. Additionally, functionalized substrates can be made from etched, reduced polytetrafluoroethylene.

When the support is constructed of a siliceous material such as glass, the surface can be derivatized by reacting the surface Si—OH, SiO—H, and/or Si—Si groups with a functionalizing reagent.

In a preferred embodiment, wherein the substrates are made from glass, the covalent bonding of the reactive group to the glass surface is achieved by conversion of groups on the substrate's surface by a silicon-modifying reagent such as:



where R^a is an alkyl group, such as methyl or ethyl, R^b is a linking group between silicon and X^a, and X^a is a reactive group or a protected reactive group. Silane derivatives having halogens or other leaving groups beside the displayed alkoxy groups are also useful in the present invention.

In another preferred embodiment, the reagent used to functionalize the solid support provides for more than one reactive group per each reagent molecule. Using reagents, such as the compound below, each reactive site on the

36

substrate surface is, in essence, "amplified" to two or more functional groups:



where R^a is an alkyl group (e.g., methyl, ethyl), R^b is a linking group between silicon and X^a, X^a is a reactive group or a protected reactive group and n is an integer between 2 and 50, and more preferably between 2 and 20. The amplification of a BHQ by its attachment to a silicon-containing substrate is intended to be exemplary of the general concept of BHQ amplification. This amplification strategy is equally applicable to other aspects of the invention in which a BHQ analogue is attached to another molecule or solid support.

A number of siloxane functionalizing reagents can be used, for example:

1. Hydroxylalkyl siloxanes (Silylate surface, functionalize with diborane, and H₂O₂ to oxidize to the alcohol)
 - a. allyl trichlorosilane →→ 3-hydroxypropyl
 - b. 7-oct-1-enyl trichlorchlorosilane →→ 8-hydroxyoctyl
2. Diol (dihydroxyalkyl) siloxanes (silylate surface and hydrolyze to diol)
 - a. (glycidyl trimethoxysilane →→ (2,3-dihydroxypropoxy)propyl
3. Aminoalkyl siloxanes (amines requiring no intermediate functionalizing step)
 - a. 3-aminopropyl trimethoxysilane → aminopropyl
4. Dimeric secondary aminoalkyl siloxanes
 - a. bis (3-trimethoxysilylpropyl) amine → bis(silyloxypropyl)amine.

It will be apparent to those of skill in the art that an array of similarly useful functionalizing chemistries is available when support components other than siloxanes are used. Thus, for example alkyl thiols, functionalized as discussed above in the context of siloxane-modifying reagents, can be attached to metal films and subsequently reacted with a BHQ to produce the immobilized compound of the invention.

R groups of use for R^b in the above described embodiments of the present invention include, but are not limited to, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, substituted aryl, substituted arylalkyl, acyl, halogen, hydroxy, amino, alkylamino, acylamino, alkoxy, acyloxy, aryloxy, aryloxyalkyl, mercapto, saturated cyclic hydrocarbon, unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbon, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, substituted heteroaryl, substituted heteroarylalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and heterocyclicalkyl groups and combinations thereof.

50 Nucleic Acid Capture Probes

In one embodiment, an immobilized nucleic acid comprising a BHQ is used as a capture probe. The nucleic acid probe can be attached directly to a solid support, for example by attachment of the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotide of the probe to the solid support. More preferably, however, the probe is attached to the solid support by a linker (i.e., spacer arm, supra). The linker serves to distance the probe from the solid support. The linker is most preferably from about 5 to about 30 atoms in length, more preferably from about 10 to about 50 atoms in length.

In yet another preferred embodiment, the solid support is also used as the synthesis support in preparing the probe. The length and chemical stability of the linker between the solid support and the first 3'-unit of nucleic acid play an important role in efficient synthesis and hybridization of support bound nucleic acids. The linker arm should be sufficiently long so that a high yield (>97%) can be achieved

US 7,019,129 B1

37

during automated synthesis. The required length of the linker will depend on the particular solid support used. For example, a six atom linker is generally sufficient to achieve a >97% yield during automated synthesis of nucleic acids when high cross-linked polystyrene is used as the solid support. The linker arm is preferably at least 20 atoms long in order to attain a high yield (>97%) during automated synthesis when CPG is used as the solid support.

Hybridization of a probe immobilized on a solid support generally requires that the probe be separated from the solid support by at least 30 atoms, more preferably at least 50 atoms. In order to achieve this separation, the linker generally includes a spacer positioned between the linker and the 3'-terminus. For nucleic acid synthesis, the linker arm is usually attached to the 3'-OH of the 3'-terminus by an ester linkage which can be cleaved with basic reagents to free the nucleic acid from the solid support.

A wide variety of linkers are known in the art, which may be used to attach the nucleic acid probe to the solid support. The linker may be formed of any compound, which does not significantly interfere with the hybridization of the target sequence to the probe attached to the solid support. The linker may be formed of, for example, a homopolymeric nucleic acid, which can be readily added on to the linker by automated synthesis. Alternatively, polymers such as functionalized polyethylene glycol can be used as the linker. Such polymers are presently preferred over homopolymeric nucleic acids because they do not significantly interfere with the hybridization of probe to the target nucleic acid. Polyethylene glycol is particularly preferred because it is commercially available, soluble in both organic and aqueous media, easy to functionalize, and completely stable under nucleic acid synthesis and post-synthesis conditions.

The linkages between the solid support, the linker and the probe are preferably not cleaved during synthesis or removal of base protecting groups under basic conditions at high temperature. These linkages can, however, be selected from groups that are cleavable under a variety of conditions. Examples of presently preferred linkages include carbamate, ester and amide linkages.

Acrylamide-Immobilized Probes

In another preferred embodiment, a species is within a matrix, such as an acrylamide matrix and the species bears a BHQ, or the presence of the immobilized species is ascertained using a probe bearing a BHQ. In a preferred embodiment, the immobilization is accomplished in conjunction with the "acrydite" process invented and commercialized by Mosaic Technologies (Cambridge, Mass., see, Rehman et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 27: 649-655 (1999)). The acrydite method allows immobilization of alkene labeled capture probes within a polymerized poly-acrylamide network. When target mixes are run past the immobilized probe band under electrophoresis conditions, the target nucleic acid is captured substantially quantitatively. However, detection of this event currently requires a second probe. In one embodiment, probes bearing a BHQ, and/or a fluorophore, are immobilized in an acrylamide matrix and subsequently contacted with the target mix. By using fluorescent probes as capture probes, signals from target mixes can be directly detected in real time.

Microarrays

The present invention also provides microarrays including immobilized BHQs and compounds (e.g., peptides, nucleic acids, bioactive agents, etc.) functionalized with BHQs. Moreover, the invention provides methods of interrogating microarrays using probes that are functionalized

38

with BHQs. The immobilized species and the probes are selected from substantially any type of molecule, including, but not limited to, small molecules, peptides, enzymes nucleic acids and the like.

Nucleic acid microarrays consisting of a multitude of immobilized nucleic acids are revolutionary tools for the generation of genomic information, see, Debouck et al., in supplement to *Nature Genetics*, 21:48-50 (1999). The discussion that follows focuses on the use of BHQs in conjunction with nucleic acid microarrays. This focus is intended to be illustrative and does not limit the scope of materials with which this aspect of the present invention can be practiced.

In another preferred embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are utilized in a microarray format. The BHQs, or species bearing BHQs can themselves be components of a microarray or, alternatively they can be utilized as a tool to screen components of a microarray.

Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a method of screening a microarray. The method includes contacting the members of the microarray with, for example, a BHQ-bearing probe and interrogating the microarray for regions of fluorescence. In an exemplary embodiment, fluorescent regions are indicative of the presence of an interaction between the BHQ-bearing probe and a microarray component. In another version of this method, the microarray is interrogated for regions in which fluorescence is quenched by the BHQ, again indicating the presence of an interaction between the BHQ-bearing probe and a component of the microarray.

In another preferred embodiment, the array comprises immobilized BHQ-bearing donor-acceptor energy transfer probes as the interrogating species. In this embodiment, the probe "turns on" when hybridized to its target. Such arrays are easily prepared and read, and can be designed to give quantitative data. Arrays comprising BHQ-bearing probes are valuable tools for expression analysis and clinical genomic screening.

In another preferred embodiment, the immobilized BHQ-bearing probe is not a donor-acceptor energy transfer probe. A microarray based on such a format can be used to probe for the presence of interactions between an analyte and the immobilized probe by, for example, observing the quenching of analyte fluorescence upon interaction between the probe and analyte.

In a further preferred embodiment, the microarrays comprise n regions that comprise identical or different species (e.g., nucleic acid sequences, bioactive agents). For example, the microarray can comprise a mixture of n regions comprising groups of identical species. In a preferred embodiment, n is a number from 2 to 100, more preferably, from 10 to 1,000, and more preferably from 100 to 10,000. In a still further preferred embodiment, the n regions are patterned on a substrate at n distinct locations in a manner that allows the identity of each of the n locations to be ascertained.

In yet another preferred embodiment, the invention also provides a method for preparing a microarray of n BHQ-bearing probes. The method includes attaching BHQ-bearing probes to selected regions of a substrate. A variety of methods are currently available for making arrays of biological macromolecules, such as arrays nucleic acid molecules. The following discussion focuses on the assembly of a microarray of BHQ-bearing probes, this focus is for reasons of brevity and is intended to be illustrative and not limiting.

US 7,019,129 B1

39

One method for making ordered arrays of BHQ-bearing probes on a substrate is a "dot blot" approach. In this method, a vacuum manifold transfers a plurality, e.g., 96, aqueous samples of probes from 3 millimeter diameter wells to a substrate. The probe is immobilized on the porous membrane by baking the membrane or exposing it to UV radiation. A common variant of this procedure is a "slot-blot" method in which the wells have highly-elongated oval shapes.

Another technique employed for making ordered arrays of probes uses an array of pins dipped into the wells, e.g., the 96 wells of a microtiter plate, for transferring an array of samples to a substrate, such as a porous membrane. One array includes pins that are designed to spot a membrane in a staggered fashion, for creating an array of 9216 spots in a 22×22 cm area. See, Lehrach, et al., HYBRIDIZATION FINGERPRINTING IN GENOME MAPPING AND SEQUENCING, GENOME ANALYSIS, Vol. 1, Davies et al, Eds., Cold Springs Harbor Press, pp. 39–81 (1990).

An alternate method of creating ordered arrays of probes is analogous to that described by Pirrung et al. (U.S. Pat. No. 5,143,854, issued 1992), and also by Fodor et al., (*Science*, 251: 767–773 (1991)). This method involves synthesizing different probes at different discrete regions of a particle or other substrate. This method is preferably used with relatively short probe molecules, e.g., less than 20 bases. A related method has been described by Southern et al. (*Genomics*, 13: 1008–1017 (1992)).

Khrapko, et al., *DNA Sequence*, 1: 375–388 (1991) describes a method of making an nucleic acid matrix by spotting DNA onto a thin layer of polyacrylamide. The spotting is done manually with a micropipette.

The substrate can also be patterned using techniques such as photolithography (Kleinfield et al., *J. Neurosci.* 8:4098–120 (1998)), photoetching, chemical etching and microcontact printing (Kumar et al., *Langmuir* 10: 1498–511 (1994)). Other techniques for forming patterns on a substrate will be readily apparent to those of skill in the art.

The size and complexity of the pattern on the substrate is limited only by the resolution of the technique utilized and the purpose for which the pattern is intended. For example, using microcontact printing, features as small as 200 nm are layered onto a substrate. See, Xia, Y., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:3274–75 (1995). Similarly, using photolithography, patterns with features as small as 1 μm are produced. See, Hickman et al., *J Vac. Sci. Technol.* 12:607–16 (1994). Patterns which are useful in the present invention include those which include features such as wells, enclosures, partitions, recesses, inlets, outlets, channels, troughs, diffraction gratings and the like.

In a presently preferred embodiment, the patterning is used to produce a substrate having a plurality of adjacent wells, indentations or holes to contain the probes. In general, each of these substrate features is isolated from the other wells by a raised wall or partition and the wells do not readily fluidically communicate. Thus, a particle, reagent or other substance, placed in a particular well remains substantially confined to that well. In another preferred embodiment, the patterning allows the creation of channels through the device whereby an analyte or other substance can enter and/or exit the device.

In another embodiment, the probes are immobilized by "printing" them directly onto a substrate or, alternatively, a "lift off" technique can be utilized. In the lift off technique, a patterned resist is laid onto the substrate, and a probe is laid down in those areas not covered by the resist and the resist is subsequently removed. Resists appropriate for use with

40

the substrates of the present invention are known to those of skill in the art. See, for example, Kleinfield et al., *J. Neurosci.* 8:4098–120 (1998). Following removal of the photoresist, a second probe, having a structure different from the first probe can be bonded to the substrate on those areas initially covered by the resist. Using this technique, substrates with patterns of probes having different characteristics can be produced. Similar substrate configurations are accessible through microprinting a layer with the desired characteristics directly onto the substrate. See, Mrkish et al. *Ann. Rev. Biophys. Biomol. Struct.* 25:55–78 (1996).

Spacer Groups

As used herein, the term "spacer group," refers to constituents of BHQ-bearing probes. The spacer group links donor and/or acceptor moieties and other groups to the nucleic acid, peptide or other component of the probe. The spacer groups can be hydrophilic (e.g., tetraethylene glycol, hexaethylene glycol, polyethylene glycol) or they can be hydrophobic (e.g., hexane, decane, etc.).

In a preferred embodiment, using solid supports the immobilized construct includes a spacer between the solid support reactive group and the BHQ analogue. The linker is preferably selected from C₆–C₃₀ alkyl groups, C₆–C₃₀ substituted alkyl groups, polyols, polyethers (e.g., poly(ethylene glycol)), polyamines, polyamino acids, polysaccharides and combinations thereof.

In certain embodiments, it is advantageous to have the donor and/or acceptor of the probe attached to another polymeric component by a group that provides flexibility and distance from the polymeric component. Using such spacer groups, the properties of the donor and/or acceptor adjacent to another probe component is modulated. Properties that are usefully controlled include, for example, hydrophobicity, hydrophilicity, surface-activity, the distance of the donor and/or BHQ moiety from the other probe components (e.g., carrier molecule) and the distance of the donor from the BHQ.

In an exemplary embodiment, the spacer serves to distance the BHQ from a nucleic acid. Spacers with this characteristic have several uses. For example, a BHQ held too closely to the nucleic acid may not interact with the donor group, or it may interact with too low of an affinity. When a BHQ is itself sterically demanding, the interaction leading to quenching can be undesirably weakened, or it may not occur at all, due to a sterically-induced hindering of the approach of the two components.

When the construct comprising the BHQ is immobilized by attachment to, for example, a solid support, the construct can also include a spacer moiety between the reactive group of the solid support and the BHQ analogue, or other probe component bound to the solid support.

In yet a further embodiment, a spacer group used in the probes of the invention is provided with a group that can be cleaved to release a bound moiety, such as, for example, a BHQ, fluorophore, minor groove binder, intercalating moiety, and the like from the polymeric component. Many cleavable groups are known in the art. See, for example, Jung et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Acta*, 761: 152–162 (1983); Joshi et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 265: 14518–14525 (1990); Zarling et al., *J. Immunol.*, 124: 913–920 (1980); Bouizar et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 155: 141–147 (1986); Park et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 261: 205–210 (1986); Browning et al., *J. Immunol.*, 143: 1859–1867 (1989). Moreover a broad range of cleavable, bifunctional (both homo- and hetero-bifunctional) spacer arms are commercially available from suppliers such as Pierce.

US 7,019,129 B1

41

An exemplary embodiment utilizing spacer groups is set forth in Formulae VII and VIII, above. In these formulae, Rb is either stable or it can be cleaved by chemical or photochemical reactions. For example, Rb groups comprising ester or disulfide bonds can be cleaved by hydrolysis and reduction, respectively. Also within the scope of the present invention is the use of Rb groups which are cleaved by light such as, for example, nitrobenzyl derivatives, phenacyl groups, benzoin esters, etc. Other such cleavable groups are well-known to those of skill in the art.

Kits

In another aspect, the present invention provides kits containing one or more of the BHQs or BHQ-bearing compositions of the invention. In one embodiment, a kit will include a reactive BHQ derivative and directions for attaching this derivative to another molecule. In another embodiment, the kit includes a BHQ-labeled nucleic acid that optionally is also labeled with a fluorophore and directions for using this nucleic acid in one or more assay formats. Other formats for kits will be apparent to those of skill in the art and are within the scope of the present invention.

The materials and methods of the present invention are further illustrated by the examples which follow. These examples are offered to illustrate, but not to limit the claimed invention.

EXAMPLES

The following Examples illustrate the synthesis and characterization of exemplary species of the invention.

Example 1 sets for the synthesis of the quencher BH 1 and its conversion into a controlled pore glass conjugate. Examples 2 and 3, provide similar details regarding the quenchers BH2 and BH3.

Example 4 sets forth the incorporation of exemplary quenchers of the invention into nucleic acid-based donor-acceptor energy transfer probes. The quenching efficiency of the BHQs in the probes is assessed and compared to that of the art-recognized dark quencher DABCYL.

EXAMPLE 1

This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH1 and derivatives thereof.

1.1 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N, N-di(2-hydroxyethyl)azobenzene, (BH1 diol), 6

To a rapidly stirred suspension of 25 g (60 mmol) Fast Corinth V salt (Aldrich 22,736-5) in 400 mL of chilled water (ice bath) was added 50 g (276 mmol) N-phenyldiethanolamine dissolved in 400 mL methanol and 300 mL sat'd NaHCO₃ over 20 min. The mixture changed color from yellow to deep red during the course of the addition. The mixture was chilled for an additional 1 hr after addition, then filtered through a medium glass frit. The dark red solid was washed with 300 ml of ice cold water and air dried for 3 days. The yield of 6 was 27 g, (91%). TLC rf 0.15 (Silica plate, 5% MeOH in CH₂Cl₂). MALDI M/e 493.11 (Calc'd 492.5). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, δ) 7.9 (d, 2H), 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.45(d, 1H), 7.4(s, 1H), 6.8(d, 2H), 4.0(s, 3H), 3.95(t, 2H), 3.85(t, 2H), 3.7(t, 2H), 3.6(t, 2H), 2.7(s, 3H), 2.5(s, 3H).

42

1.2 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxytrityl)ethyl)azobenzene (DMT-BH1), 7

A solution of 25 g (50 mmol) 6 in 400 mL of dry pyridine was stripped to dryness, and 7 g (21 mmol) of DMT-chloride was added in 300 mL of dry pyridine. The solution sat for 3 days at rt, then was stripped to a tar. The black residue was dissolved in 600 mL ethyl acetate, and washed with 300 mL of 1 N aqueous citric acid, followed by a 300 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO₃ wash. The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄ and stripped to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 55 by 8 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 0.5% MeOH, 0.5% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂. After 1 L of solvent eluted, a gradient to 2% MeOH was run over 4 L. Fractions containing pure 7 (0.42 rf, silica plate, 2% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 2.8 g (17% yield) of 2 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 793.88 (Calc'd 794.5). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, δ) 7.85 (d, 2H), 7.7 (m, 4H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.45(d, 1H), 7.4–7.1 (m, 10H), 6.8(m, 6H), 4.0(s, 3H), 3.85(m, 2H), 3.75 (s, 6H), 3.7(m, 2H), 3.5–3.3(m, 4H), 2.7(s, 3H), 2.5(s, 3H).

1.3 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-O-(‘N’-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-4,4'dimethoxytrityl)-ethyl)azobenzene, (DMT-BH1 amidite), 8

A solution of 2.8 g (3.5 mmol) of 7 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 1.5 g (5 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 60 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 7. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 200 mL of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with 100 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO₃ and dried over MgSO₄. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 25 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted with a mobile phase of 75% Pet. ether, 23% EtOAc, 2% pyridine. Fractions containing pure 8 (0.67 rf, pre-run silica plate, 50% Pet. ether, 48% EtOAc, 2% pyridine) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 1 g (20% yield) of 8 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 995.5 (Calc'd 994.5).

1.4 Synthesis of BH1-CPG, 9

11 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500 Å, Biosearch part # BGS-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 50 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂, followed by one 50 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 1 g of 8. 25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 1 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 50 mL of acetonitrile, then 50 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac₂O, 10% N-methylimidazole and 10%

US 7,019,129 B1

43

pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 . The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 16 $\mu\text{M/g}$.

EXAMPLE 2

This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH2 and derivatives thereof.

2.1 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2' 5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-di (2-hydroxyethyl) azobenzene, (BH2 diol), 10

To a rapidly stirred suspension of 25 g (60 mmol) Fast Black K salt (Aldrich 20,151-0) in 400 mL of chilled water (ice bath) was added 50 g (276 mmol) N-phenyldiethanolamine dissolved in 400 mL methanol and 300 mL sat'd NaHCO_3 over 20 min. The mixture changed color from brown to deep blue during the course of the addition. The mixture was chilled for an additional 1 hr after addition, then filtered through a medium glass frit. The dark blue solid was washed with 300 mL of ice cold water and air dried for 3 days. The yield of 10 was 22 g, (74%). TLC rf 0.2 (Silica plate, 5% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2). MALDI M/e 493.13 (Calc'd 494.4). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3,δ) 8.3 (d, 2H), 8.0(d, 2H), 7.85(d, 2H), 7.4(d, 2H), 6.7(m, 2H), 4.1(s, 3H), 3.95(s, 3H), 3.9(t, 2H), 3.8(t, 2H), 3.7(t, 2H), 3.5(t, 3H).

2.2 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2',5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4' dimethoxytrityl)ethylazobenzene, (DMT-BH2), 11

A solution of 22 g (44 mmol) 10 in 400 mL of dry pyridine was stripped to dryness, and 7 g (21 mmol) of DMT-chloride was added in 300 mL of dry pyridine. The solution sat for 3 days at rt, then was stripped to a tar. The black residue was dissolved in 600 mL ethyl acetate, and washed with 300 mL of 1 N aqueous citric acid, followed by a 300 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 wash. The organic layer was dried over MgSO_4 and stripped to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 55 by 4 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 0.5% MeOH, 0.5% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2 . After 1 L of solvent eluted, a gradient to 2% MeOH was run over 4 L. Fractions containing pure 11 (0.4 rf, silica plate, 2% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 2.8 g (17% yield) of 11 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 794.2 (Calc'd 796.4). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3, δ) 8.3 (d, 2H), 7.9(d, 2H), 7.75(d, 2H), 7.4-7.1(m, 9H), 6.7-6.5(m, 6H), 4.1(s, 3H), 3.95(s, 3H), 3.9-3.6(m, 12H), 3.3(t, 3H).

2.3 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2'5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-O—(N₁,N₂-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite) ethyl)-(2-O—(4, 4' dim ethoxytrityl) ethyl)-azobenzene, (DMT-BH2 amidite), 12

A solution of 2.8 g (3.5 mmol) 11 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 1.5 g (5 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 60 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 11. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 200 mL of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with 100 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 and dried over MgSO_4 . The solvent was evapo-

44

rated, and the residue applied to a 25 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted with a mobile phase of 75% Pet. ether, 23% EtOAc, 2% pyridine. Fractions containing pure 12 (0.71 rf, pre-run silica plate, 50% Pet. ether, 48% EtOAc, 2% pyridine) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 1 g (20% yield) of 11 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 996.06 (Calc'd 996.4).

2.4 Synthesis of BH2-CPG, 13

10 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500 Å, Biosearch part # BG5-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 , followed by one 50 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 1 g of 12. 25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 1 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 50 mL of acetonitrile, then 50 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac_2O , 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 . The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 30 $\mu\text{M/g}$.

EXAMPLE 3

35 This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH3 and derivatives thereof.

3.1 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-di(2-hydroxyethyl) azobenzene chloride, (BH3 diol), 14

3-amino-7-(diethylamino)-5-phenylphenazium chloride (methylene violet 3RAX, Aldrich 30,750-5), 10 g (26 mmol) was stirred in 200 mL 1 N HCl while in an ice bath. A solution of 2 g NaNO_2 in 20 mL of cold water was added dropwise over 20 min. The solution was stirred for 30 min. N-phenyldiethanolamine, 4.7 g (27 mmol), was dissolved in 100 mL of methanol and added to the methylene violet solution, after the pH was adjusted to 6 with NaOH solution. The solution changed color from violet to dark green. The solution was stirred for 1 hr, then extracted three times with 200 mL of CH_2Cl_2 . The aqueous layer was evaporated, and the dark green solid was triturated with 3 200 mL portions of pyridine. The pyridine was evaporated to give 2.9 g (21% yield) of 14 as a dark green solid. (0.85 rf, silica plate, 15% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) MALDI M/e 535.6 (calc'd 535.75).

3.2 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-(2-O-(4, 4' dimethoxytrityl)ethylazobenzene chloride, (DMT-BH3), 15

Compound 14, 2.9 g (5.4 mmol) was dried by stripping with 100 mL dry pyridine, and then re-dissolved in 100 mL dry pyridine along with 2 g (5.9 mmol) of DMT chloride. The mixture sat overnight, and the solvent was stripped. The

US 7,019,129 B1

45

residue was re-dissolved in 200 mL CH₂Cl₂ and washed with 200 mL 1 M aqueous citric acid. The aqueous layer was backwashed with two 200 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂, and the combined organic layers were evaporated to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 20 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 2% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂. A gradient to 6% MeOH was run over 3 L. Fractions containing pure 15 (0.9 rf, silica plate, 15% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 0.5 g (11% yield) of 15 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 837.6 (calc'd 836.75).

3.3 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-(2-O-(N', N'-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxy-trityl)ethyl)azobenzene chloride, (DMT-BH3 amidite), 16

A solution of 0.5 g (0.6 mmol) 15 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 0.5 g (1.7 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 20 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 15. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 100 mL of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with 50 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO₃, and dried over MgSO₄. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 15 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 1% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂. A gradient to 6% MeOH was run over 2 L. Fractions containing pure 16 (0.82 rf, pre-run silica plate, 5% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 0.26 g (42% yield) of 16 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 1037.3 (Calc'd 1036.75)

Synthesis of BH3-CPG, 17

2 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500 Å, Biosearch part # BG5-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 20 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂, followed by one 20 µL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 0.26 g of 16. 25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 0.5 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 10 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 20 mL of acetonitrile, then 20 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 20 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac₂O, 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 20 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 20 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂. The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 12 µM/g.

EXAMPLE 4

This Example sets forth the preparation and characterization of nucleic acid analogues of exemplary BHQs of the invention. The nucleic acid-BHQ conjugates are compared to a similar conjugate of DABCYL.

The efficiency of donor-acceptor energy transfer (FRET) is inversely proportional to the sixth power of the distance

46

between the donor and acceptor molecules (Stryer, *L. Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 1978, 47, 819–846). This property can be utilized to monitor hybridization of nucleic acids labeled at one end with a donor fluorophore (reporter) and at the opposite end with an acceptor (quencher) (Parkhurst et al., *Biochemistry* 1995, 34, 285–292). In the absence of a complementary target sequence the dual labeled probe is very flexible and undergoes rapid conformational changes so that the average distance between the donor (D) and acceptor (A) is close enough for efficient FRET to occur. Upon hybridization to complementary target, a rigid DNA duplex is formed separating the D-A pair and reducing the efficiency of transfer. This manifests itself in an increase in the fluorescence intensity of the reporter.

15 4.1 Synthesis and Characterization of BHQ probes

To evaluate the efficiency of the Black Hole Quencher dyes (BHQs), the ability of these dyes to quench a series of common fluorophores was compared to the standard quencher dyes DABCYL and TAMRA in a complementation assay. As TAMRA exhibits its own native fluorescence, it can only be used to quench lower wavelength dyes and thus was only used to quench FAM in this assay.

25 4.1a Materials and Methods

Nucleic acids were synthesized on a Biosearch 8700 automated DNA synthesizer using standard phosphoramidite chemistry. A^{BZ}, C_{AC}, T, and G^{DMF} phosphoramidites were supplied by Chruachem. TAMRA, DABCYL, and BHQ controlled pore glass (CPG) supports from Biosearch Technologies were used for attachment of quencher dyes to the 3' terminus of nucleic acids. 5' fluorophore labeling was accomplished using fluorophore phosphoramidites with the exception of Cy5 which was added as a succinimidyl ester to 5' amino nucleic acids using the manufacturers' protocol. 6-FAM and TFA-aminoethyl amidite were from Biosearch. Cy3 phosphoramidite and Cy5 succinimidyl ester were from 40 Amersham Pharmacia Biotech. Cleavage and deprotection of oligos was carried out in ammonia at 60° C. for 3 hrs, with the exception of 3' TAMRA oligos which were deprotected in 1:3 t-butylamine:H₂O for 8 hours at 60° C., and 3' BH3 oligos which were deprotected for 1 hour at 60° C. in 45 ammonia. Following deprotection, dual labeled probes were evaporated to dryness then resuspended in HPLC grade water and filtered through 0.45 µM filters to prepare for HPLC purification. A two step method of HPLC purification of anion exchange followed by reverse phase HPLC was 50 used to purify all dual labeled probes. Purified probes were analyzed by both anion exchange and reverse phase HPLC. Complementary nucleic acid was purified on a Biosearch Micropure II reverse phase cartridge using the standard protocol.

55 All fluorescence measurements were taken using a Spectramax Gemini fluorescent microplate reader. Probes were dissolved at 200 nM in a buffer composed of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 50 mM KCl, and 3.5 mM MgCl₂, pH 8.3, both in the presence and absence of a five fold excess of perfectly complimentary nucleic acid. Fluorescein was excited at 470 nm and emission was read at 530 nm with a 515 nm cutoff filter in place. Cy3 was excited at 510 nm and read at 567 nm with a 550 nm cutoff filter. Cy5 was excited at 630 nm and read at 660 nm with a 630 nm cutoff filter. Average 60 fluorescent intensity from a set of eight buffer blanks was subtracted from all probe fluorescence measurements before calculation of signal to noise ratios.

US 7,019,129 B1

47

The set of nucleic acids displayed in Table 2 was synthesized and rigorously purified by HPLC:

TABLE 2

Dual labeled probes prepared for hybridization assay.			
Reporter	em max (5')	Sequence (5' to 3')	Quencher (3')
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	TAMRA
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	DABCYL
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	BH1
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	BH2
Cy3	573	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	DABCYL
Cy3	573	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	BH1
Cy3	573	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	BH2
Cy5	678	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	DABCYL
Cy5	678	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	BH2
Cy5	678	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TGC G (SEQ ID NO:1)	BH3

The signal to noise ratio (S:N) of hybridization for each probe was measured in the presence of a five fold molar excess of perfectly complementary nucleic acid. All hybrid-

48

4.2 Results

Improved quenching by the BHQs was demonstrated for three widely separated fluorophores. A two fold increase in signal to noise ratio is achieved by replacing DABCYL with BH1 for the fluorescein probe. S:N increases are more striking for the cyanine dye labeled probes, with approximately a ten fold increase in S:N observed for the BH2 quenched Cy3 probe and a thirty fold S:N increase for the BH3 quenched Cy5 probe over identical structures quenched with DABCYL. This is consistant with the theory that efficiency of FRET is proportional to the magnitude of overlap between the donor and acceptor (Haugland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 1969, 63, 23–30). DABCYL, which absorbs maximally at 474 nm, quenches the red shifted reporter dyes with decreasing efficiency, whereas the BHQs can be chosen accordingly to have maximum spectral overlap with the reporter of interest.

Data from the hybridization assay is presented in Table 3.

TABLE 3

donor/acceptor	Signal to noise ratios of dual labeled FRET probes								
	Noise			Signal			Average	Average	S:N
	#1	#2	#3	#1	#2	#3			
FAM/TAM	89.18	91.50	89.54	279.13	277.08	272.78	90.08	276.33	3.07
FAM/DAB	89.97	81.03	86.74	348.98	323.82	352.00	85.92	341.61	3.98
FAM/BH1	39.24	37.05	38.85	296.53	316.24	311.15	38.38	307.97	8.02
FAM/BH2	67.12	66.64	56.79	445.48	415.78	442.75	63.52	434.34	6.84
Cy3/DAB	19.66	19.65	19.39	147.70	139.83	154.35	19.57	147.29	7.53
Cy3/BH1	1.86	2.09	2.41	140.72	135.20	135.25	2.12	137.06	64.51
Cy3/BH2	2.02	1.94	2.08	149.65	148.89	150.40	2.02	149.65	74.15
Cy5/DAB	57.09	59.15	50.50	157.36	176.04	216.59	55.58	183.33	3.30
Cy5/BH2	19.92	21.47	22.53	263.64	288.20	256.07	21.31	269.31	12.64
Cy5/BH3	1.65	2.17	1.55	197.96	210.71	208.06	1.79	205.58	114.79

ization assays were performed in a buffer composed of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 50 mM KCl, and 3.5 mM MgCl₂, pH 8.3. S:N was calculated by dividing the fluorescence intensity of the probe in the presence of complement by the fluorescence intensity of the probe alone after subtracting out the fluorescence intensity of the buffer blank from each. All fluorescence measurements were taken in triplicate using a Spectramax Gemini fluorescent plate reader.

It is understood that the examples and embodiments described herein are for illustrative purposes only and that various modifications or changes in light thereof will be suggested to persons skilled in the art and are to be included within the spirit and purview of this application and are considered within the scope of the appended claims. All publications, patents, and patent applications cited herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 1

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 25

US 7,019,129 B1

49

50

-continued

<212> TYPE: DNA
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial
 <220> FEATURE:
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: probe synthetic

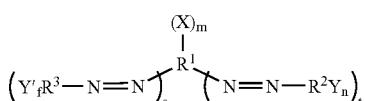
<400> SEQUENCE: 1

atgcccctccc ccatgccatc ctgcg

25

What is claimed is:

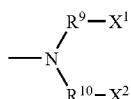
1. A quencher of excited state energy having the formula:



wherein,

R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;

X, Y and Y' are members independently selected from reactive functional groups, wherein at least one of X, Y and Y' is:



wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl; and

X¹ is a member selected from CH₃, —OH, COOH, —NR'R'', —SH, and —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂);

X² is OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)

wherein,

R', R'', are members independently selected from H, and substituted or unsubstituted alkyl; and

X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from substituted and unsubstituted alkyl;

f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (fxs) is greater than 1, the Y' groups are the same or different;

m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different;

n is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when (nxt) is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different;

s is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R³ groups are the same or different; and

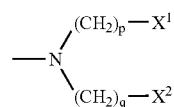
t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R² groups are the same or different.

2. The compound according to claim 1 wherein at least one member selected from the group consisting of m, n and f is at least 1.

15 3. The quencher according to claim 1, wherein a member selected from R⁹, R¹⁰ and combinations thereof comprises a polyether.

4. The quencher according to claim 1, wherein said polyether is a member selected from poly(ethylene glycol), poly(propylene glycol) and copolymers thereof.

20 5. The quencher according to claim 1, wherein at least one of X, Y and Y' is:



wherein,

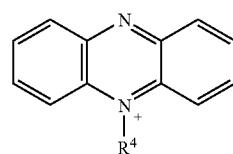
p and q are numbers independently selected from 1 to 20, inclusive.

6. The quencher according to claim 5, wherein X³ is cyanoethyl; and X⁴ is isopropyl.

35 7. The quencher according to claim 5, wherein p and q are numbers independently selected from 2 to 16, inclusive.

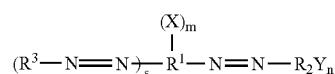
8. The quencher according to claim 1, wherein R¹ and R² are members independently selected from aryl substituted with a member selected from the group consisting of —NR'R'', nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy and combinations thereof, wherein R' and R'' are members independently selected from H, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl.

45 9. The quencher according to claim 1, wherein at least one member selected from the group consisting of R¹, R² and R³ comprises:



50 where R⁴ is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

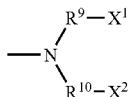
10. A quencher of excited state energy having the formula:



US 7,019,129 B1

51

X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups, wherein at least one of X and Y is:



wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl; and

X¹ is a member selected from —CH₃, H, —COOH, —NR'R'', —SH, 9 and —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂);
X² is —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)

wherein,

R', R'', are members independently selected from H, and substituted or unsubstituted alkyl; and

X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from substituted and unsubstituted alkyl;

m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different;

n is a number selected from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different;

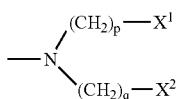
s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different;

R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

11. The quencher according to claim **10**, wherein a member selected from R⁹, R¹⁰ and combinations thereof comprises a polyether.

12. The quencher according to claim **11**, wherein said polyether is a member selected from poly(ethylene glycol), poly(propyleneglycol) and copolymers thereof.

13. The quencher according to claim **11**, wherein at least one of X and Y is:



wherein,

p and q are numbers independently selected from 1 to 20, inclusive.

14. The quencher according to claim **13**, wherein

X³ is cyanoethyl; and
X⁴ is isopropyl.

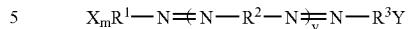
15. The quencher according to claim **13**, wherein p and q are numbers independently selected from 2 to 16, inclusive.

16. The quencher according to claim **10**, wherein R¹ and R² are members independently selected from aryl substituted with a member selected from the group consisting of —NR'R'', nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy and combinations thereof

wherein R' and R'' are members independently selected from H, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl.

52

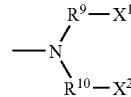
17. A quencher of excited state energy having the structure:



wherein

R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof;

X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups, wherein at least one of X and Y is:



wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl; and

X¹ is a member selected from CH₃, —OH, —COOH, —NR'R'', —SH, and OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂);
X² is —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)

wherein,

R', R'', are members independently selected from H, and substituted or unsubstituted alkyl; and

X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from substituted and unsubstituted alkyl;

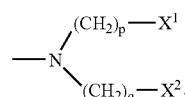
m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different;

v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1 the R² groups are the same or different.

18. The quencher according to claim **17**, wherein a member selected from R⁹, R¹⁰ and combinations thereof comprises a polyether.

19. The quencher according to claim **18**, wherein said polyether is a member selected from poly(ethylene glycol), poly(propyleneglycol) and copolymers thereof.

20. The quencher according to claim **17**, wherein at least one of X and Y is:



wherein

p and q are numbers independently selected from 1 to 20, inclusive.

21. The quencher according to claim **20**, wherein p and q are numbers independently selected from 2 to 16, inclusive.

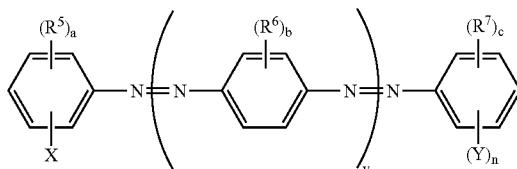
22. The quencher according to claim **17**, wherein R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from the group consisting of aryl substituted with a member selected from —NR'R'', nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy and combinations thereof,

US 7,019,129 B1

53

wherein R' and R" are members independently selected from H, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

23. A quencher of excited state energy having the structure:



5

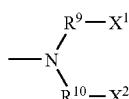
10

15

wherein

R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R", substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy, wherein R' and R" are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl;

X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups, wherein at least one of X and Y is:



20

25

30

wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from substituted and unsubstituted alkyl; and

X¹ is a member selected from —CH₃, H, —COOH, —NH₂, —SH, and P(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂);

X² is —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)

wherein, X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from substituted and unsubstituted alkyl;

n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive;

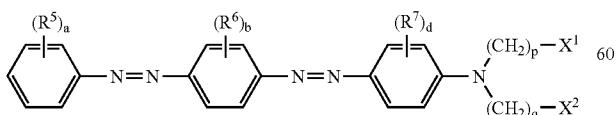
a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different;

b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (v×b) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different;

c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and

v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the v phenyl rings is the same or different.

24. A quencher of excited state energy according to claim 23 having the structure:



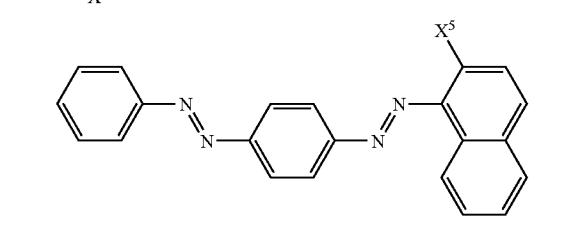
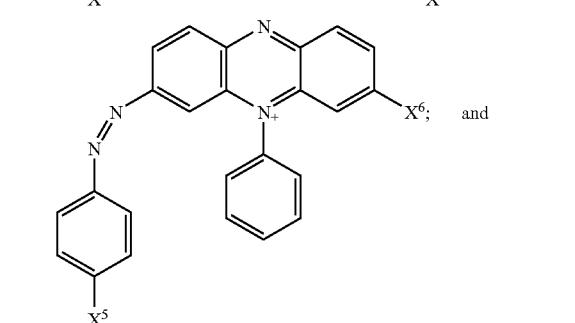
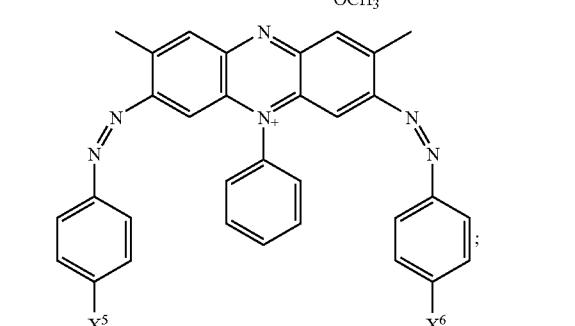
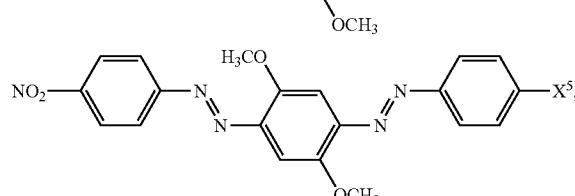
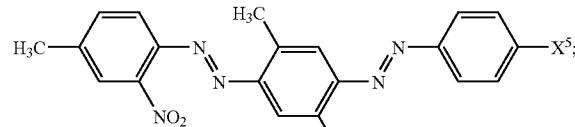
60

25. The quencher according to claim 24, wherein X³ is cyanoethyl; and

X⁴ is isopropyl.

54

26. A quencher of excited state energy having a structure which is a member selected from:



wherein,

X⁵ and X⁶ are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, ER', —NR'R", —SH, —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂), wherein at least one of X⁵ and X⁶ is a reactive functional group;

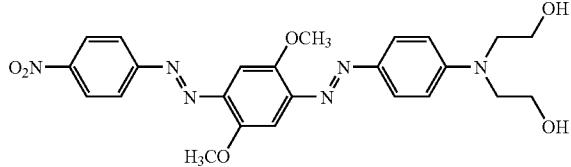
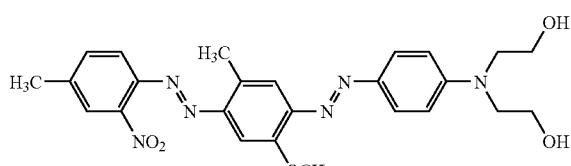
R' is a member selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl;

R" is a member selected from the group consisting of H and substituted alkyl; and

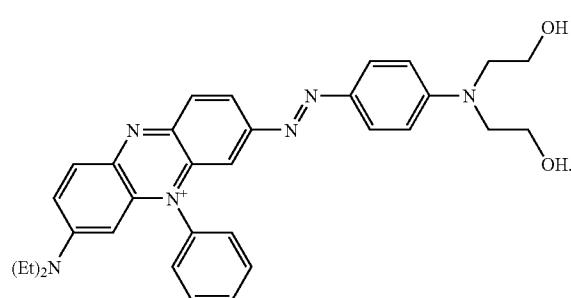
X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from CN, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

27. A compound having a formula which is a member selected from:

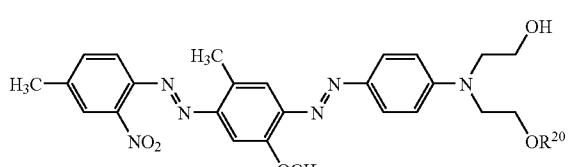
US 7,019,129 B1

55

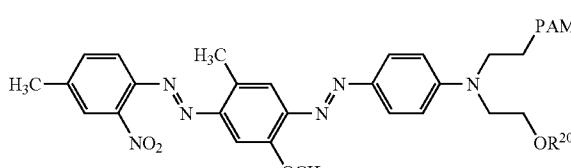
and



28. A compound having a formula which is a member selected from:



and

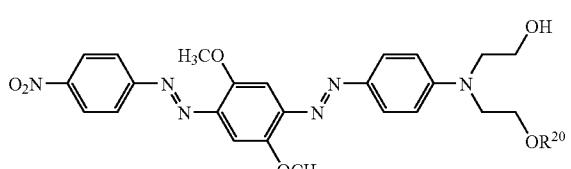


wherein

 R^{20} is a protecting group; and

PAM is a phosphoramidite.

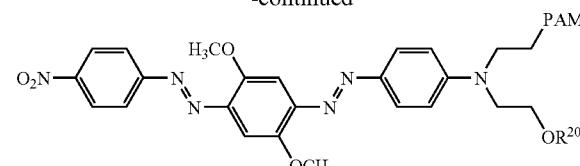
29. A compound having a formula which is a member selected from:



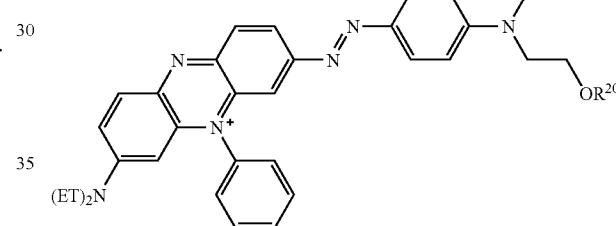
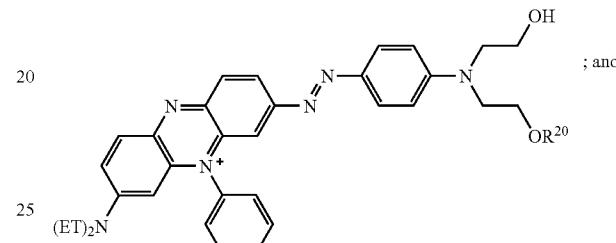
and

56

-continued



wherein
 R^{20} is a protecting group; and
PAM is a phosphoramidite.
30. A compound having a formula which is a member selected from:

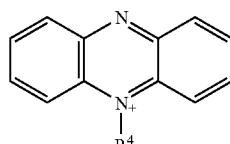


31. The quencher according to claim **3**, wherein X^3 is cyanoethyl; and X^4 is isopropyl.

32. The quencher according to claim **5**, wherein R^1 and R^2 are members independently selected from aryl substituted with a member selected from the group consisting of $-NR'R''$, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_6 alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_6 alkoxy and combinations thereof,

wherein R' and R'' are members independently selected from H, and substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_6 alkyl.

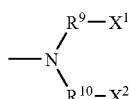
33. The quencher according to claim **5**, wherein at least one member selected from the group consisting of R^1 , R^2 and R comprises:



wherein R^4 is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

34. The quencher according to claim **26** wherein at least one of X^5 and X^6 has the formula:

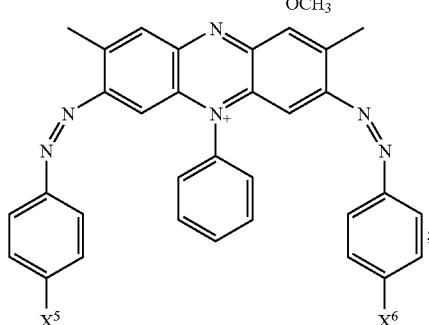
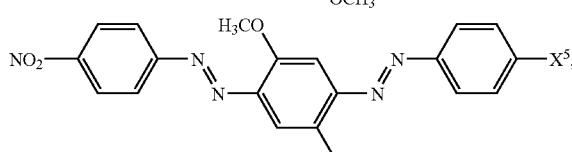
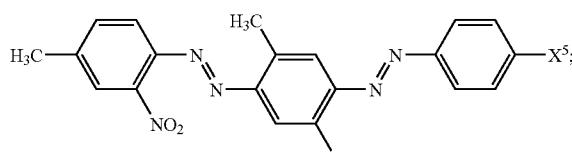
US 7,019,129 B1

57

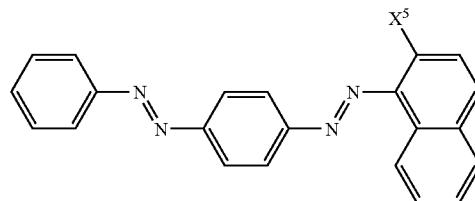
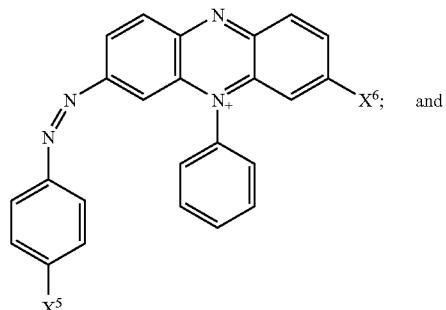
wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from substituted and unsubstituted alkyl; X¹ is a member selected from —CH₃, H, —COOH, —NH₂, H, and —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂); and X² is —OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂) wherein,

X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from substituted and unsubstituted alkyl.

35. A quencher of excited state energy having a structure which is a member selected from:

**58**

-continued



wherein

40 at least one of X⁵ and X⁶ is a bond conjugating said quencher to a nucleic acid carrier molecule.

* * * * *

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 7,019,129 B1
APPLICATION NO. : 09/567863
DATED : March 28, 2006
INVENTOR(S) : Ronald M. Cook, Matt Lytle and Daren Dick

Page 1 of 3

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

In claim 1, line 43:

Please replace “CH₃” with “—CH₃”.

In claim 1, line 45:

Please replace “OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)” with “—OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)”.

In claim 4, line 16:

Please replace “claim 1” with “claim 3”.

In claim 10, line 12:

Please replace “H” with “—OH”.

In claim 10, line 13:

Please remove “9”.

In claim 13, line 42:

Please replace “claim 11” with “claim 10”.

In claim 17, line 27:

Please replace “CH₃” with “—CH₃”.

In claim 17, line 28:

Please replace “OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)” with “—OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)”.

In claim 23, line 37:

Please replace “H” with “—OH”.

In claim 23, line 38:

Please replace “—NH₂” with “—NH₂”.

Please replace “P(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)” with “—OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)”.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 7,019,129 B1

Page 2 of 3

APPLICATION NO. : 09/567863

DATED : March 28, 2006

INVENTOR(S) : Ronald M. Cook, Matt Lytle and Daren Dick

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

In claim 26, line 54:

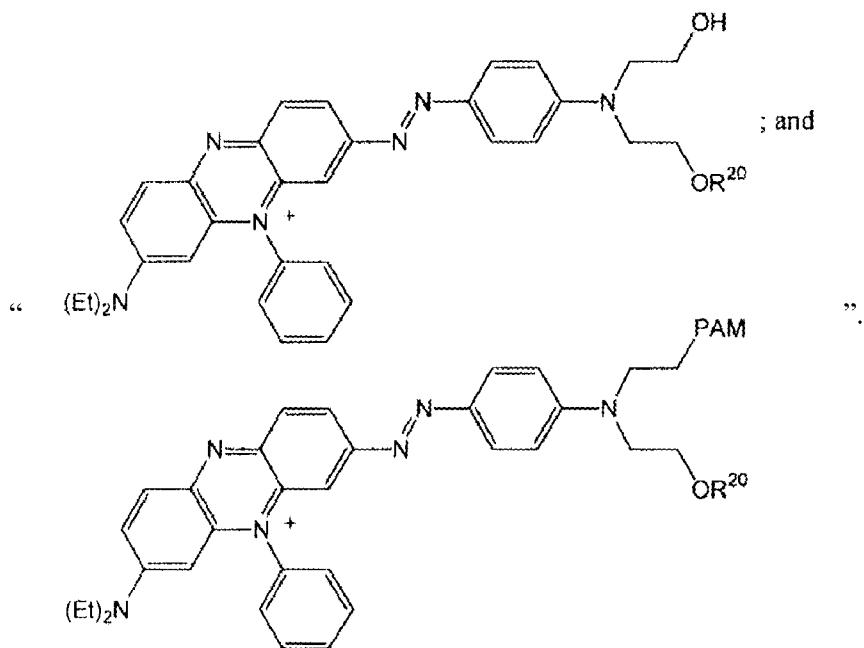
Please replace “ER” with “—OR”.

In claim 26, line 55:

Please replace “DOOR” with “—COOR”.

In claim 30, lines 16 to 39:

Please delete the structures shown and replace with the following structures:

In claim 33, line 53:Please replace “R” with “R³”.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 7,019,129 B1
APPLICATION NO. : 09/567863
DATED : March 28, 2006
INVENTOR(S) : Ronald M. Cook, Matt Lytle and Daren Dick

Page 3 of 3

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

In claim 34, line 10:

Please replace "H" with "—OH".

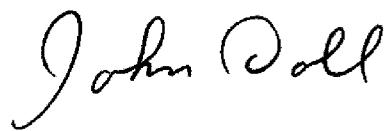
In claim 34, line 11:

Please replace "—NH₂" with "—NH₂".

Please replace "H" with "—SH".

Signed and Sealed this

Third Day of March, 2009



JOHN DOLL
Acting Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 7,019,129 B1
APPLICATION NO. : 09/567863
DATED : March 28, 2006
INVENTOR(S) : Ronald M. Cook, Matt Lytle and Daren Dick

Page 1 of 3

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 49, In claim 1, line 43:

Please replace “CH₃” with “—CH₃”.

Column 49, In claim 1, line 45:

Please replace “OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)” with “—OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)”.

Column 50, In claim 4, line 16:

Please replace “claim 1” with “claim 3”.

Column 51, In claim 10, line 12:

Please replace “H” with “—OH”.

Column 51, In claim 10, line 13:

Please remove “9”.

Column 51, In claim 13, line 42:

Please replace “claim 11” with “claim 10”.

Column 52, In claim 17, line 27:

Please replace “CH₃” with “—CH₃”.

Column 52, In claim 17, line 28:

Please replace “OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)” with “—OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)”.

Column 53, In claim 23, line 37:

Please replace “H” with “—OH”.

Column 53, In claim 23, line 38:

Please replace “—NH₂” with “—NH₂”.

Please replace “P(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)” with “—OP(OX³)(N(X⁴)₂)”.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 7,019,129 B1
APPLICATION NO. : 09/567863
DATED : March 28, 2006
INVENTOR(S) : Ronald M. Cook, Matt Lyttle and Daren Dick

Page 2 of 3

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 54, In claim 26, line 54:

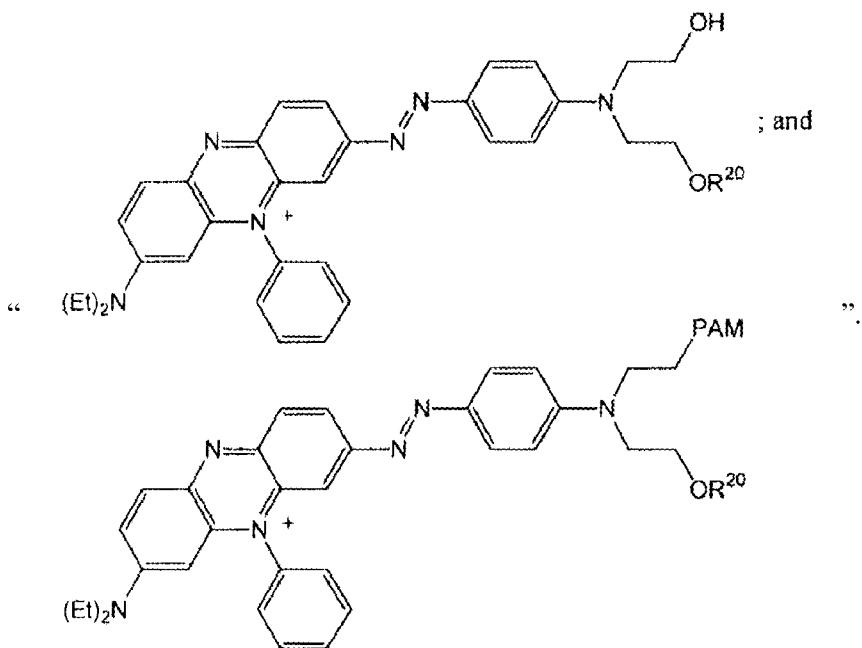
Please replace “ER” with “—OR”.

Column 54, In claim 26, line 55:

Please replace "DOOR" with "--COOR".

Column 56, In claim 30, lines 16 to 39:

Please delete the structures shown and replace with the following structures:



Column 56, In claim 33, line 53:

Please replace "R" with "R³".

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 7,019,129 B1
APPLICATION NO. : 09/567863
DATED : March 28, 2006
INVENTOR(S) : Ronald M. Cook, Matt Lytle and Daren Dick

Page 3 of 3

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 57, In claim 34, line 10:

Please replace "H" with "--OH".

Column 57, In claim 34, line 11:

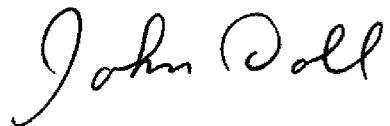
Please replace "--NH2" with "--NH₂".

Please replace "H" with "--SH".

This certificate supersedes the Certificate of Correction issued March 3, 2009.

Signed and Sealed this

Thirty-first Day of March, 2009



JOHN DOLL
Acting Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

EXHIBIT D



US007109312B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Cook et al.

(10) **Patent No.:** US 7,109,312 B2
(45) **Date of Patent:** Sep. 19, 2006

(54) **DARK QUENCHERS FOR
DONOR-ACCEPTOR ENERGY TRANSFER**

(75) Inventors: **Ronald M. Cook**, Novato, CA (US);
Matt Lytle, Point Reyes Station, CA (US); **Daren Dick**, San Geronimo, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Bioscience Technologies, Inc.**, Novato, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: 11/192,705

(22) Filed: Jul. 29, 2005

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2005/0272088 A1 Dec. 8, 2005

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 09/567,863, filed on May 9, 2000, now Pat. No. 7,019,129.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

C07C 245/00 (2006.01)

C07H 21/04 (2006.01)

C07H 19/04 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** 534/558; 534/563; 534/604; 534/606; 534/610; 536/23.1; 536/26.6

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 534/604, 534/606, 610, 558, 563; 536/23.1, 26.6

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,523,936 A 8/1970 Toji

5,312,738 A	5/1994	Hamill et al.
5,401,847 A	3/1995	Glazer et al.
5,612,221 A	3/1997	Simons et al.
6,037,130 A	3/2000	Tyagi et al.
6,790,945 B1	9/2004	Lukhtanov et al.

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0 008 029	2/1980
EP 0 009 191	4/1980
EP 0 601 889 A2	6/1994
EP 0 909 823	4/1999
EP 876430 B1 *	8/2001
FR 1544951	11/1968
FR 2243438 *	9/1974
JP 5-142600	6/1993
JP 6-258676	9/1994
WO WO 90/03446	4/1990
WO WO 95/02848	1/1995
WO WO 98/10096	3/1998
WO WO 00 05411	2/2000

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Bumelis, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 85:125772 XP002243719 (Abstract only) (1974).*

(Continued)

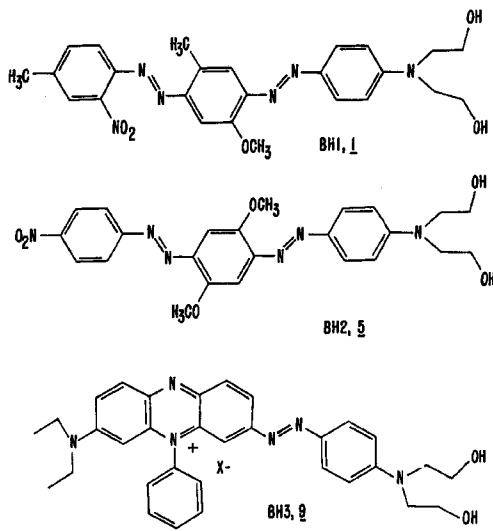
Primary Examiner—Jezia Riley

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention provides a family of dark quenchers, termed Black Hole Quenchers ("BHqs"), that are efficient quenchers of excited state energy but which are themselves substantially non-fluorescent. Also provided are methods of using the BHqs, probes incorporating the BHqs and methods of using the probes.

30 Claims, 8 Drawing Sheets



US 7,109,312 B2

Page 2

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Gonzalez-Gomez, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.*; Database accession No. 98:209380 XP002243718 (Abstract only) (1983).
Jerzy, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.*; Database accession No. 110:136859 XP002243716 (Abstract only) (1988).
Juarranz, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.*; Database accession No. 105:38550 XP002243717 (Abstract only) (1986).

Kazimierz, *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.*; Database accession No. 131:287725 XP002243715 (Abstract only) (1999).

Riccardo, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.*; Database accession No. 122:215261 XP002243714 (Abstract only) (1995).

Tyagi, et al. "Molecular beacons: Probes that fluoresce upon hybridization," *Nature Biochemistry*, 14: 303-308 (Mar. 1996).

* cited by examiner

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 1 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

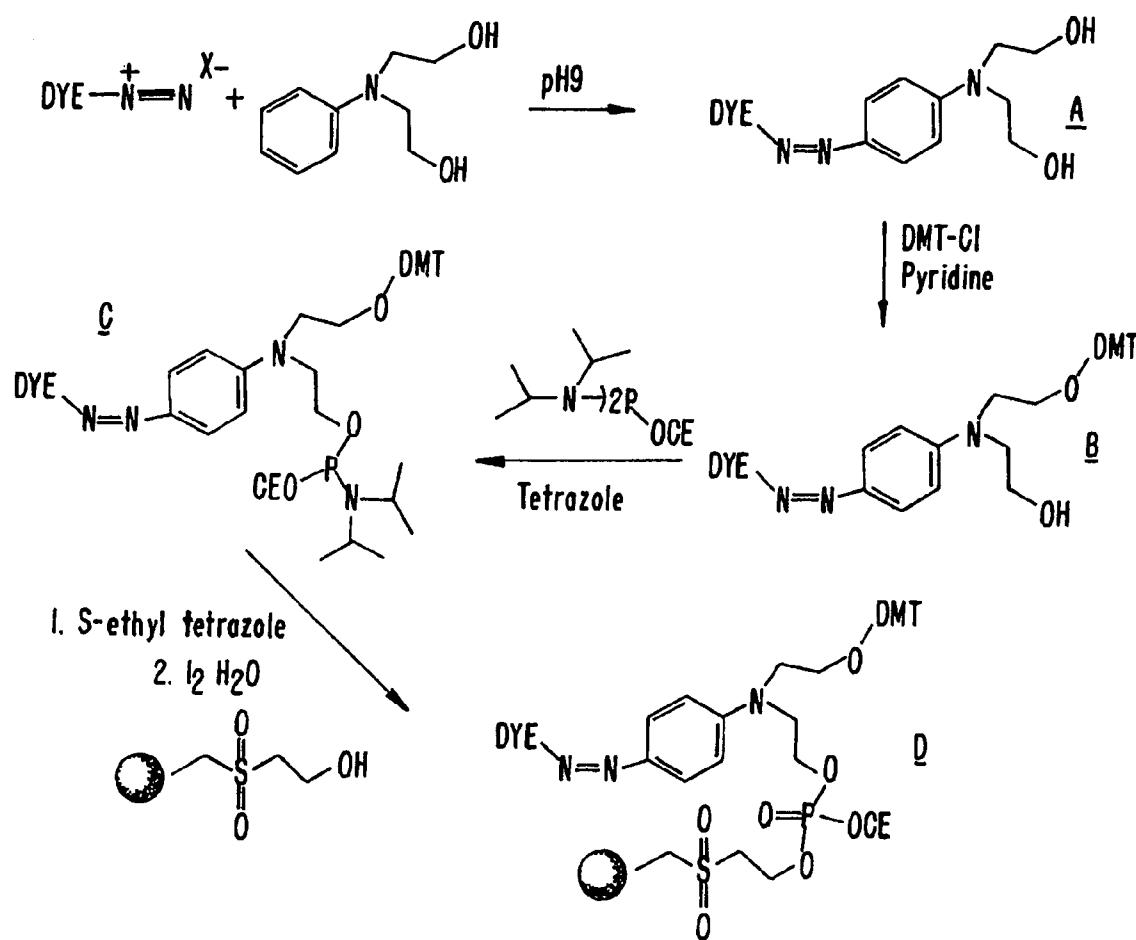


FIG. 1.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 2 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

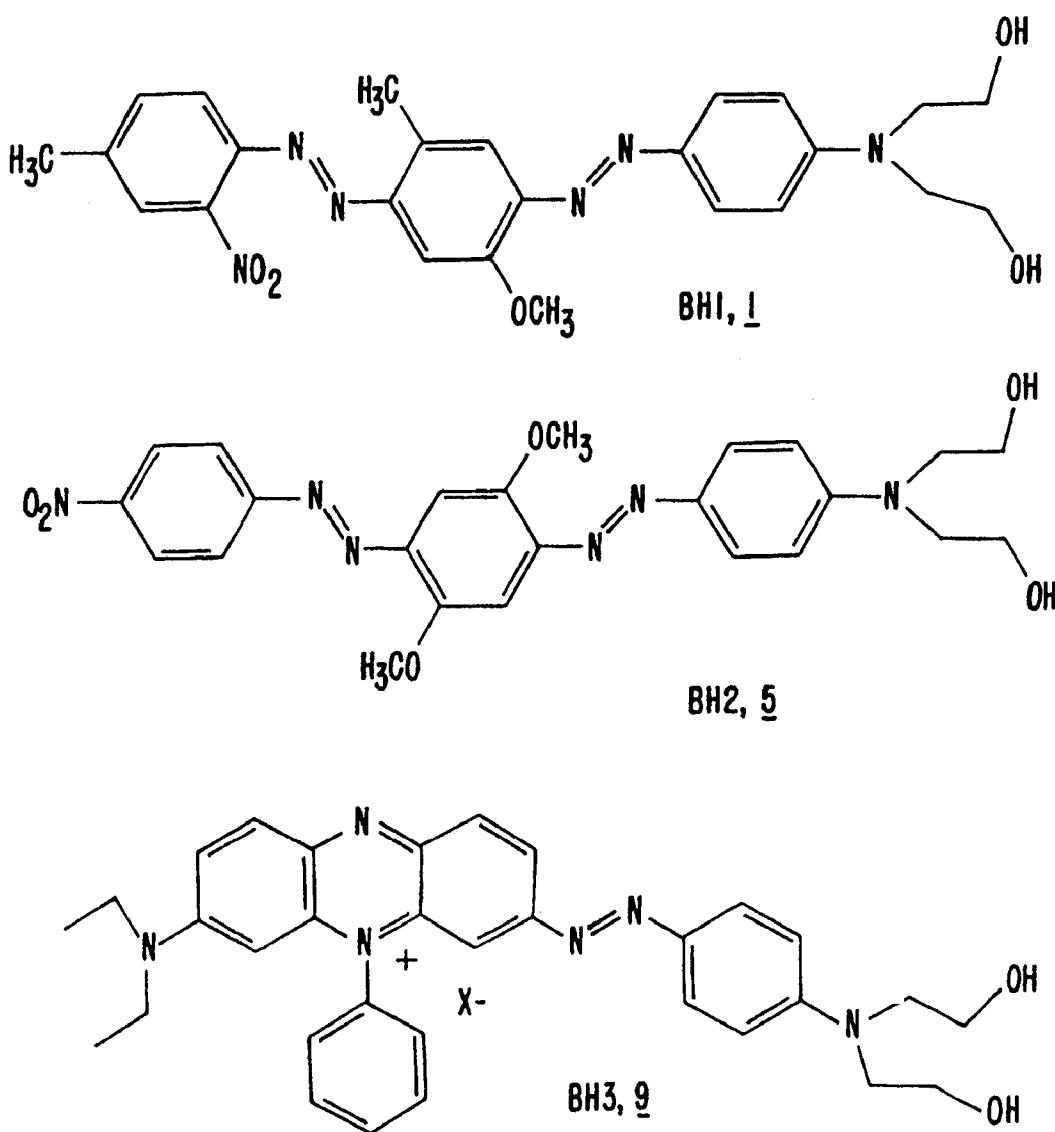


FIG. 2.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 3 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

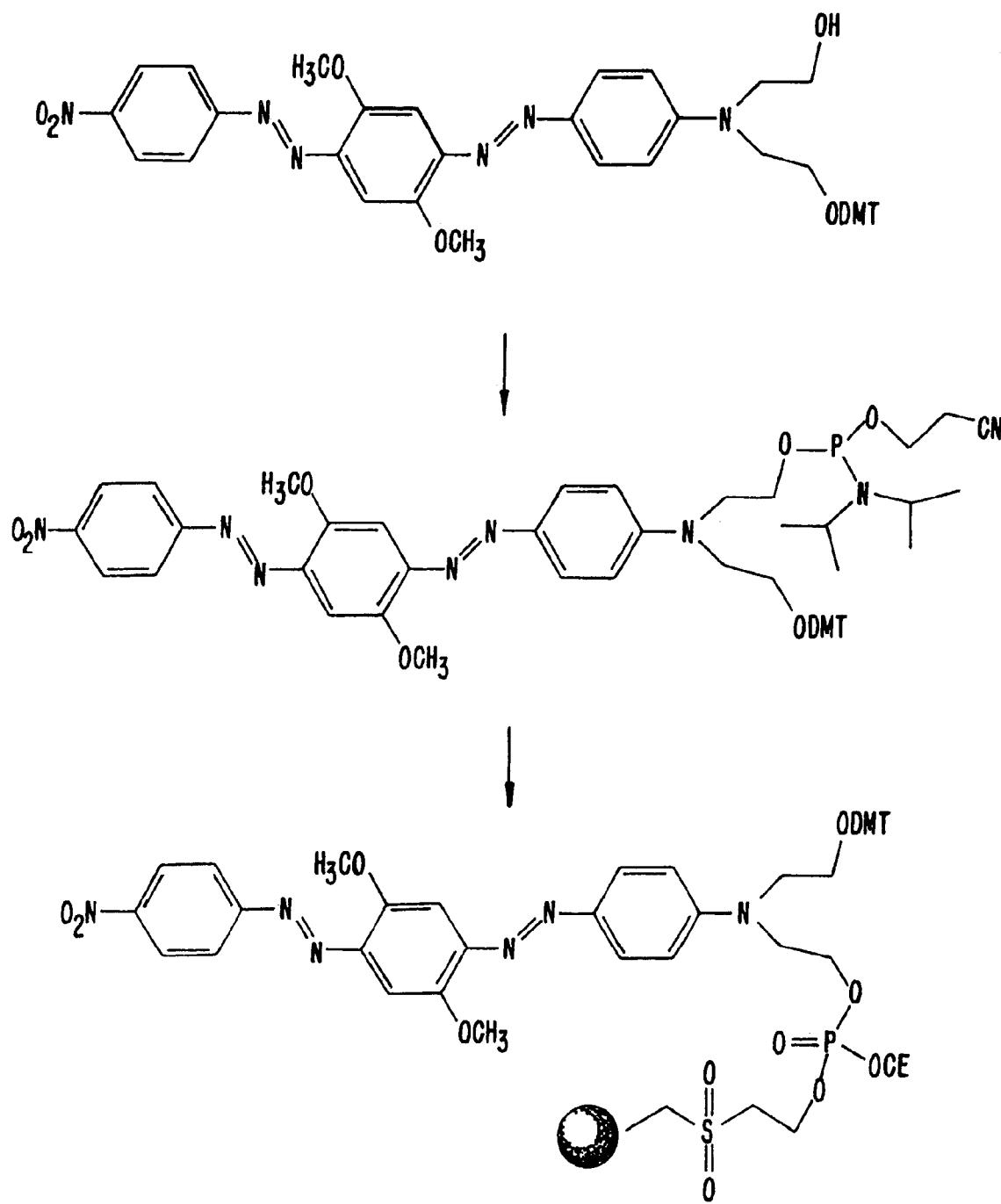


FIG. 3.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 4 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

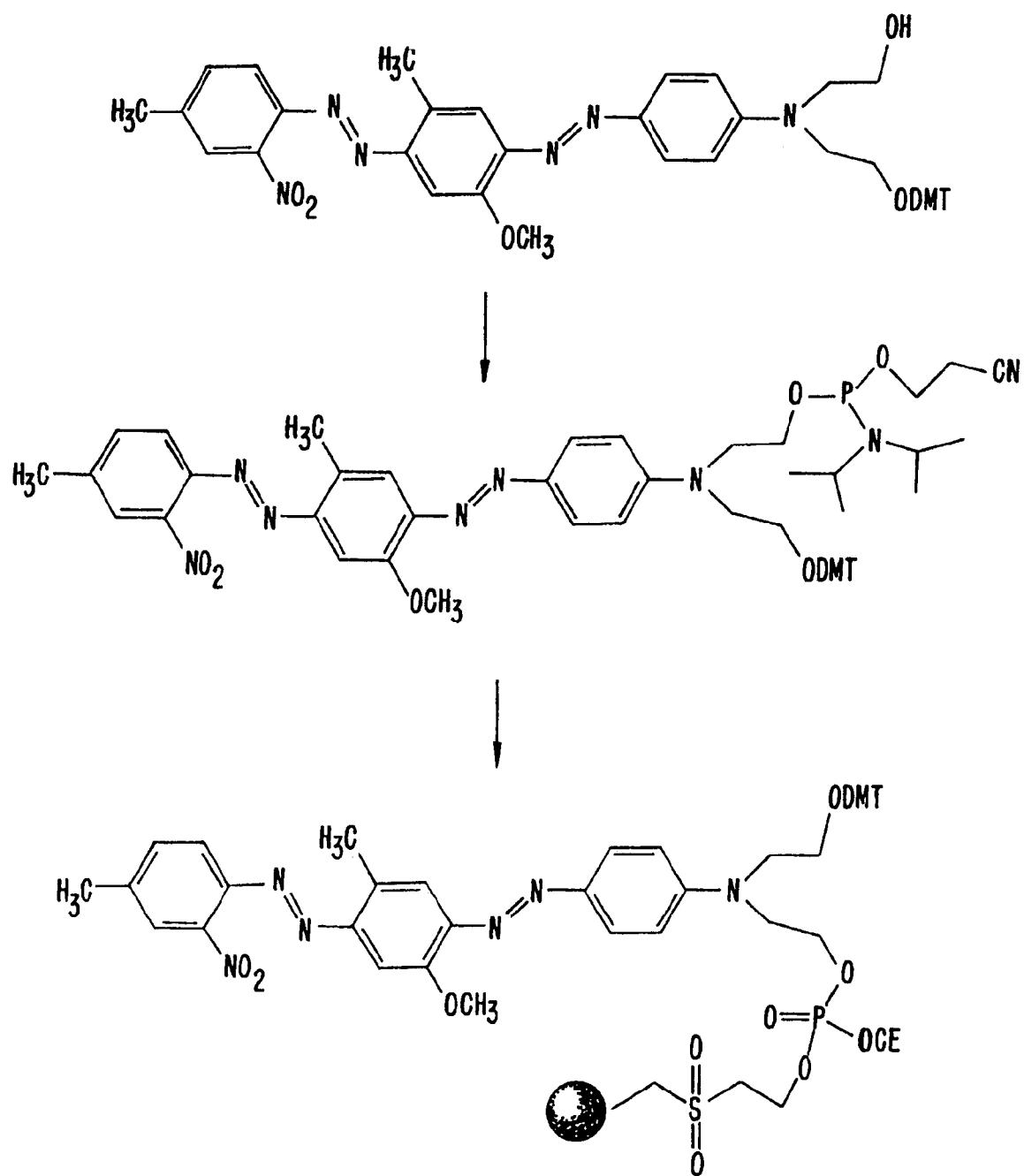


FIG. 4.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 5 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

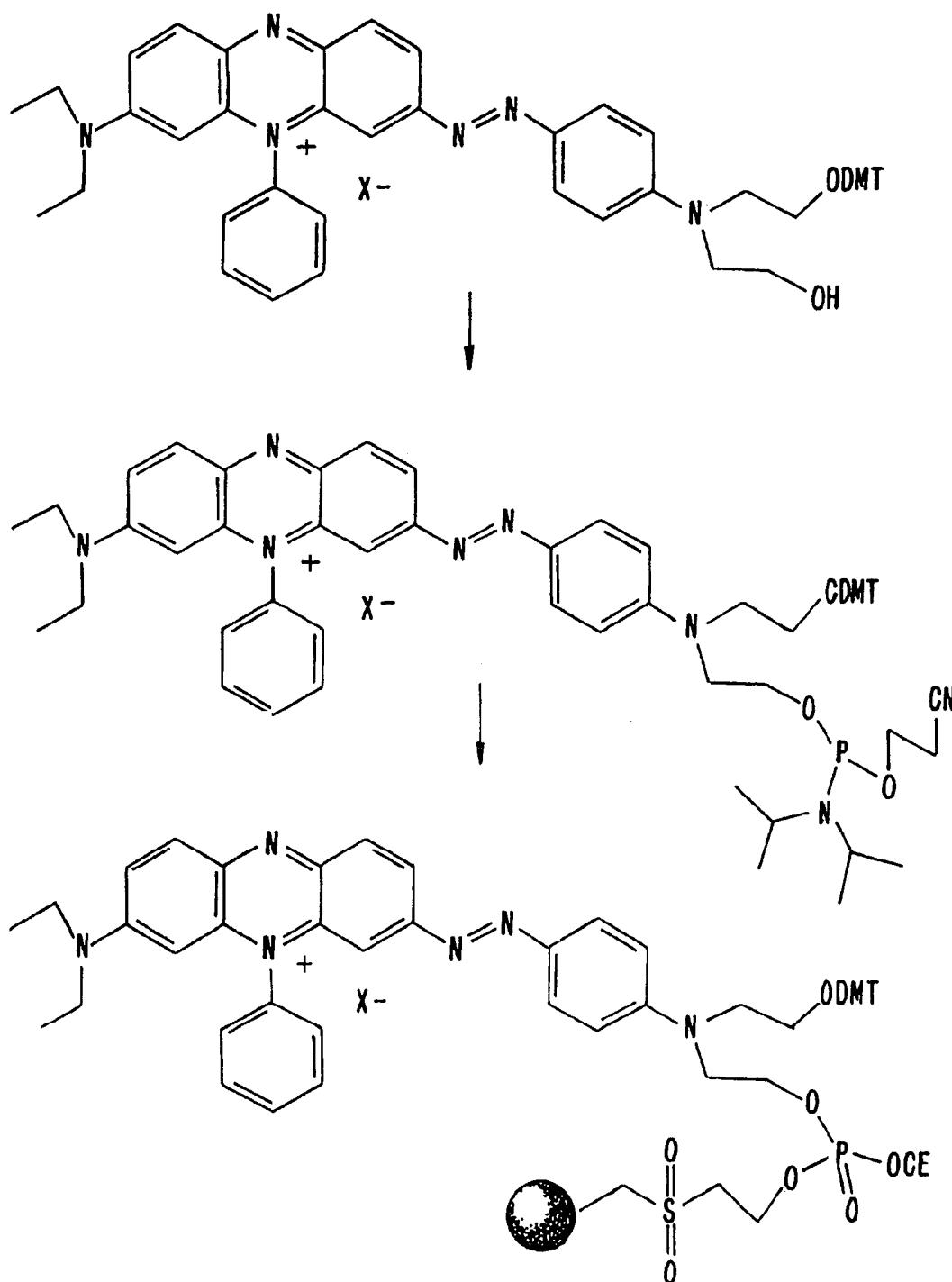


FIG. 5.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 6 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

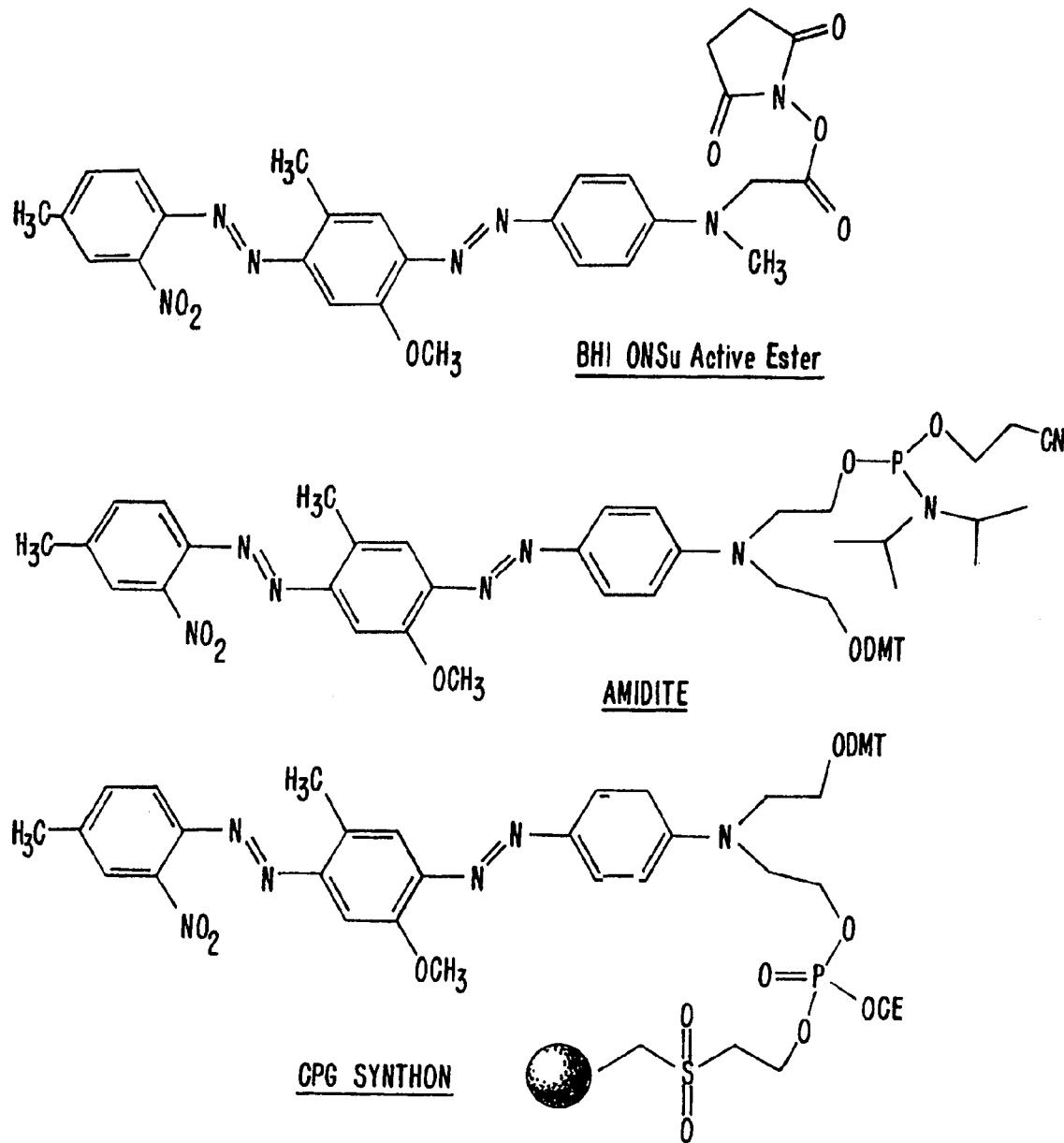


FIG. 6.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 7 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

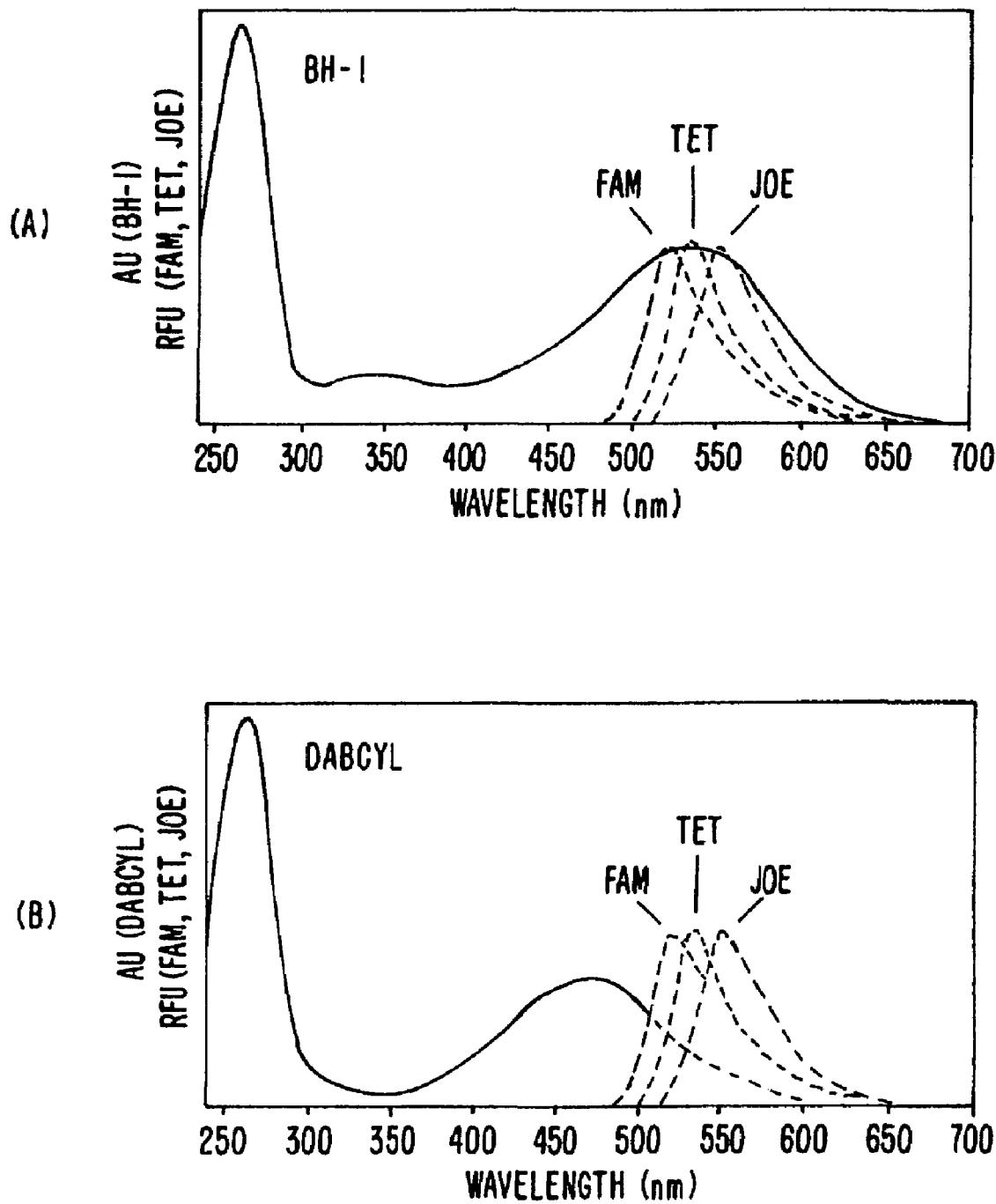


FIG. 7.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 19, 2006

Sheet 8 of 8

US 7,109,312 B2

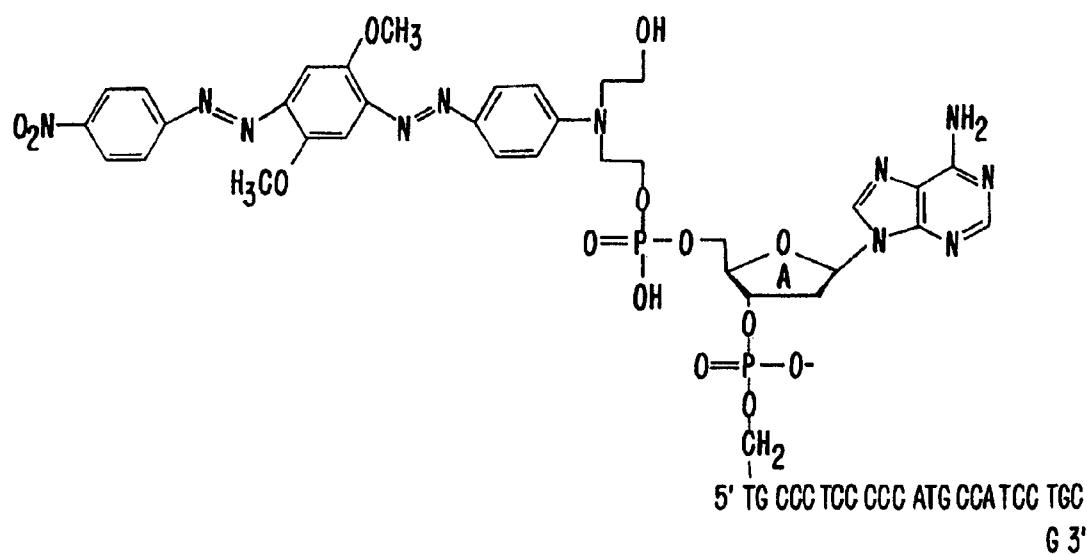
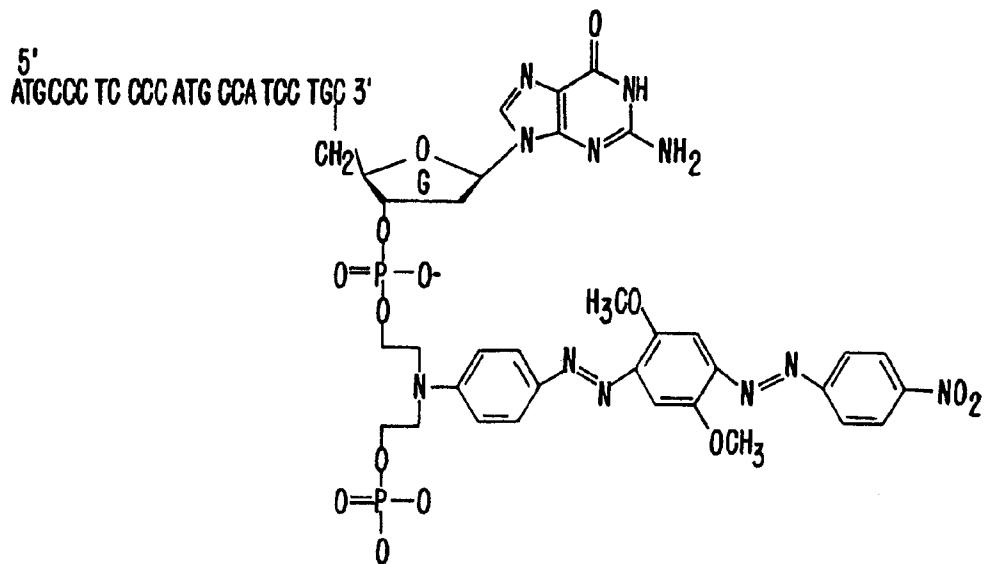


FIG. 8.A

US 7,109,312 B2

1**DARK QUENCHERS FOR
DONOR-ACCEPTOR ENERGY TRANSFER****CROSS-REFERENCES TO RELATED
APPLICATIONS**

This application is a continuation of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/567,863 filed on May 9, 2000 now U.S. Pat. No. 7,019,129, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

STATEMENT OF GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

This invention was made with government support under, Grant Nos. 1R43GM60848-01 and 2R44GM60848-02 awarded by the National Institutes of Health. The government has certain rights in the invention.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

There is a continuous and expanding need for rapid, highly specific methods of detecting and quantifying chemical, biochemical and biological substances as analytes in research and diagnostic mixtures. Of particular value are methods for measuring small quantities of nucleic acids, peptides, pharmaceuticals, metabolites, microorganisms and other materials of diagnostic value. Examples of such materials include narcotics and poisons, drugs administered for therapeutic purposes, hormones, pathogenic microorganisms and viruses, antibodies, and enzymes and nucleic acids, particularly those implicated in disease states.

The presence of a particular analyte can often be determined by binding methods that exploit the high degree of specificity, which characterizes many biochemical and biological systems. Frequently used methods are based on, for example, antigen-antibody systems, nucleic acid hybridization techniques, and protein-ligand systems. In these methods, the existence of a complex of diagnostic value is typically indicated by the presence or absence of an observable "label" which has been attached to one or more of the interacting materials. The specific labeling method chosen often dictates the usefulness and versatility of a particular system for detecting an analyte of interest. Preferred labels are inexpensive, safe, and capable of being attached efficiently to a wide variety of chemical, biochemical, and biological materials without significantly altering the important binding characteristics of those materials. The label should give a highly characteristic signal, and should be rarely, and preferably never, found in nature. The label should be stable and detectable in aqueous systems over periods of time ranging up to months. Detection of the label is preferably rapid, sensitive, and reproducible without the need for expensive, specialized facilities or the need for special precautions to protect personnel. Quantification of the label is preferably relatively independent of variables such as temperature and the composition of the mixture to be assayed.

A wide variety of labels have been developed, each with particular advantages and disadvantages. For example, radioactive labels are quite versatile, and can be detected at very low concentrations, such labels are, however, expensive, hazardous, and their use requires sophisticated equipment and trained personnel. Thus, there is wide interest in non-radioactive labels, particularly in labels that are observable by spectrophotometric, spin resonance, and luminescence techniques, and reactive materials, such as enzymes that produce such molecules.

2

Labels that are detectable using fluorescence spectroscopy are of particular interest, because of the large number of such labels that are known in the art. Moreover, the literature is replete with syntheses of fluorescent labels that are derivatized to allow their facile attachment to other molecules, and many such fluorescent labels are commercially available.

In addition to being directly detected, many fluorescent labels operate to quench the fluorescence of an adjacent second fluorescent label. Because of its dependence on the distance and the magnitude of the interaction between the quencher and the fluorophore, the quenching of a fluorescent species provides a sensitive probe of molecular conformation and binding, or other, interactions. An excellent example of the use of fluorescent reporter quencher pairs is found in the detection and analysis of nucleic acids.

Fluorescent nucleic acid probes are important tools for genetic analysis, in both genomic research and development, and in clinical medicine. As information from the Human Genome Project accumulates, the level of genetic interrogation mediated by fluorescent probes will expand enormously. One particularly useful class of fluorescent probes includes self-quenching probes, also known as fluorescence energy transfer probes, or FET probes. The design of different probes using this motif may vary in detail. In an exemplary FET probe, both a fluorophore and a quencher are tethered to nucleic acid. The probe is configured such that the fluorophore is proximate to the quencher and the probe produces a signal only as a result of its hybridization to an intended target. Despite the limited availability of FET probes, techniques incorporating their use are rapidly displacing alternative methods.

Probes containing a fluorophore-quencher pair have been developed for nucleic acid hybridization assays where the probe forms a hairpin structure, i.e., where the probe hybridizes to itself to form a loop such that the quencher molecule is brought into proximity with the reporter molecule in the absence of a complementary nucleic acid sequence to prevent the formation of the hairpin structure (see, for example, WO 90/03446; European Patent Application No. 0 601 889 A2). When a complementary target sequence is present, hybridization of the probe to the complementary target sequence disrupts the hairpin structure and causes the probe to adopt a conformation where the quencher molecule is no longer close enough to the reporter molecule to quench the reporter molecule. As a result, the probes provide an increased fluorescence signal when hybridized to a target sequence than when they are unhybridized.

Assays have also been developed for detecting a selected nucleic acid sequence and for identifying the presence of a hairpin structure using two separate probes, one containing a reporter molecule and the other a quencher molecule (see, Meringue, et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 22: 920-928 (1994)). In these assays, the fluorescence signal of the reporter molecule decreases when hybridized to the target sequence due to the quencher molecule being brought into proximity with the reporter molecule.

One particularly important application for probes including a reporter-quencher molecule pair is their use in nucleic acid amplification reactions, such as polymerase chain reactions (PCR), to detect the presence and amplification of a target nucleic acid sequence. In general, nucleic acid amplification techniques have opened broad new approaches to genetic testing and DNA analysis (see, for example, Arnheim et al. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 61: 131-156 (1992)). PCR, in particular, has become a research tool of major importance with applications in, for example, cloning, analysis of

US 7,109,312 B2

3

genetic expression, DNA sequencing, genetic mapping and drug discovery (see, Arneim et al., *supra*; Gilliland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87: 2725–2729 (1990); Bevan et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 1: 222–228 (1992); Green et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 1: 77–90 (1991); Blackwell et al., *Science*, 250: 1104–1110 (1990)).

Commonly used methods for detecting nucleic acid amplification products require that the amplified product be separated from unreacted primers. This is typically achieved either through the use of gel electrophoresis, which separates the amplification product from the primers on the basis of a size differential, or through the immobilization of the product, allowing free primer to be washed away. However, a number of methods for monitoring the amplification process without prior separation of primer have been described. All of them are based on FET, and none of them detect the amplified product directly. Instead, the methods detect some event related to amplification. For that reason, they are accompanied by problems of high background, and are not quantitative, as discussed below.

One method, described in Wang et al. (U.S. Pat. No. 5,348,853; and *Anal. Chem.*, 67: 1197–1203 (1995)), uses an energy transfer system in which energy transfer occurs between two fluorophores on the probe. In this method, detection of the amplified molecule takes place in the amplification reaction vessel, without the need for a separation step. This method, however, does not detect the amplified product, but instead detects the dissociation of primer from the “energy-sink” nucleic acid. Thus, this method is dependent on detection of a decrease in emissions; a significant portion of labeled primer must be utilized in order to achieve a reliable difference between the signals before and after the reaction.

A second method detecting an amplification product without prior separation of primer and product is the 5'-nuclease PCR assay (also referred to as the TaqMan™ assay) (Holland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 88: 7276–7280 (1991); Lee et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 21: 3761–3766 (1993)). This assay detects the accumulation of a specific PCR product by hybridization and cleavage of a doubly labeled fluorogenic probe (the “TaqMan” probe) during the amplification reaction. The fluorogenic probe consists of an nucleic acid labeled with both a fluorescent reporter dye and a quencher dye. During PCR, this probe is cleaved by the 5'-exonuclease activity of DNA polymerase if, and only if, it hybridizes to the segment being amplified. Cleavage of the probe generates an increase in the fluorescence intensity of the reporter dye.

In the TaqMan assay, the donor and quencher are preferably located on the 3'- and 5'-ends of the probe, because the requirement that 5'-3' hydrolysis be performed between the fluorophore and quencher may be met only when these two moieties are not too close to each other (Lyamichev et al., *Science*, 260:778–783 (1993)). This requirement is a serious drawback of the assay as the efficiency of energy transfer decreases with the inverse sixth power of the distance between the reporter and quencher. Thus, if the quencher is not close enough to the reporter to achieve the most efficient quenching the background emissions from the probe can be quite high.

Yet another method of detecting amplification products that relies on the use of energy transfer is the “beacon probe” method described by Tyagi et al. (*Nature Biotech.*, 14:303–309 (1996)) which is also the subject of U.S. Pat. No. 5,312,728 to Lizardi et al. This method employs nucleic acid hybridization probes that can form hairpin structures.

4

On one end of the hybridization probe (either the 5'- or 3'-end) there is a donor fluorophore, and on the other end, an acceptor moiety. In this method, the acceptor moiety is a quencher, absorbing energy from the donor. Thus when the beacon is in the open conformation, the fluorescence of the donor fluorophore is detectable, whereas when the beacon is in hairpin (closed) conformation, the fluorescence of the donor fluorophore is quenched. When employed in PCR, the molecular beacon probe, which hybridizes to one of the strands of the PCR product, is in “open conformation,” and fluorescence is detected, while those that remain unhybridized will not fluoresce. As a result, the amount of fluorescence will increase as the amount of PCR product increases, and thus can be used as a measure of the progress of the PCR.

Certain limitations impede the application and use of FET probes, or result in assays that are less sensitive than they could be. Foremost among these limitations is the presence of background fluorescence attributable to the emission of the quencher, giving the probe a higher fluorescent noise background than is desirable. An approach that has been utilized to ameliorate this limitation is the use of a quencher that is not a fluorophore (“dark quenchers”), such as derivatives of 4-(dimethylamino)azobenzene (DABCYL). DABCYL is useful as a quenching agent for a limited group of fluorophores with whose emission characteristics, the absorption characteristics of DABCYL overlap. The limited absorption range of DABCYL restricts the utility of this compound by allowing the use of a limited number of fluorophores in conjunction with DABCYL. Because relatively few fluorophores can be used with DABCYL in FET pairs, multiplex applications, where it is desired to use two or more fluorophores with clearly resolved fluorescence emission spectra are difficult to design using this quencher.

In view of the limitations of presently available dark quenchers and probes, such as FET probes constructed with these quenchers, there exists in the art a need for improved quenchers that can be incorporated into probes for detecting analytes rapidly, sensitively, reliably and quantitatively. Ideal quenchers would be have little to no fluorescent quenching signal, and be easily and inexpensively prepared. Moreover, a series of quenchers having similar physical properties, but distinct spectral properties would be particularly advantageous. Quite surprisingly, the present invention provides such quenchers, probes incorporating these quenchers and methods for using the quenchers and probes.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides a family of quenchers of excited state energy that are substantially non-fluorescent, termed “Black Hole Quenchers” (“BHQs”). The quenchers of the invention remedy many of the deficiencies of currently utilized dark quenchers, probes assembled using these quenchers and methods using such quenchers and probes. The present invention provides a class of dark quenchers that are functionalized to allow their rapid attachment to probe components using techniques well known in the art, or modifications of such techniques that are well within the abilities of those of skill in the art. Moreover, the present invention provides a class of dark quenchers that can be engineered to have a desired light absorption profile. The provision of this class of dark quenchers represents a substantial improvement in the design of probes incorporating dark quenchers and methods using such probes.

US 7,109,312 B2

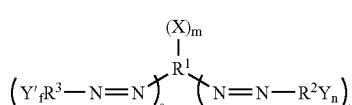
5

Many of the nucleic acid probes presently used rely on an interaction between the fluorophore and the quencher in order to minimize the fluorescence of the probe in the absence of its hybridization to a complementary nucleic acid. The interaction between the fluorophore and the quencher is typically brought about by using a nucleic acid probe sequence that forms a secondary structure (e.g., hairpin, loop, etc.). Requiring that a probe adopt a secondary structure significantly complicates the design of the probe and greatly restricts the nucleic acid sequences that can be used as components of the probes. In contrast, nucleic acid probes using BHQs of the present invention are found to facilitate the interaction between the quencher and the fluorophore without requiring concomitant formation of nucleic acid secondary structure, thereby allowing a much greater diversity of nucleic acid sequences to be used as components of fluorescent probes.

Moreover, by varying the number and identity of the members of the conjugated system of the BHQs, the spectral properties (e.g., absorbance) of a BHQ can be "tuned" to match the spectral characteristics (e.g., emission) of one or more fluorophores. For example, as the BHQs of the present invention can be selected to have a broad range of absorbance maxima, these quenchers are uniquely suited for use in multiplexing applications. Furthermore, the ability to select a BHQ having a particular spectral characteristic allows the use of BHQs in multiplexing applications using one or more distinct fluorophore in combination with one or more distinct BHQ, thereby expanding the choices of donor-acceptor pairs that can be incorporated into probes.

Thus, in a first aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond, the quencher further comprising a reactive functional group providing a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule.

In a second aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula I:

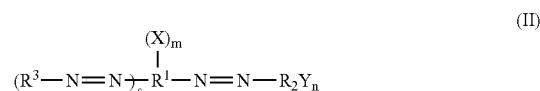


wherein R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl. X, Y and Y' are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (fxs) is greater than 1, the Y' groups are the same or different; m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 6,

6

inclusive, such that when (nx) is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R³ groups are the same or different; and t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R² groups are the same or different, and when t is 1 and s is 0, a member selected from R¹, R² and combinations thereof is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic aryl and substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic heteroaryl groups.

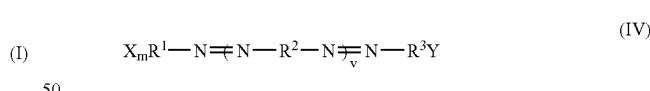
In a third aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula II:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number selected from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

In each of the above-described aspects of the invention X is preferably a member selected from —COOH, —OH and —NR'R", wherein R' and R" are members independently selected from the group consisting of H and substituted or unsubstituted alkyl groups.

In a fourth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula IV:

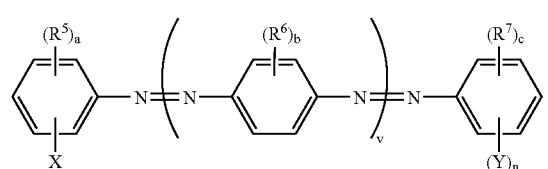


in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; c is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different; v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, more preferably from 1 to 6, inclusive and more preferably still between 2 and 4, inclusive. When v is greater than 1, the R² groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof.

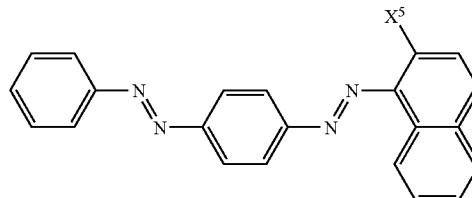
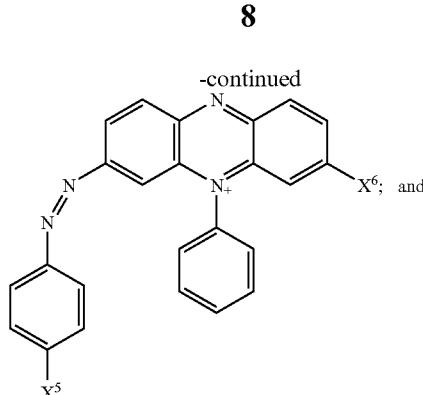
US 7,109,312 B2

7

In a fifth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula V:

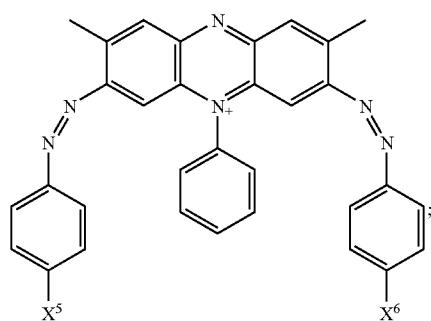
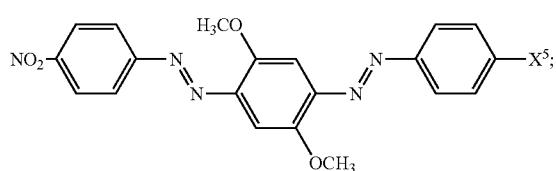
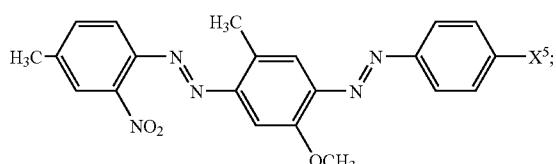


(V) 5
10



wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R'', substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy, wherein R' and R'' are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl. X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups; m is a number from 1 to 2, inclusive, such that when m is 2, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive; a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (v×b) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the b phenyl rings is the same or different.

In a sixth aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure, which is a member selected from:



25
20

wherein, X⁵ and X⁶ are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C¹—C⁶ alkyl, —OR', —COOR', —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³)N(X⁴)₂, in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl, with the proviso that at least one of X⁵ and X⁶ is a reactive functional group. X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from CN, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl.

In an seventh aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method includes: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct that includes a fluorophore; (b) exciting said fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of said sample, wherein the presence of said enzyme in said sample results in a change in said fluorescence property.

Preferred peptide constructs include: i) a fluorophore; ii) a quencher comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond; and iii) a cleavage recognition site for the enzyme. Moreover, the peptide is preferably in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the quencher when the fluorophore is excited.

In another aspect, the invention provides a method for determining whether a compound alters an activity of an enzyme. Preferred embodiments of this aspect of the invention include the steps recited in connection with the above-recited aspect of the invention and further include a step (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein said activity of said enzyme in said sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

In an ninth aspect, the present invention provides a method for detecting a nucleic acid target sequence. The method includes: (a) contacting the target sequence with a detector nucleic acid; (b) hybridizing the target binding sequence to the target sequence, thereby altering the conformation of the detector nucleic acid, causing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (c) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the nucleic acid target sequence.

US 7,109,312 B2

9

In the methods described herein, unless otherwise noted, a preferred detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence. The binding sequence has linked thereto: i) a fluorophore; and ii) a BHQ of the invention.

In an tenth aspect, the invention provides a method for detecting amplification of a target sequence. The method includes the use of an amplification reaction including the following steps: (a) hybridizing the target sequence and a detector nucleic acid. The detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence and an intramolecularly associated secondary structure 5' to the target binding sequence. At least a portion of the detector sequence forms a single stranded tail which is available for hybridization to the target sequence; (b) extending the hybridized detector nucleic acid on the target sequence with a polymerase to produce a detector nucleic acid extension product and separating the detector nucleic acid extension product from the target sequence; (c) hybridizing a primer to the detector nucleic acid extension product and extending the primer with the polymerase, thereby linearizing the intramolecularly associated secondary structure and producing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (d) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the target sequence.

In an eleventh aspect, the invention provides a method of ascertaining whether a first nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid hybridize. In this method, the first nucleic acid includes a BHQ according to the invention. The method includes: (a) contacting the first nucleic acid with the second nucleic acid; (b) detecting an alteration in a fluorescent property of a member selected from the first nucleic acid, the second nucleic acid and a combination thereof, thereby ascertaining whether the hybridization occurs.

In a twelfth aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method comprises: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct; (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the presence of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

Peptide constructs useful in practicing the invention include those with the following features: i) a fluorophore; ii) a BHQ of the invention; and iii) a cleavage recognition site for the enzyme.

In an thirteenth aspect, the invention provides methods of determining the amount of activity of an enzyme in a sample from an organism. The method includes: (a) contacting a sample comprising the enzyme and the compound with a peptide construct comprising (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the activity of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property. Peptide constructs useful in this aspect of the invention are substantially similar to those described immediately above.

In a fourteenth aspect, the invention provides a microarray comprising a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The quencher is conjugated directly to a solid support or to a carrier molecule attached to the solid support.

In a fifteenth aspect, the invention provides a method of probing a microarray for the presence of a compound. The method includes: (a) contacting the microarray with a probe interacting with the compound. Preferred probes include a quencher of excited state energy having a structure com-

10

prising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond; and (b) detecting a difference in a fluorescence property of a member selected from the probe, the compound and combinations thereof, thereby ascertaining the presence of the compound.

In a sixteenth aspect, the present invention provides a mixture including at least a first carrier molecule and a second carrier molecule. The first carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a first quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The second carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a second quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond.

Additional objects and advantages of the present invention will be apparent to those of skill in the art upon examination of the detailed description that follows.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is an exemplary synthetic scheme for preparing a BHQ of the invention.

FIG. 2 is a collection of structures of exemplary BHQs (BH1, BH2 and BH3) of the invention.

FIG. 3 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH1-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH1-CPG.

FIG. 4 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH2-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH2-CPG.

FIG. 5 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH3-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH3-CPG.

FIG. 6 is a collection of structures of activated derivatives of BH1.

FIG. 7 (a-b) is a comparison of the absorbance spectra of Dabcyl and the BHQs of the invention:

(a) is an overlay plot of the absorbance spectra of BH1 and the emission spectra of three commonly used fluorophores FAM, TET and JOE;

(b) is an overlay plot of the absorbance spectra of DABCYL and the emission spectra of three commonly used fluorophores FAM, TET and JOE.

FIG. 8 is a series of nucleic acid structures incorporating exemplary BHQs of the invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION AND THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Abbreviations

"BHQ," as used herein, refers to "Black Hole Quenchers."

"FET," as used herein, refers to "Fluorescence Energy Transfer." "FRET," as used herein, refers to "Fluorescence Resonance Energy Transfer." These terms are used herein to refer to both radiative and non-radiative energy transfer processes. For example, processes in which a photon is emitted and those involving long range electron transfer are included within these terms. Throughout this specification,

US 7,109,312 B2

11

both of these phenomena are subsumed under the general term "donor-acceptor energy transfer."

Definitions

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein generally have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. Generally, the nomenclature used herein and the laboratory procedures in cell culture, molecular genetics, organic chemistry and nucleic acid chemistry and hybridization described below are those well known and commonly employed in the art. Standard techniques are used for nucleic acid and peptide synthesis. Generally, enzymatic reactions and purification steps are performed according to the manufacturer's specifications. The techniques and procedures are generally performed according to conventional methods in the art and various general references (see generally, Sambrook et al. MOLECULAR CLONING: A LABORATORY MANUAL, 2d ed. (1989) Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y., which is incorporated herein by reference), which are provided throughout this document. The nomenclature used herein and the laboratory procedures in analytical chemistry, and organic synthetic described below are those well known and commonly employed in the art. Standard techniques, or modifications thereof, are used for chemical syntheses and chemical analyses.

"Analyte", as used herein means any compound or molecule of interest for which a diagnostic test is performed. An analyte can be, for example, a protein, peptide, carbohydrate, polysaccharide, glycoprotein, hormone, receptor, antigen, antibody, virus, substrate, metabolite, transition state analog, cofactor, inhibitor, drug, dye, nutrient, growth factor, etc., without limitation.

As used herein, "energy transfer" refers to the process by which the excited state energy of an excited group is altered by a modifying group, such as a quencher. If the excited state energy-modifying group is a quenching group, then the fluorescence emission from the fluorescent group is attenuated (quenched). Energy transfer can occur through fluorescence resonance energy transfer, or through direct energy transfer. The exact energy transfer mechanisms in these two cases are different. It is to be understood that any reference to energy transfer in the instant application encompasses all of these mechanistically-distinct phenomena.

As used herein, "energy transfer pair" refers to any two molecules that participate in energy transfer. Typically, one of the molecules acts as a fluorescent group, and the other acts as a fluorescence-modifying group. The preferred energy transfer pair of the instant invention comprises a fluorescent group and a quenching group of the invention. There is no limitation on the identity of the individual members of the energy transfer pair in this application. All that is required is that the spectroscopic properties of the energy transfer pair as a whole change in some measurable way if the distance between the individual members is altered by some critical amount. "Energy transfer pair" is used to refer to a group of molecules that form a complex within which energy transfer occurs. Such complexes may include, for example, two fluorescent groups, which may be different from one another and one quenching group, two quenching groups and one fluorescent group, or multiple fluorescent groups and multiple quenching groups. In cases where there are multiple fluorescent groups and/or multiple quenching groups, the individual groups may be different from one another.

12

As used herein, "fluorescence-modifying group" refers to a molecule of the invention that can alter in any way the fluorescence emission from a fluorescent group. A fluorescence-modifying group generally accomplishes this through an energy transfer mechanism. Depending on the identity of the fluorescence-modifying group, the fluorescence emission can undergo a number of alterations, including, but not limited to, attenuation, complete quenching, enhancement, a shift in wavelength, a shift in polarity, and a change in fluorescence lifetime. One example of a fluorescence-modifying group is a quenching group.

As used herein, "quenching group" refers to any fluorescence-modifying group of the invention that can attenuate at least partly the light emitted by a fluorescent group. This attenuation is referred to herein as "quenching". Hence, illumination of the fluorescent group in the presence of the quenching group leads to an emission signal that is less intense than expected, or even completely absent. Quenching typically occurs through energy transfer between the fluorescent group and the quenching group.

As used herein, "nucleic acid" means DNA, RNA, single-stranded, double-stranded, or more highly aggregated hybridization motifs, and any chemical modifications thereof. Modifications include, but are not limited to, those providing chemical groups that incorporate additional charge, polarizability, hydrogen bonding, electrostatic interaction, and fluxionality to the nucleic acid ligand bases or to the nucleic acid ligand as a whole. Such modifications include, but are not limited to, peptide nucleic acids (PNAs), phosphodiester group modifications (e.g., phosphorothioates, methylphosphonates), 2'-position sugar modifications, 5-position pyrimidine modifications, 8-position purine modifications, modifications at exocyclic amines, substitution of 4-thiouridine, substitution of 5-bromo or 5-iodouracil; backbone modifications, methylations, unusual base-pairing combinations such as the isobases, isocytidine and isoguanidine and the like. Nucleic acids can also include non-natural bases, such as, for example, nitroindole. Modifications can also include 3' and 5' modifications such as capping with a BHQ, a fluorophore or another moiety.

"Peptide" refers to a polymer in which the monomers are amino acids and are joined together through amide bonds, alternatively referred to as a polypeptide. When the amino acids are α -amino acids, either the L-optical isomer or the D-optical isomer can be used. Additionally, unnatural amino acids, for example, β -alanine, phenylglycine and homoarginine are also included. Commonly encountered amino acids that are not gene-encoded may also be used in the present invention. All of the amino acids used in the present invention may be either the D- or L-isomer. The L-isomers are generally preferred. In addition, other peptidomimetics are also useful in the present invention. For a general review, see, Spatola, A. F., in CHEMISTRY AND BIOCHEMISTRY OF AMINO ACIDS, PEPTIDES AND PROTEINS, B. Weinstein, eds., Marcel Dekker, New York, p. 267 (1983).

"Bioactive species," refers to molecules that, when administered to an organism, affect that organism. Exemplary bioactive species include pharmaceuticals, pesticides, herbicides, growth regulators and the like. Bioactive species encompasses small molecules (i.e., approximately <1000 daltons), oligomers, polymers and the like. Also included are nucleic acids and their analogues, peptides and their analogues and the like.

The term "alkyl" is used herein to refer to a branched or unbranched, saturated or unsaturated, monovalent and divalent hydrocarbon radical, generally having from about 1-30 carbons and preferably, from 4-20 carbons and more pref-

US 7,109,312 B2

13

erably from 6–18 carbons. When the alkyl group has from 1–6 carbon atoms, it is referred to as a “lower alkyl.” Suitable alkyl radicals include, for example, structures containing one or more methylene, methine and/or methyne groups. Branched structures have a branching motif similar to i-propyl, t-butyl, i-butyl, 2-ethylpropyl, etc. As used herein, the term encompasses “substituted alkyls,” and “cyclic alkyl.”

“Substituted alkyl” refers to alkyl as just described including one or more substituents such as, for example, lower alkyl, aryl, acyl, halogen (i.e., alkylhalos, e.g., CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, thioamido, acyloxy, aryloxy, aryloxyalkyl, mercapto, thia, aza, oxo, both saturated and unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbons, heterocycles and the like. These groups may be attached to any carbon or substituent of the alkyl moiety. Additionally, these groups may be pendent from, or integral to, the alkyl chain.

The term “aryl” is used herein to refer to an aromatic substituent, which may be a single aromatic ring or multiple aromatic rings which are fused together, linked covalently, or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The common linking group may also be a carbonyl as in benzophenone. The aromatic ring(s) may include phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, diphenylmethyl and benzophenone among others. The term “aryl” encompasses “arylalkyl” and “substituted aryl.”

“Substituted aryl” refers to aryl as just described including one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, phenoxy, mercapto and both saturated and unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbons which are fused to the aromatic ring(s), linked covalently or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The linking group may also be a carbonyl such as in cyclohexyl phenyl ketone. The term “substituted aryl” encompasses “substituted arylalkyl.”

The term “arylalkyl” is used herein to refer to a subset of “aryl” in which the aryl group is attached to another group by an alkyl group as defined herein.

“Substituted arylalkyl” defines a subset of “substituted aryl” wherein the substituted aryl group is attached to another group by an alkyl group as defined herein.

The term “acyl” is used to describe a ketone substituent, —C(O)R, where R is alkyl or substituted alkyl, aryl or substituted aryl as defined herein.

The term “halogen” is used herein to refer to fluorine, bromine, chlorine and iodine atoms.

The term “hydroxy” is used herein to refer to the group —OH.

The term “amino” is used to —NRR', wherein R and R' are independently H, alkyl, aryl or substituted analogues thereof. “Amino” encompasses “alkylamino” denoting secondary and tertiary amines and “acylamino” describing the group RC(O)NR'.

The term “alkoxy” is used herein to refer to the —OR group, where R is alkyl, or a substituted analogue thereof. Suitable alkoxy radicals include, for example, methoxy, ethoxy, t-butoxy, etc.

As used herein, the term “aryloxy” denotes aromatic groups that are linked to another group directly through an oxygen atom. This term encompasses “substituted aryloxy” moieties in which the aromatic group is substituted as described above for “substituted aryl.” Exemplary aryloxy moieties include phenoxy, substituted phenoxy, benzylxy, phenethoxy, etc.

As used herein “aryloxyalkyl” defines aromatic groups attached, through an oxygen atom to an alkyl group, as

14

defined herein. The term “aryloxyalkyl” encompasses “substituted aryloxyalkyl” moieties in which the aromatic group is substituted as described for “substituted aryl.”

As used herein, the term “mercapto” defines moieties of the general structure —S—R wherein R is H, alkyl, aryl or heterocyclic as described herein.

The term “saturated cyclic hydrocarbon” denotes groups such as the cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, etc., and substituted analogues of these structures. These cyclic hydrocarbons can be single- or multi-ring structures.

The term “unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbon” is used to describe a monovalent non-aromatic group with at least one double bond, such as cyclopentene, cyclohexene, etc. and substituted analogues thereof. These cyclic hydrocarbons can be single- or multi-ring structures.

The term “heteroaryl” as used herein refers to aromatic rings in which one or more carbon atoms of the aromatic ring(s) are replaced by a heteroatom such as nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur. Heteroaryl refers to structures that may be a single aromatic ring, multiple aromatic ring(s), or one or more aromatic rings coupled to one or more non-aromatic ring(s). In structures having multiple rings, the rings can be fused together, linked covalently, or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The common linking group may also be a carbonyl as in phenyl pyridyl ketone. As used herein, rings such as thiophene, pyridine, isoxazole, phthalimide, pyrazole, indole, furan, etc. or benzo-fused analogues of these rings are defined by the term “heteroaryl.”

“Heteroarylalkyl” defines a subset of “heteroaryl” wherein an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heteroaryl group to another group.

“Substituted heteroaryl” refers to heteroaryl as just described wherein the heteroaryl nucleus is substituted with one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, mercapto, etc. Thus, substituted analogues of heteroaromatic rings such as thiophene, pyridine, isoxazole, phthalimide, pyrazole, indole, furan, etc. or benzo-fused analogues of these rings are defined by the term “substituted heteroaryl.”

“Substituted heteroarylalkyl” refers to a subset of “substituted heteroaryl” as described above in which an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heteroaryl group to another group.

The term “heterocyclic” is used herein to describe a monovalent saturated or unsaturated non-aromatic group having a single ring or multiple condensed rings from 1–12 carbon atoms and from 1–4 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen within the ring. Such heterocycles are, for example, tetrahydrofuran, morpholine, piperidine, pyrrolidine, etc.

The term “substituted heterocyclic” as used herein describes a subset of “heterocyclic” wherein the heterocycle nucleus is substituted with one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, mercapto, etc.

The term “heterocyclicalkyl” defines a subset of “heterocyclic” wherein an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heterocyclic group to another group.

Introduction

The present invention provides a class of fluorescence modifiers, particularly quenchers, of excited state energy. The compounds of the invention absorb excited state energy from a reporter fluorophore, but are themselves substantially

US 7,109,312 B2

15

non-fluorescent. The fluorophore transferring the excited state energy to the quenchers of the invention will generally be a label that is attached to an analyte or a species that interacts with, and allows detection and/or quantification of the analyte.

Fluorescent labels have the advantage of requiring few precautions in handling, and being amenable to high-throughput visualization techniques (optical analysis including digitization of the image for analysis in an integrated system comprising a computer). Preferred labels are typically characterized by one or more of the following: high sensitivity, high stability, low background, low environmental sensitivity and high specificity in labeling. Many fluorescent labels are commercially available from the SIGMA chemical company (Saint Louis, Mo.), Molecular Probes (Eugene, Oreg.), R&D systems (Minneapolis, Minn.), Pharmacia LKB Biotechnology (Piscataway, N.J.), CLONTECH Laboratories, Inc. (Palo Alto, Calif.), Chem Genes Corp., Aldrich Chemical Company (Milwaukee, Wis.), Glen Research, Inc., GIBCO BRL Life Technologies, Inc. (Gaithersburg, Md.), Fluka Chemica-Biochemika Analytika (Fluka Chemie AG, Buchs, Switzerland), and Applied Biosystems (Foster City, Calif.), as well as many other commercial sources known to one of skill. Furthermore, those of skill in the art will recognize how to select an appropriate fluorophore for a particular application and, if it not readily available commercially, will be able to synthesize the necessary fluorophore de novo or synthetically modify commercially available fluorescent compounds to arrive at the desired fluorescent label.

In addition to small molecule fluorophores, naturally occurring fluorescent proteins and engineered analogues of such proteins are useful in the present invention. Such proteins include, for example, green fluorescent proteins of cnidarians (Ward et al., *Photochem. Photobiol.* 35:803–808 (1982); Levine et al., *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.*, 72B:77–85 (1982)), yellow fluorescent protein from *Vibrio fischeri* strain (Baldwin et al., *Biochemistry* 29:5509–15 (1990)), Peridinin-chlorophyll from the dinoflagellate *Symbiodinium* sp. (Morris et al., *Plant Molecular Biology* 24:673:77 (1994)), phycobiliproteins from marine cyanobacteria, such as *Synechococcus*, e.g., phycoerythrin and phycocyanin (Wilbanks et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:1226–35 (1993)), and the like.

The compounds, probes and methods discussed in the following sections are generally representative of the compositions of the invention and the methods in which such compositions can be used. The following discussion is intended as illustrative of selected aspects and embodiments of the present invention and it should not be interpreted as limiting the scope of the present invention.

Black Hole Quenchers

The present invention provides a family of dark quenchers that are referred to herein as “Black Hole Quenchers™” (“BHQ’s). The quenchers of the invention include conjugated π-bonded systems that are preferably azo-linked aromatic species.

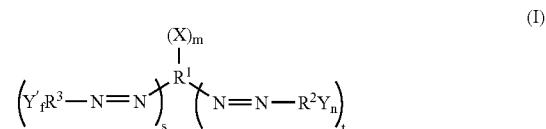
In a first aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond, the quencher further comprising a reactive functional group providing a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule. Although the quenchers can be used in their free unbound form, it is

16

generally preferred that they be tethered to another species, thus, preferred quenchers further comprise a reactive functional group that provides a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule.

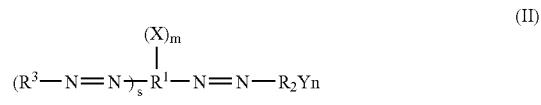
In another preferred embodiment, the BHQs of the invention described herein have substantially no native fluorescence, particularly near their absorbance maxima or near the absorbance maxima of fluorophores used in conjunction with the BHQs. The BHQs will preferably have an absorbance maximum of from about 400 nm to about 760 nm, and more preferably, of from about 500 nm to about 600 nm.

In a second aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula I:



wherein R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl. X , Y and Y' are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when $(fx)s$ is greater than 1, the Y' groups are the same or different; m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when $(nx)t$ is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R^3 groups are the same or different; and t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R^2 groups are the same or different, and when t is 1 and s is 0, a member selected from R^1 , R^2 and combinations thereof is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic aryl and substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic heteroaryl groups.

In a third aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula II:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number selected from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R^3 groups are the same or different. R^1 , R^2 , and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at

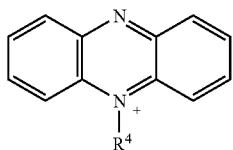
US 7,109,312 B2

17

least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

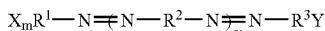
In a preferred embodiment, m is 1; n is 0; c is 1; and R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from aryl and substituted aryl.

In a preferred embodiment of each of the above-described aspects of the invention, R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from aryl and aryl substituted with a member selected from amino, amino derivatives, nitro, C₁–C₆ alkyl, C₁–C₆ alkoxy and combinations thereof, and still more preferably, R¹ includes a structure according to Formula III:



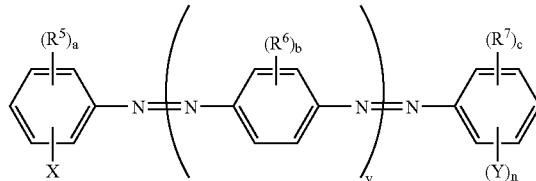
wherein R⁴ is a member selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

In a fourth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula IV:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; c is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different; v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, more preferably from 1 to 6, inclusive and more preferably still between 2 and 4, inclusive. When v is greater than one the R² groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof.

In a fifth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula V:

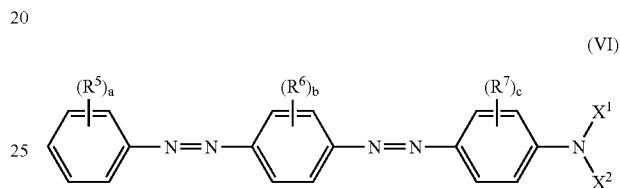


wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R'', substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkyl, and substituted or

18

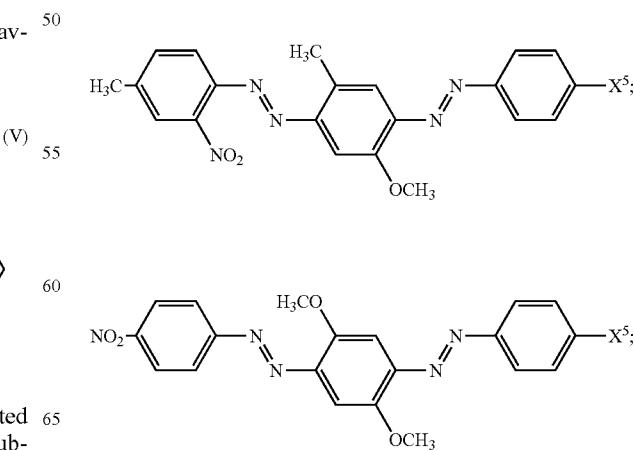
unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkoxy, wherein R' and R'' are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkyl. X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups; n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive; a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (v×b) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the v phenyl rings is the same or different.

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula VI:

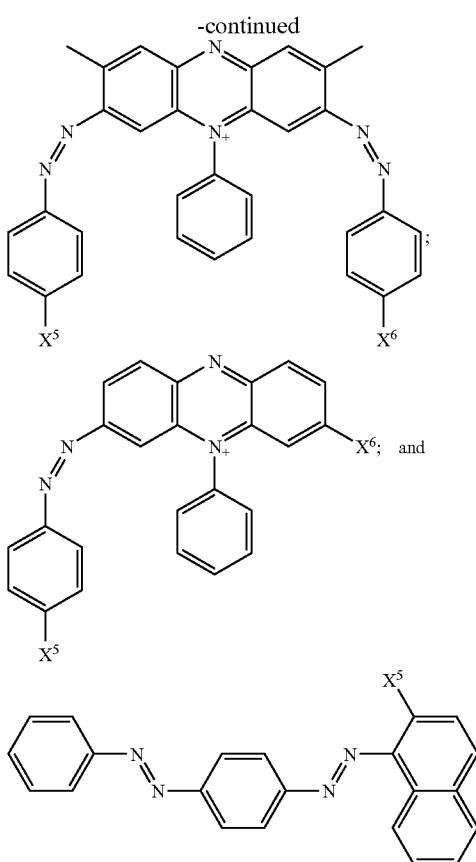


wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from amine, alkyl amine, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₁–C₆ alkoxy; a is a number between 0 and 5, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when b is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and X¹ and X² are members independently selected from C₁–C₆ alkyl or C₁–C₆ substituted alkyl, —OH, —COOH, —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³) (NR'R''), in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl.

In a sixth aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure, which is a member selected from:



US 7,109,312 B2

19

X^5 and X^6 are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_6 alkyl, —OR', —COOR', —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³)N(X⁴)₂, in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl. At least one of X^5 and X^6 is a reactive functional group. X^3 and X^4 are members independently selected from CN, and substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_6 alkyl.

The following discussion is generally relevant to the identity of the reactive groups of the compounds of the invention and is particularly relevant to the groups X, X¹ and X² in each of the above-described aspects of the invention.

In a preferred embodiment, X is a member selected from amine, alkyl amine, substituted alkyl amine, and aryl amine groups, more preferably X has a structure according to Formula VII:

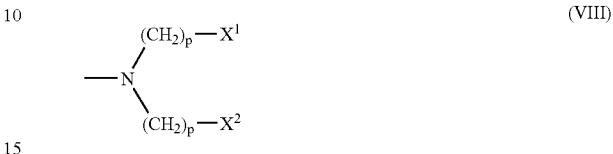


wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl; and X¹ and X² are members independently selected from —CH₃, —OH, —COOH, —NH₂, —SH, —OP(OX³)N(X⁴)₂, wherein, X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl, and preferably X³ is cyanoethyl; and X⁴ is isopropyl.

20

In another preferred embodiment, a member selected from R⁹, R¹⁰ and combinations thereof comprises a polyether. Preferred polyethers include, for example, poly(ethylene glycol), poly(propylene glycol) and copolymers thereof.

In a further preferred embodiment, X has a structure according to Formula VIII:



wherein, X¹, X², X³ and X⁴ are substantially as described above and p and q are numbers independently selected from 1 to 20, preferably from 2 to 16, inclusive.

20 The compounds of the invention can be prepared as a single isomer or a mixture of isomers, including, for example cis-isomers, trans-isomers, diastereomers and stereoisomers. In a preferred embodiment, the compounds are prepared as substantially a single isomer. Isomerically pure compounds are prepared by using synthetic intermediates that are isomerically pure in combination with reactions that either leave the stereochemistry at a chiral center unchanged or result in its complete inversion. Alternatively, the final product or intermediates along the synthetic route can be resolved into a single isomer. Techniques for inverting or leaving unchanged a particular stereocenter, and those for resolving mixtures of stereoisomers are well known in the art and it is well within the ability of one of skill in the art to choose an appropriate resolution or synthetic method for a particular situation. See, generally, Furniss et al. (eds.), VOGEL'S ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY 5TH ED., Longman Scientific and Technical Ltd., Essex, 1991, pp. 809-816; and Heller, *Acc. Chem. Res.* 23: 128 (1990).

40 Reactive Functional Groups

The compounds of the invention bear a reactive functional group, which can be located at any position on an aryl nucleus or on a chain, such as an alkyl chain, attached to an aryl nucleus. When the reactive group is attached to an alkyl, or substituted alkyl chain tethered to an aryl nucleus, the reactive group is preferably located at a terminal position of an alkyl chain. Reactive groups and classes of reactions useful in practicing the present invention are generally those that are well known in the art of bioconjugate chemistry. Currently favored classes of reactions available with reactive BHQs are those which proceed under relatively mild conditions. These include, but are not limited to nucleophilic substitutions (e.g., reactions of amines and alcohols with acyl halides, active esters), electrophilic substitutions (e.g., enamine reactions) and additions to carbon-carbon and carbon-heteroatom multiple bonds (e.g., Michael reaction, Diels-Alder addition). These and other useful reactions are discussed in, for example, March, ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, 3rd Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1985; Hermanson, BIOCONJUGATE TECHNIQUES, Academic Press, San Diego, 1996; and Feeney et al., MODIFICATION OF PROTEINS; Advances in Chemistry Series, Vol. 198, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C., 1982.

Useful reactive functional groups include, for example:

- (a) carboxyl groups and various derivatives thereof including, but not limited to, N-hydroxysuccinimide esters, N-hydroxybenztriazole esters, acid halides, acyl

US 7,109,312 B2

21

- imidazoles, thioesters, p-nitrophenyl esters, alkyl, alk-enyl, alkynyl and aromatic esters;
- (b) hydroxyl groups, which can be converted to esters, ethers, aldehydes, etc.
- (c) haloalkyl groups, wherein the halide can be later displaced with a nucleophilic group such as, for example, an amine, a carboxylate anion, thiol anion, carbanion, or an alkoxide ion, thereby resulting in the covalent attachment of a new group at the site of the halogen atom;
- (d) dienophile groups, which are capable of participating in Diels-Alder reactions such as, for example, male-imido groups;
- (e) aldehyde or ketone groups, such that subsequent derivatization is possible via formation of carbonyl derivatives such as, for example, imines, hydrazones, semicarbazones or oximes, or via such mechanisms as Grignard addition or alkylolithium addition;
- (f) sulfonyl halide groups for subsequent reaction with amines, for example, to form sulfonamides;
- (g) thiol groups, which can be, for example, converted to disulfides or reacted with acyl halides;
- (h) amine or sulphydryl groups, which can be, for example, acylated, alkylated or oxidized;
- (i) alkenes, which can undergo, for example, cycloadditions, acylation, Michael addition, etc;
- (j) epoxides, which can react with, for example, amines and hydroxyl compounds; and
- (k) phosphoramidites and other standard functional groups useful in nucleic acid synthesis.

The reactive functional groups can be chosen such that they do not participate in, or interfere with, the reactions necessary to assemble the reactive BHQ analogue. Alternatively, a reactive functional group can be protected from participating in the reaction by the presence of a protecting group. Those of skill in the art understand how to protect a particular functional group such that it does not interfere with a chosen set of reaction conditions. For examples of useful protecting groups, see, for example, Greene et al., PROTECTIVE GROUPS IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1991.

Donor and Acceptor Moieties

One of the advantages of the compounds of the invention is that a wide range of energy donor molecules can be used in conjunction with the BHQs. A vast array of fluorophores are known to those of skill in the art. See, for example, Cardullo et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 8790-8794 (1988); Dexter, D. L., *J. of Chemical Physics* 21: 836-850 (1953); Hochstrasser et al., *Biophysical Chemistry* 45: 133-141 (1992); Selvin, P., *Methods in Enzymology* 246: 300-334 (1995); Steinberg, I. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 40: 83-114 (1971); Stryer, L. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 47: 819-846 (1978); Wang et al., *Tetrahedron Letters* 31: 6493-6496 (1990); Wang et al., *Anal. Chem.* 67: 1197-1203 (1995).

A non-limiting list of exemplary donors that can be used in conjunction with the quenchers of the invention is provided in Table 1.

TABLE 1

Suitable moieties that can be selected as donors or acceptors in donor-acceptor energy transfer pairs	
4-acetamido-4'-isothiocyanostilbene-2,2'disulfonic acid	
acridine and derivatives:	
acridine	
acridine isothiocyanate	

22

TABLE 1-continued

Suitable moieties that can be selected as donors or acceptors in donor-acceptor energy transfer pairs	
5-(2'-aminoethyl)aminonaphthalene-1-sulfonic acid (EDANS)	
4-amino-N-[3-vinylsulfonyl]phenyl]naphthalimide-3,5 disulfonate	
N-(4-anilino-1-naphthyl)maleimide	
anthranilamide	
BODIPY	
10 Brilliant Yellow	
coumarin and derivatives:	
coumarin	
7-amino-4-methylcoumarin (AMC, Coumarin 120)	
7-amino-4-trifluoromethylcoumarin (Coumaran 151)	
cyanine dyes	
cyanosine	
4',6-diaminidino-2-phenylindole (DAPI)	
5',5"-dibromopyrogallol-sulfonaphthalene (Bromopyrogallol Red)	
7-diethylamino-3-(4'-isothiocyanophenyl)-4-methylcoumarin	
diethylenetriamine pentaacetate	
4,4'-diisothiocyanato dihydro-stilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid	
4,4'-diisothiocyanato stilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid	
20 5-[dimethylamino]naphthalene-1-sulfonyl chloride (DNS, dansylchloride)	
4-(4'-dimethylaminophenylazo)benzoic acid (DABCYL)	
4-dimethylaminophenylazophenyl-4'-isothiocyanate (DABITC)	
eosin and derivatives:	
eosin	
eosin isothiocyanate	
erythrosin and derivatives:	
erythrosin B	
erythrosin isothiocyanate	
ethidium	
fluorescein and derivatives:	
5-carboxyfluorescein (FAM)	
5-(4,6-dichlorotriazin-2-yl)aminofluorescein (DTAF)	
2',7'-dimethoxy-4'5'-dichloro-6-carboxyfluorescein (JOE)	
fluorescein	
fluorescein isothiocyanate	
QFITC (XRITC)	
fluorescamine	
IR144	
IR1446	
Malachite Green isothiocyanate	
4-methylumbelliferon	
ortho cresolphthalein	
nitrotyrosine	
pararosaniline	
Phenol Red	
B-phycocerythrin	
o-phthalodialdehyde	
pyrene and derivatives:	
pyrene	
pyrene butyrate	
succinimidyl 1-pyrene butyrate	
quantum dots	
Reactive Red 4 (Cibaclone™ Brilliant Red 3B-A)	
rhodamine and derivatives:	
6-carboxy-X-rhodamine (ROX)	
6-carboxyrhodamine (R6G)	
lissamine rhodamine B sulfonyl chloride rhodamine (Rhod)	
rhodamine B	
rhodamine 123	
rhodamine X isothiocyanate	
sulforhodamine B	
sulfurhodamine 101	
55 sulfonyl chloride derivative of sulforhodamine 101 (Texas Red)	
N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-6-carboxyrhodamine (TAMRA)	
tetramethyl rhodamine	
tetramethyl rhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC)	
riboflavin	
rosolic acid	
terbium chelate derivatives	

There is a great deal of practical guidance available in the literature for selecting appropriate donor-acceptor pairs for particular probes, as exemplified by the following references: Pesce et al., Eds., FLUORESCENCE SPECTROSCOPY (Marcel Dekker, New York, 1971); White et al., FLUORESCENCE ANALYSIS: A PRACTICAL APPROACH (Marcel Dekker, New York, 1970);

US 7,109,312 B2

23

and the like. The literature also includes references providing exhaustive lists of fluorescent and chromogenic molecules and their relevant optical properties for choosing reporter-quencher pairs (see, for example, Berlman, HANDBOOK OF FLUORESCENCE SPECTRA OF AROMATIC MOLECULES, 2nd Edition (Academic Press, New York, 1971); Griffiths, COLOUR AND CONSTITUTION OF ORGANIC MOLECULES (Academic Press, New York, 1976); Bishop, Ed., INDICATORS (Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1972); Haugland, HANDBOOK OF FLUORESCENT PROBES AND RESEARCH CHEMICALS (Molecular Probes, Eugene, 1992) Pringsheim, FLUORESCENCE AND PHOSPHORESCENCE (Interscience Publishers, New York, 1949); and the like. Further, there is extensive guidance in the literature for derivatizing reporter and quencher molecules for covalent attachment via common reactive groups that can be added to a nucleic acid, as exemplified by the following references: Haugland (supra); Ullman et al., U.S. Pat. No. 3,996,345; Khanna et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,351,760. Thus, it is well within the abilities of those of skill in the art to choose an energy exchange pair for a particular application and to conjugate the members of this pair to a probe molecule, such as, for example, a nucleic acid, peptide or other polymer.

Generally, it is preferred that an absorbance band of the BHQ substantially overlap the fluorescence emission band of the donor. When the donor (fluorophore) is a component of a probe that utilizes donor-acceptor energy transfer, the donor fluorescent moiety and the quencher (acceptor) of the invention are preferably selected so that the donor and acceptor moieties exhibit donor-acceptor energy transfer when the donor moiety is excited. One factor to be considered in choosing the fluorophore-quencher pair is the efficiency of donor-acceptor energy transfer between them. Preferably, the efficiency of FRET between the donor and acceptor moieties is at least 10%, more preferably at least 50% and even more preferably at least 80%. The efficiency of FRET can easily be empirically tested using the methods both described herein and known in the art.

The efficiency of energy transfer between the donor-acceptor pair can also be adjusted by changing the ability of the donor and acceptor groups to dimerize or closely associate. If the donor and acceptor moieties are known or determined to closely associate, an increase or decrease in association can be promoted by adjusting the length of a linker moiety, or of the probe itself, between the donor and acceptor. The ability of donor-acceptor pair to associate can be increased or decreased by tuning the hydrophobic or ionic interactions, or the steric repulsions in the probe construct. Thus, intramolecular interactions responsible for the association of the donor-acceptor pair can be enhanced or attenuated. Thus, for example, the association between the donor-acceptor pair can be increased by, for example, utilizing a donor bearing an overall negative charge and an acceptor with an overall positive charge.

In addition to fluorophores that are attached directly to a probe, the fluorophores can also be attached by indirect means. In this embodiment, a ligand molecule (e.g., biotin) is generally covalently bound to the probe species. The ligand then binds to another molecules (e.g., streptavidin) molecule, which is either inherently detectable or covalently bound to a signal system, such as a fluorescent compound, or an enzyme that produces a fluorescent compound by conversion of a non-fluorescent compound. Useful enzymes of interest as labels include, for example, hydrolases, particularly phosphatases, esterases and glycosidases, hydrolases, peptidases or oxidases, particularly peroxidases, and. Fluorescent compounds include fluorescein and its derivatives, rhodamine and its derivatives, dansyl, umbelliferone,

24

etc., as discussed above. For a review of various labeling or signal producing systems that can be used, see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,391,904.

Presently preferred donors of use in conjunction with BHQ, include, for example, xanthene dyes, including fluoresceins, cyanine dyes and rhodamine dyes. Many suitable forms of these compounds are widely available commercially with substituents on their phenyl moieties, which can be used as the site for bonding or as the bonding functionality for attachment to an nucleic acid. Another group of preferred fluorescent compounds are the naphthylamines, having an amino group in the alpha or beta position. Included among such naphthylamino compounds are 1-dimethylaminonaphthyl-5-sulfonate, 1-anilino-8-naphthalene sulfonate and 2-p-touidinyl-6-naphthalene sulfonate. Other donors include 3-phenyl-7-isocyanatocoumarin, acridines, such as 9-isothiocyanatoacridine and acridine orange; N-(p-(2-benzoxazolyl)phenyl)maleimide; benzoxadiazoles, stilbenes, pyrenes, and the like.

For clarity of illustration, the discussion below focuses on attaching BHQs and fluorophores to nucleic acids. The focus on nucleic acid probes is not intended to limit the scope of probe molecules to which BHQs can be attached. Those of skill in the art will appreciate that BHQs can also be attached to small molecules, proteins, peptides, synthetic polymers, solid supports and the like using standard synthetic chemistry.

In a presently preferred embodiment, in which the probe is a nucleic acid probe, the reporter molecule is a fluorescein dye (FAM). The fluorescein moiety is preferably attached to either the 3'- or the 5'-terminus of the nucleic acid, although internal sites are also accessible and have utility for selected purposes. Whichever terminus the FAM derivative is attached to, the BHQ will generally be attached to its antipode, or at a position internal to the nucleic acid chain. The FAM donor is preferably introduced using a 6-FAM amidite. Different donor groups are also preferably introduced using an amidite derivative of the donor. Alternatively, donor groups comprising reactive groups (e.g., isothiocyanates, active esters, etc.) can be introduced via reaction with a reactive moiety on a tether or linker arm attached to the nucleic acid (e.g., hexyl amine).

In yet another preferred embodiment, the donor moiety can be attached at the 3'-terminus of a nucleic acid by the use of a derivatized synthesis support. For example, TAMRA (tetramethylrhodamine carboxylic acid) is attached to a nucleic acid 3'-terminus using a solid support that is derivatized with an analogue of this fluorophore (Biosearch Technologies, Inc.).

In view of the well-developed body of literature concerning the conjugation of small molecules to nucleic acids, many other methods of attaching donor/acceptor pairs to nucleic acids will be apparent to those of skill in the art. For example, rhodamine and fluorescein dyes are conveniently attached to the 5'-hydroxyl of an nucleic acid at the conclusion of solid phase synthesis by way of dyes derivatized with a phosphoramidite moiety (see, for example, Woo et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,231,191; and Hobbs, Jr., U.S. Pat. No. 4,997,928).

More specifically, there are many linking moieties and methodologies for attaching groups to the 5'- or 3'-termini of nucleic acids, as exemplified by the following references: Eckstein, editor, Nucleic acids and Analogues: A Practical Approach (IRL Press, Oxford, 1991); Zuckerman et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 15: 5305-5321 (1987) (3'-thiol group on nucleic acid); Sharma et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 19: 3019 (1991) (3'-sulphydryl); Giusti et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 2: 223-227 (1993) and Fung et

US 7,109,312 B2

25

al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,757,141 (5'-phosphoamino group via Aminolink TM II available from P.E. Biosystems, CA.) Stabinsky, U.S. Pat. No. 4,739,044 (3-aminoalkylphosphoryl group); Agrawal et al., *Tetrahedron Letters*, 31: 1543-1546 (1990) (attachment via phosphoramidate linkages); Sproat et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 15: 4837 (1987) (5-mercaptop group); Nelson et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 17: 7187-7194 (1989) (3'-amino group), and the like.

Means of detecting fluorescent labels are well known to those of skill in the art. Thus, for example, fluorescent labels can be detected by exciting the fluorophore with the appropriate wavelength of light and detecting the resulting fluorescence. The fluorescence can be detected visually, by means of photographic film, by the use of electronic detectors such as charge coupled devices (CCDs) or photomultipliers and the like. Similarly, enzymatic labels may be detected by providing the appropriate substrates for the enzyme and detecting the resulting reaction product.

Synthesis

The compounds of the invention are synthesized by an appropriate combination of generally well-known synthetic methods. Techniques useful in synthesizing the compounds of the invention are both readily apparent and accessible to those of skill in the relevant art. The discussion below is offered to illustrate certain of the diverse methods available for use in assembling the compounds of the invention, it is not intended to define the scope of reactions or reaction sequences that are useful in preparing the compounds of the present invention.

One method of synthesizing compounds of the invention is set forth in Scheme 1 (FIG. 1). Scheme 1 is a generalized schematic of one synthetic scheme useful with the BHQs of the invention. An azido derivative of a dye is coupled to an aryl derivative 1, at pH 9, forming the corresponding diazo adduct 2. The diol 2 is monoprotected with a group, such as the dimethoxytrityl group to form compound 3, having one free hydroxyl moiety. Compound 3 is converted to phosphoramidite 4 by contacting it with an agent, such as 2-cyanoethyl diisopropylchlorophosphoramidite in the presence of a mildly acidic activator, such as tetrazole. The phosphoramidite is coupled to a hydroxyl-bearing controlled pore glass support and subsequently oxidized to the corresponding phosphotriester derivative, thereby forming an appropriate starting material, 5, for the synthesis of an array of nucleic acids derivatized at the 3'-position with a BHQ.

The above-recited synthetic scheme is intended to be exemplary of one embodiment of the invention, those of skill in the art will recognize that many other synthetic strategies employing reactive BHQ analogues are available. For example, by a slight modification of the method above, a derivative appropriate for modification of a nucleic acid at the 5'-position is easily accessible. In an alternative scheme, compound 4, is not tethered to a solid support, but is added as the final subunit during nucleic acid synthesis, to prepare a nucleic acid with a 5'-BHQ group.

The above-described synthetic scheme can be practiced using a variety of BHQ compounds of the invention, such as those set forth in FIG. 2. FIG. 2 provides the structures of three exemplary BHQs, BH1 (6), BH2 (10) and BH3 (14).

FIG. 3 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (8) of BH1 (7), and a derivative of BH1, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (9). Both the phosphoramidite and the CPG conjugate can be prepared by art-recognized methods, including those set forth herein. Similarly, FIG. 4 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (12) of BH2 (11), and a derivative of BH2, which is tethered to a

26

controlled pore glass support (13) and FIG. 5 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (16) of BH1 (15), and a derivative of BH3, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (17).

In a still further modification of the scheme of FIG. 1, compound 4 is coupled to a nucleic acid intermediate between the 3'- and 5'-positions, the DMT group is removed using standard nucleic acid chemistry, or a modification thereof, and a nucleic acid subunit is tethered to the deprotected primary hydroxyl group as though the hydroxyl group were the 5'-hydroxyl of a preceding nucleic acid subunit, thereby providing a nucleic acid having a BHQ moiety at an internal position.

Assays and BHQ-Bearing Probes

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a BHQ that is tethered to another molecule, such as a probe molecule and assays using these probes.

Assays

The following discussion is generally relevant to the assays described herein. This discussion is intended to illustrate the invention by reference to certain preferred embodiments and should not be interpreted as limiting the scope of probes and assay types in which the compounds of the invention find use. Other assay formats utilizing the compounds of the invention will be apparent to those of skill in the art.

In general, to determine the concentration of a target molecule, such as, for example, a nucleic acid, it is preferable to first obtain reference data in which constant amounts of probe and nucleic acid ligand are contacted with varying amounts of target. The fluorescence emission of each of the reference mixtures is used to derive a graph or table in which target concentration is compared to fluorescence emission. For example, a probe that: a) hybridizes to a target-free nucleic acid ligand; and b) has a stem-loop architecture with the 5' and 3' termini being the sites of fluorescent group and BHQ labeling, can be used to obtain such reference data. Such a probe gives a characteristic emission profile in which the fluorescence emission decreases as the target concentration increases in the presence of a constant amount of probe and nucleic acid ligand. Then, a test mixture with an unknown amount of target is contacted with the same amount of first nucleic acid ligand and second probe, and the fluorescence emission is determined. The value of the fluorescence emission is then compared with the reference data to obtain the concentration of the target in the test mixture.

Multiplex Analyses

In another preferred embodiment, the quenchers of the invention are utilized as a component of one or more probes used in a multiplex assay for detecting one or more species in a mixture.

Probes that include the BHQs of the invention are particularly useful in performing multiplex-type analyses and assays. In a typical multiplex analysis, two or more distinct species (or regions of one or more species) are detected using two or more probes, wherein each of the probes is labeled with a different fluorophore. Preferred species used in multiplex analyses relying on donor-acceptor energy transfer meet at least two criteria: the fluorescent species is bright and spectrally well-resolved; and the energy transfer between the fluorescent species and the quencher is efficient.

Thus, in a further embodiment, the invention provides a mixture comprising at least a first carrier molecule and a second carrier molecule. The first carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a first quencher of excited state

US 7,109,312 B2

27

energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof. At least two of the radicals are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The mixture also includes a second carrier molecule. The second carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a second quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the radicals are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond.

The BHQs of the invention allow for the design of multiplex assays in which more than one quencher structure is used in the assay. A number of different multiplex assays using the BHQs of the invention will be apparent to one of skill in the art. In one exemplary assay, each of the at least two distinct BHQ quenchers is used to quench energy derived from one or more identical fluorophore. Alternatively, an assay can be practiced in which each distinct BHQ quenches energy derived from a distinct fluorophore to which the BHQ is "matched." The fluorophores can be bound to the same molecule as the BHQ or to a different molecule. Moreover, similar to the BHQs and the fluorophores, the carrier molecules of use in a particular assay system can be the same or different.

In addition to the mixtures described above, the present invention also provides a method for detecting or quantifying a particular molecular species. The method includes: (a) contacting the species with a mixture such as that described above; and (b) detecting a change in a fluorescent property of one or more component of the mixture, the molecular species or a combination thereof, thereby detecting or quantifying the molecular species.

Because of the ready availability of BHQs of the invention having different absorbance characteristics, the compounds of the invention are particularly well suited for use in multiplex applications. Access to BHQs having a range of absorbance characteristics allows for the design of donor-acceptor energy transfer probes in which the acceptor emission properties and the BHQ absorbance properties are substantially matched, thereby providing a useful level of spectral overlap (see, for example, FIG. 7).

The simultaneous use of two or more probes using donor-acceptor energy transfer is known in the art. For example, multiplex assays using nucleic acid probes with different sequence specificities have been described. Fluorescent probes have been used to determine whether an individual is homozygous wild-type, homozygous mutant or heterozygous for a particular mutation. For example, using one quenched-fluorescein molecular beacon that recognizes the wild-type sequence and another rhodamine-quenched molecular beacon that recognizes a mutant allele, it is possible to genotype individuals for the β -chemokine receptor (Kostrikis et al. *Science* 279:1228-1229 (1998)). The presence of only a fluorescein signal indicates that the individual is wild-type, and the presence of rhodamine signal only indicates that the individual is a homozygous mutant. The presence of both rhodamine and fluorescein signal is diagnostic of a heterozygote. Tyagi et al. *Nature Biotechnology* 16: 49-53 (1998)) have described the simultaneous use of four differently labeled molecular beacons for allele discrimination, and Lee et al., *BioTechniques* 27: 342-349 (1999) have described seven color homogenous detection of six PCR products.

The quenchers of the present invention can be used in multiplex assays designed to detect and/or quantify substantially any species, including, for example, whole cells,

28

viruses, proteins (e.g., enzymes, antibodies, receptors), glycoproteins, lipoproteins, subcellular particles, organisms (e.g., *Salmonella*), nucleic acids (e.g., DNA, RNA, and analogues thereof), polysaccharides, lipopolysaccharides, lipids, fatty acids, non-biological polymers and small molecules (e.g., toxins, drugs, pesticides, metabolites, hormones, alkaloids, steroids).

Probes

The invention provides probes including BHQ moieties conjugated to, for example, a target species (e.g., receptor, enzyme, etc.) a ligand for a target species (e.g., nucleic acid, peptide, etc.), a small molecule (e.g., drug, pesticide, etc.), and the like. The probes can be used for in vitro and in vivo applications.

A particularly unexpected and surprising advantage of the BHQs is their ability to quench excited state energy from fluorophores attached to carrier molecules (e.g., nucleic acids) without the need to design secondary structure forming components (e.g., hairpins, loops, etc.) into the carrier molecule to bring the fluorophore and the BHQ into proximity. The energy transfer pairs of probes presently used in the art typically require the introduction of some form of secondary structure in order to function properly, thereby seriously constraining the identity of species that can be used as carrier molecules. Thus, the probes of the present invention can be of simple design, can be produced more inexpensively and used to probe a much greater array of systems in much less time than current art-recognized probes.

Yet another unexpected property of the BHQs of the invention is their robustness under a variety of synthetic conditions used to attach the BHQs to a carrier molecule. For example, many of the BHQs of the invention survive the conditions necessary for automated synthesis of nucleic acids without undergoing any substantial degree of degradation or alteration. In contrast, many of the art-recognized quenchers presently in use require the use of special conditions to assemble the carrier molecule to which they are attached, or they have to be attached after the completion of the carrier molecule synthesis. The additional complexity of the synthesis of a probe increases both the duration of the synthesis and its cost.

Small Molecule Probes

The BHQs of the invention can be used as components of small molecule probes. In a preferred design, a small molecule probe includes a fluorophore or fluorophore precursor and a BHQ. In an exemplary embodiment, an agent, such as an enzyme cleaves the BHQ, the fluorophore or both from the small molecule generating fluorescence in the system under investigation (see, for example, Zlokarnik et al., *Science* 279: 84-88 (1998)).

Nucleic Acid Probes

The dark quenchers of the invention are useful in conjunction with nucleic-acid probes and they can be used as components of detection agents in a variety of DNA amplification/quantification strategies including, for example, 5'-nuclease assay, Strand Displacement Amplification (SDA), Nucleic Acid Sequence-Based Amplification (NASBA), Rolling Circle Amplification (RCA), as well as for direct detection of targets in solution phase or solid phase (e.g., array) assays. Furthermore, the BHQ-derivatized nucleic acids can be used in probes of substantially any format, including, for example, format selected from molecular beacons, Scorpion probesTM, Sunrise probesTM, conformationally assisted probes, light up probes, Invader

US 7,109,312 B2

29

Detection probes, and TaqMan™ probes. See, for example, Cardullo, R., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 85:8790–8794 (1988); Dexter, D. L., *J. Chem. Physics*, 21:836–850 (1953); Hochstrasser, R. A., et al., *Biophysical Chemistry*, 45:133–141 (1992); Selvin, P., *Methods in Enzymology*, 246:300–334 (1995); Steinberg, I., *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 40:83–114 (1971); Stryer, L., *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 47:819–846 (1978); Wang, G., et al., *Tetrahedron Letters*, 31:6493–6496 (1990); Wang, Y., et al., *Anal. Chem.*, 67:1197–1203 (1995); Debouck, C., et al., in supplement to *nature genetics*, 21:48–50 (1999); Rehman, F. N., et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 27:649–655 (1999); Cooper, J. P., et al., *Biochemistry*, 29:9261–9268 (1990); Gibson, E. M., et al., *Genome Methods*, 6:995–1001 (1996); Hochstrasser, R. A., et al., *Biophysical Chemistry*, 45:133–141 (1992); Holland, P. M., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 88:7276–7289 (1991); Lee, L. G., et al., *Nucleic Acids Resch.*, 21:3761–3766 (1993); Livak, K. J., et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, Cold Spring Harbor Press (1995); Vamosi, G., et al., *Biophysical Journal*, 71:972–994 (1996); Wittwer, C. T., et al., *Biotechniques*, 22:176–181 (1997); Wittwer, C. T., et al., *Biotechniques*, 22:130–38 (1997); Giesendorf, B. A. J., et al., *Clinical Chemistry*, 44:482–486 (1998); Kostrakis, L. G., et al., *Science*, 279:1228–1229 (1998); Matsuo, T., *Biochemica et Biophysica Acta*, 1379:178–184 (1998); Piatek, A. S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 16:359–363 (1998); Schofield, P., et al., *Appl. Environ. Microbiology*, 63:1143–1147 (1997); Tyagi S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 16:49–53 (1998); Tyagi, S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 14:303–308 (1996); Nazarenko, I. A., et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 25:2516–2521 (1997); Uehara, H., et al., *Biotechniques*, 26:552–558 (1999); D. Whitcombe, et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 17:804–807 (1999); Lyamichev, V., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 17:292 (1999); Daubendiek, et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 15:273–277 (1997); Lizardi, P. M., et al., *Nature Genetics*, 19:225–232 (1998); Walker, G., et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 20:1691–1696 (1992); Walker, G. T., et al., *Clinical Chemistry*, 42:9–13 (1996); and Compton, J., *Nature*, 350:91–92 (1991).

Thus, in a further aspect, the present invention provides a method for detecting a nucleic acid target sequence. The method includes: (a) contacting the target sequence with a detector nucleic acid; (b) hybridizing the target binding sequence to the target sequence, thereby altering the conformation of the detector nucleic acid, causing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (c) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the nucleic acid target sequence.

In the methods described herein, unless otherwise noted, a preferred detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence. The binding sequence has linked thereto: i) a fluorophore; and ii) a BHQ of the invention. Moreover, prior to its hybridization to a complementary sequence, the detector nucleic acid is preferably in a conformation that allows donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the BHQ when the fluorophore is excited. Furthermore, in each of the methods described in this section, a change in fluorescence is detected as an indication of the presence of the target sequence. The change in fluorescence is preferably detected in-real time.

Presently preferred nucleic acid probes do not require the carrier molecule to adopt a secondary structure for the probe to function.

In this method, and unless otherwise noted, the other methods described in this section, the detector nucleic acid can assume substantially any intramolecularly associated secondary structure, but this structure is preferably a mem-

30

ber selected from hairpins, stem-loop structures, pseudoknots, triple helices and conformationally assisted structures. Moreover, the intramolecularly base-paired secondary structure preferably comprises a portion of the target binding sequence.

In another aspect, the invention provides a method for detecting amplification of a target sequence. The method includes the use of an amplification reaction including the following steps: (a) hybridizing the target sequence and a detector nucleic acid. The detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence and an intramolecularly associated secondary structure 5' to the target binding sequence. At least a portion of the detector sequence forms a single stranded tail which is available for hybridization to the target sequence; (b) extending the hybridized detector nucleic acid on the target sequence with a polymerase to produce a detector nucleic acid extension product and separating the detector nucleic acid extension product from the target sequence; (c) hybridizing a primer to the detector nucleic acid extension product and extending the primer with the polymerase, thereby linearizing the intramolecularly associated secondary structure and producing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (d) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the target sequence.

In yet a further aspect, the invention provides a method of ascertaining whether a first nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid hybridize. In this method, the first nucleic acid includes a BHQ according to the invention. The method includes: (a) contacting the first nucleic acid with the second nucleic acid; (b) detecting an alteration in a fluorescent property of a member selected from the first nucleic acid, the second nucleic acid and a combination thereof, thereby ascertaining whether the hybridization occurs.

A probe bearing both a BHQ and a fluorophore can be used or, alternatively, one or more of the nucleic acids can be singly labeled with a BHQ or fluorophore. When a nucleic acid singly labeled with a BHQ is the probe, the interaction between the first and second nucleic acids can be detected by observing the interaction between the BHQ and the nucleic acid or, more preferably, the quenching by the BHQ of the fluorescence of a fluorophore attached to the second nucleic acid.

In addition to their general utility in probes designed to investigate nucleic acid amplification, detection and quantification, the present dark quenchers can be used in substantially any nucleic acid probe format now known or later discovered. For example, the dark quenchers of the invention can be incorporated into probe motifs, such as Taqman™ probes (Held et al., *Genome Res.* 6: 986–994 (1996), Holland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 7276–7280 (1991), Lee et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 21: 3761–3766 (1993)), molecular beacons (Tyagi et al., *Nature Biotechnology* 14:303–308 (1996), Jayasena et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,989,823, issued Nov. 23, 1999)) scorpion probes (Whitcomb et al., *Nature Biotechnology* 17: 804–807 (1999)), sunrise probes (Nazarenko et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 25: 2516–2521 (1997)), conformationally assisted probes (Cook, R., copending and commonly assigned U.S. Provisional Application 60/138,376, filed Jun. 9, 1999), peptide nucleic acid (PNA)-based light up probes (Kubista et al., WO 97/45539, December 1997), double-strand specific DNA dyes (Higuchi et al., *BioTechnology* 10: 413–417 (1992), Wittwer et al., *BioTechniques* 22: 130–138 (1997)) and the like. These and other probe motifs with which the present quenchers can be used are reviewed in NONISOTOPIC DNA PROBE TECHNIQUES, Academic Press, Inc. 1992.

US 7,109,312 B2

31

The nucleic acids for use in the probes of the invention can be any suitable size, and are preferably in the range of from about 10 to about 100 nucleotides, more preferably from about 10 to about 80 nucleotides and more preferably still, from about 20 to about 40 nucleotides. The precise sequence and length of a nucleic acid probe of the invention depends in part on the nature of the target polynucleotide to which it binds. The binding location and length may be varied to achieve appropriate annealing and melting properties for a particular embodiment. Guidance for making such design choices can be found in many art-recognized references.

Preferably, the 3'-terminal nucleotide of the nucleic acid probe is blocked or rendered incapable of extension by a nucleic acid polymerase. Such blocking is conveniently carried out by the attachment of a donor or acceptor moiety to the terminal 3'-position of the nucleic acid probe, either directly or by a linking moiety.

The nucleic acid can comprise DNA, RNA or chimeric mixtures or derivatives or modified versions thereof. Both the probe and target nucleic acid can be present as a single strand, duplex, triplex, etc. Moreover, the nucleic acid can be modified at the base moiety, sugar moiety, or phosphate backbone with other groups such as radioactive labels, minor groove binders, intercalating agents, donor and/or acceptor moieties and the like.

For example, the nucleic acid can comprise at least one modified base moiety which is selected from the group including, but not limited to, 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-iodouracil, hypoxanthine, xanthine, 4-acetylcytosine, 5-(carboxyhydroxymethyl) uracil, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thiouridine, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyluracil, dihydrouracil, beta-D-galactosylqueosine, inosine, N⁶-isopentenyladenine, 1-methylguanine, 1-methylinosine, 2,2-dimethylguanine, 2-methyladenine, 2-methylguanine, 3-methylcytosine, 5-methylcytosine, N⁶-adenine, 7-methylguanine, 5-methylaminomethyluracil, 5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouracil, beta-D-mannosylqueosine, 5'-methoxycarboxymethyluracil, 5-methoxyuracil, 2-methylthio-N⁶-isopentenyladenine, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), wybutoxosine, pseudouracil, queosine, 2-thiocytosine, 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 2-thiouracil, 4-thiouracil, 5-methyluracil, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid methyl ester, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 3-(3-amino-3-N-2-carboxypropyl) uracil, (acp3)w, nitroindole, and 2,6-diaminopurine.

In another embodiment, the nucleic acid comprises at least one modified sugar moiety selected from the group including, but not limited to, arabinose, 2-fluoroarabinose, xylulose, and hexose.

In yet another embodiment, the nucleic acid comprises at least one modified phosphate backbone selected from the group including, but not limited to, a peptide nucleic acid hybrid, a phosphorothioate, a phosphordithioate, a phosphoramidothioate, a phosphoramidate, a phosphordiamidate, a methylphosphonate, an alkyl phosphotriester, and a formacetal or analog thereof.

Phosphodiester linked nucleic acids of the invention can be synthesized by standard methods known in the art, e.g. by use of an automated DNA synthesizer (such as are commercially available from P.E. Biosystems, etc.) using commercially available amidite chemistries. Nucleic acids bearing modified phosphodiester linking groups can be synthesized by methods known in the art. For example, phosphorothioate nucleic acids may be synthesized by the method of Stein et al. (*Nucl. Acids Res.* 16:3209 (1988)), methylphosphonate nucleic acids can be prepared by use of controlled pore glass

32

polymer supports (Sarin et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 85:7448-7451 (1988)). Other methods of synthesizing both phosphodiester- and modified phosphodiester-linked nucleic acids will be apparent to those of skill in the art.

Nucleic acid probes of the invention can be synthesized by a number of approaches, e.g., Ozaki et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 20: 5205-5214 (1992); Agrawal et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 18: 5419-5423 (1990); or the like. The nucleic acid probes of the invention are conveniently synthesized on an automated DNA synthesizer, e.g., a P.E. Biosystems, Inc. (Foster City, Calif.) model 392 or 394 DNA/RNA Synthesizer, using standard chemistries, such as phosphoramidite chemistry (see, for example, disclosed in the following references, Beauchage et al., *Tetrahedron*, 48: 2223-2311 (1992); Molko et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,980,460; Koster et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,725,677; Caruthers et al., U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,415,732; 4,458,066; and 4,973,679. Alternative chemistries resulting in non-natural backbone groups, such as phosphorothioate, phosphoramidate, and the like, can also be employed.

When the nucleic acids are synthesized utilizing an automated nucleic acid synthesizer, the donor and acceptor moieties are preferably introduced during automated synthesis. Alternatively, one or more of these moieties can be introduced either before or after the automated synthesis procedure has commenced. For example, donor and/or acceptor groups can be introduced at the 3'-terminus using a solid support modified with the desired group(s). Additionally, donor and/or acceptor groups can be introduced at the 5'-terminus by, for example a derivative of the group that includes a phosphoramidite. In another exemplary embodiment, one or more of the donor and/or acceptor groups is introduced after the automated synthesis is complete.

In the dual labeled probes, the donor moiety is preferably separated from the BHQ by at least about 10 nucleotides, and more preferably by at least about 15 nucleotides. The donor moiety is preferably attached to either the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotides of the probe. The BHQ moiety is also preferably attached to either the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotides of the probe. More preferably, the donor and acceptor moieties are attached to the 3'- and 5'- or 5'- and 3'-terminal nucleotides of the probe, respectively, although internal placement is also useful.

Once the desired nucleic acid is synthesized, it is preferably cleaved from the solid support on which it was synthesized and treated, by methods known in the art, to remove any protecting groups present (e.g., 60° C., 5 h, concentrated ammonia). In those embodiments in which a base-sensitive group is attached to the nucleic acids (e.g., TAMRA), the deprotection will preferably use milder conditions (e.g., butylamine: water 1:3, 8 hours, 70° C.). Deprotection under these conditions is facilitated by the use of quick deprotect amides (e.g., dC-acetyl, dG-dmf).

Following cleavage from the support and deprotection, the nucleic acid is purified by any method known in the art, including chromatography, extraction and gel purification. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleic acid is purified using HPLC. The concentration and purity of the isolated nucleic acid is preferably determined by measuring the optical density at 260 nm in a spectrophotometer.

Peptide Probes

Peptides, proteins and peptide nucleic acids that are labeled with a fluorophore and a quencher of the invention can be used in both in vivo and in vitro enzymatic assays.

Thus, in another aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an

US 7,109,312 B2

33

enzyme. The method comprises: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct; (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the presence of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

Peptide constructs useful in practicing the invention include those with the following features: i) a fluorophore; ii) a BHQ of the invention; and iii) a cleavage or assembly recognition site for the enzyme. Moreover, the peptide construct is preferably of a length and orientation and in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the BHQ when the fluorophore is excited.

When the probe is used to detect an enzyme, such as a degradative enzyme (e.g., protease), and a degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer that is lower than an expected amount is observed, this is generally indicative of the presence of an enzyme. The degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample can be determined, for example, as a function of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety, the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety, the ratio of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety to the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety or the excitation state lifetime of the donor moiety.

The assay also is useful for determining the amount of enzyme in a sample by determining the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer at a first and second time after contact between the enzyme and the tandem construct, and determining the difference in the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer. The difference in the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer reflects the amount of enzyme in the sample.

The assay methods also can also be used to determine whether a compound alters the activity of an enzyme, i.e., screening assays. Thus, in a further aspect, the invention provides methods of determining the amount of activity of an enzyme in a sample from an organism. The method includes: (a) contacting a sample comprising the enzyme and the compound with a peptide construct comprising (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the activity of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property. Peptide constructs useful in this aspect of the invention are substantially similar to those described immediately above.

In a preferred embodiment, the amount of enzyme activity in the sample is determined as a function of the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample and the amount of activity in the sample is compared with a standard activity for the same amount of the enzyme. A difference between the amount of enzyme activity in the sample and the standard activity indicates that the compound alters the activity of the enzyme.

Representative enzymes with which the present invention can be practiced include, for example, trypsin, enterokinase, HIV-1 protease, prohormone convertase, interleukin-1 β -converting enzyme, adenovirus endopeptidase, cytomegalovirus assemblin, leishmanolysin, β -secretase for amyloid precursor protein, thrombin, renin, angiotensin-converting enzyme, cathepsin-D and a kininogenase, and proteases in general.

Proteases play essential roles in many disease processes such as Alzheimer's, hypertension, inflammation, apoptosis, and AIDS. Compounds that block or enhance their activity have potential as therapeutic agents. Because the normal substrates of peptidases are linear peptides and because established procedures exist for making non-peptidic ana-

34

logs, compounds that affect the activity of proteases are natural subjects of combinatorial chemistry. Screening compounds produced by combinatorial chemistry requires convenient enzymatic assays.

5 The most convenient assays for proteases are based on donor-acceptor energy transfer from a donor fluorophore to a quencher placed at opposite ends of a short peptide chain containing the potential cleavage site (see, Knight C. G., *Methods in Enzymol.* 248:18-34 (1995)). Proteolysis separates the fluorophore and quencher, resulting in increased intensity in the emission of the donor fluorophore. Existing protease assays use short peptide substrates incorporating unnatural chromophoric amino acids, assembled by solid phase peptide synthesis.

10 Assays of the invention are also useful for determining and characterizing substrate cleavage sequences of proteases or for identifying proteases, such as orphan proteases. In one embodiment the method involves the replacement of a defined linker moiety amino acid sequence with one that contains a randomized selection of amino acids. A library of fluorescent BHQ-bearing probes, wherein the fluorophore and the BHQ are linked by a randomized peptide linker moiety can be generated using recombinant engineering techniques or synthetic chemistry techniques. Screening the members of the library can be accomplished by measuring a signal related to cleavage, such as donor-acceptor energy transfer, after contacting the cleavage enzyme with each of the library members of the tandem fluorescent peptide construct. A degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer that is lower than an expected amount indicates the presence of a linker sequence that is cleaved by the enzyme. The degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample can be determined, for example, as a function of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety, the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor donor moiety, or the ratio of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety to the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety or the excitation state lifetime of the donor moiety.

15 In the tandem constructs of the invention, the donor and acceptor moieties are connected through a linker moiety. The linker moiety, preferably, includes a peptide moiety, but can be or can include another organic molecular moiety, as well. In a preferred embodiment, the linker moiety includes a cleavage recognition site specific for an enzyme or other cleavage agent of interest. A cleavage site in the linker moiety is useful because when a tandem construct is mixed with the cleavage agent, the linker is a substrate for cleavage by the cleavage agent. Rupture of the linker moiety results in separation of the fluorophore and the quencher of the invention. The separation is measurable as a change in donor-acceptor energy transfer. Alternatively, peptide assembly can be detected by an increase in donor-acceptor energy transfer between a peptide fragment bearing a BHQ and a peptide fragment bearing a donor moiety.

20 When the cleavage agent of interest is a protease, the linker generally includes a peptide containing a cleavage recognition sequence for the protease. A cleavage recognition sequence for a protease is a specific amino acid sequence recognized by the protease during proteolytic cleavage. Many protease cleavage sites are known in the art, and these and other cleavage sites can be included in the linker moiety. See, e.g., Matayoshi et al. *Science* 247: 954 (1990); Dunn et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 241: 254 (1994); Seidah et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 175 (1994); Thornberry, *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 615 (1994); Weber et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 595 (1994); Smith et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 412 (1994); Bouvier et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 248: 614 (1995), Hardy et al.,

US 7,109,312 B2

35

in AMYLOID PROTEIN PRECURSOR IN DEVELOPMENT, AGING, AND ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE, ed. Masters et al. pp. 190–198 (1994).

Solid Support Immobilized BHQ Analogues

The BHQs of the invention can be immobilized on substantially any polymer, biomolecule, and solid or semi-solid material having any useful configuration. Moreover, any conjugate comprising one or more BHQs can be similarly immobilized. When the support is a solid or semi-solid, examples of preferred types of supports for immobilization of the nucleic acid probe include, but are not limited to, controlled pore glass, glass plates, polystyrene, avidin coated polystyrene beads, cellulose, nylon, acrylamide gel and activated dextran. These solid supports are preferred because of their chemical stability, ease of functionalization and well-defined surface area. Solid supports such as, controlled pore glass (CPG, 500 Å, 1000 Å) and non-swelling high cross-linked polystyrene (1000 Å) are particularly preferred.

According to the present invention, the surface of a solid support is functionalized with a quencher of the invention or a species including a quencher of the invention. For clarity of illustration, the following discussion focuses on attaching a reactive BHQ to a solid support. The following discussion is also broadly relevant to attaching a species that includes within its structure a reactive BHQ to a solid support, and the attachment of such species and reactive BHQ analogues to other molecules and structures.

The BHQs are preferably attached to a solid support by forming a bond between a reactive group on the BHQ and a reactive group on the surface of the solid support or a linker attached to the solid support, thereby derivatizing the solid support with one or more BHQ analogues. The bond between the solid support and the BHQ is preferably a covalent bond, although ionic, dative and other such bonds are useful as well. Reactive groups which can be used in practicing the present invention are discussed in detail above and include, for example, amines, hydroxyl groups, carboxylic acids, carboxylic acid derivatives, alkenes, sulphydryls, siloxanes, etc.

A large number of solid supports appropriate for practicing the present invention are available commercially and include, for example, peptide synthesis resins, both with and without attached amino acids and/or peptides (e.g., alkoxybenzyl alcohol resin, aminomethyl resin, aminopolystyrene resin, benzhydrylamine resin, etc. (Bachem)), functionalized controlled pore glass (BioSearch Technologies, Inc.), ion exchange media (Aldrich), functionalized membranes (e.g., —COOH membranes; Asahi Chemical Co., Asahi Glass Co., and Tokuyama Soda Co.), and the like.

Moreover, for applications in which an appropriate solid support is not commercially available, a wide variety of reaction types are available for the functionalization of a solid support surface. For example, supports constructed of a plastic such as polypropylene, can be surface derivatized by chromic acid oxidation, and subsequently converted to hydroxylated or aminomethylated surfaces. The functionalized support is then reacted with a BHQ of complementary reactivity, such as a BHQ active ester, acid chloride or sulfonate ester, for example. Supports made from highly crosslinked divinylbenzene can be surface derivatized by chloromethylation and subsequent functional group manipulation. Additionally, functionalized substrates can be made from etched, reduced polytetrafluoroethylene.

36

When the support is constructed of a siliceous material such as glass, the surface can be derivatized by reacting the surface Si—OH, SiO—H, and/or Si—Si groups with a functionalizing reagent.

In a preferred embodiment, wherein the substrates are made from glass, the covalent bonding of the reactive group to the glass surface is achieved by conversion of groups on the substrate's surface by a silicon-modifying reagent such as:



where R^a is an alkyl group, such as methyl or ethyl, R^b is a linking group between silicon and X^a, and X^a is a reactive group or a protected reactive group. Silane derivatives having halogens or other leaving groups beside the displayed alkoxy groups are also useful in the present invention.

In another preferred embodiment, the reagent used to functionalize the solid support provides for more than one reactive group per each reagent molecule. Using reagents, such as the compound below, each reactive site on the substrate surface is, in essence, “amplified” to two or more functional groups:



where R^a is an alkyl group (e.g., methyl, ethyl), R^b is a linking group between silicon and X^a, X^a is a reactive group or a protected reactive group and n is an integer between 2 and 50, and more preferably between 2 and 20. The amplification of a BHQ by its attachment to a silicon-containing substrate is intended to be exemplary of the general concept of BHQ amplification. This amplification strategy is equally applicable to other aspects of the invention in which a BHQ analogue is attached to another molecule or solid support.

A number of siloxane functionalizing reagents can be used, for example:

1. Hydroxyalkyl siloxanes (Silylate surface, functionalize with diborane, and H₂O₂ to oxidize to the alcohol)
 - a. allyl trichlorosilane → 3-hydroxypropyl
 - b. 7-oct-1-enyl trichlorchlorosilane → 8-hydroxyoctyl
2. Diol (dihydroxyalkyl) siloxanes (silylate surface and hydrolyze to diol)a. (glycidyl trimethoxysilane → (2, 3-dihydroxypropoxy)propyl
3. Aminoalkyl siloxanes (amines requiring no intermediate functionalizing step)
 - a. 3-aminopropyl trimethoxysilane → aminopropyl
4. Dimeric secondary aminoalkyl siloxanes
 - a. bis (3-trimethoxysilylpropyl) amine → bis(silyloxypropyl)amine.

It will be apparent to those of skill in the art that an array of similarly useful functionalizing chemistries is available when support components other than siloxanes are used. Thus, for example alkyl thiols, functionalized as discussed above in the context of siloxane-modifying reagents, can be attached to metal films and subsequently reacted with a BHQ to produce the immobilized compound of the invention.

R groups of use for R^b in the above described embodiments of the present invention include, but are not limited to, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, substituted aryl, substituted arylalkyl, acyl, halogen, hydroxy, amino, alkylamino, acylamino, alkoxy, acyloxy, aryloxy, aryloxylalkyl, mercapto, saturated cyclic hydrocarbon, unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbon, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, substituted het-

US 7,109,312 B2

37

eroaryl, substituted heteroarylalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and heterocyclicalkyl groups and combinations thereof.

Nucleic Acid Capture Probes

In one embodiment, an immobilized nucleic acid comprising a BHQ is used as a capture probe. The nucleic acid probe can be attached directly to a solid support, for example by attachment of the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotide of the probe to the solid support. More preferably, however, the probe is attached to the solid support by a linker (i.e., spacer arm, supra). The linker serves to distance the probe from the solid support. The linker is most preferably from about 5 to about 30 atoms in length, more preferably from about 10 to about 50 atoms in length.

In yet another preferred embodiment, the solid support is also used as the synthesis support in preparing the probe. The length and chemical stability of the linker between the solid support and the first 3'-unit of nucleic acid play an important role in efficient synthesis and hybridization of support bound nucleic acids. The linker arm should be sufficiently long so that a high yield (>97%) can be achieved during automated synthesis. The required length of the linker will depend on the particular solid support used. For example, a six atom linker is generally sufficient to achieve a >97% yield during automated synthesis of nucleic acids when high cross-linked polystyrene is used as the solid support. The linker arm is preferably at least 20 atoms long in order to attain a high yield (>97%) during automated synthesis when CPG is used as the solid support.

Hybridization of a probe immobilized on a solid support generally requires that the probe be separated from the solid support by at least 30 atoms, more preferably at least 50 atoms. In order to achieve this separation, the linker generally includes a spacer positioned between the linker and the 3'-terminus. For nucleic acid synthesis, the linker arm is usually attached to the 3'-OH of the 3'-terminus by an ester linkage which can be cleaved with basic reagents to free the nucleic acid from the solid support.

A wide variety of linkers are known in the art, which may be used to attach the nucleic acid probe to the solid support. The linker may be formed of any compound, which does not significantly interfere with the hybridization of the target sequence to the probe attached to the solid support. The linker may be formed of, for example, a homopolymeric nucleic acid, which can be readily added on to the linker by automated synthesis. Alternatively, polymers such as functionalized polyethylene glycol can be used as the linker. Such polymers are presently preferred over homopolymeric nucleic acids because they do not significantly interfere with the hybridization of probe to the target nucleic acid. Polyethylene glycol is particularly preferred because it is commercially available, soluble in both organic and aqueous media, easy to functionalize, and completely stable under nucleic acid synthesis and post-synthesis conditions.

The linkages between the solid support, the linker and the probe are preferably not cleaved during synthesis or removal of base protecting groups under basic conditions at high temperature. These linkages can, however, be selected from groups that are cleavable under a variety of conditions. Examples of presently preferred linkages include carbamate, ester and amide linkages.

Acrylamide-Immobilized Probes

In another preferred embodiment, a species is within a matrix, such as an acrylamide matrix and the species bears a BHQ, or the presence of the immobilized species is ascertained using a probe bearing a BHQ. In a preferred

38

embodiment, the immobilization is accomplished in conjunction with the "acrydite" process invented and commercialized by Mosaic Technologies (Cambridge, Mass., see, Rehman et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 27: 649-655 (1999)). The acrydite method allows immobilization of alkene labeled capture probes within a polymerized polyacrylamide network. When target mixes are run past the immobilized probe band under electrophoresis conditions, the target nucleic acid is captured substantially quantitatively. However, detection of this event currently requires a second probe. In one embodiment, probes bearing a BHQ, and/or a fluorophore, are immobilized in an acrylamide matrix and subsequently contacted with the target mix. By using fluorescent probes as capture probes, signals from target mixes can be directly detected in real time.

Microarrays

The present invention also provides microarrays including immobilized BHQs and compounds (e.g., peptides, nucleic acids, bioactive agents, etc.) functionalized with BHQs. Moreover, the invention provides methods of interrogating microarrays using probes that are functionalized with BHQs. The immobilized species and the probes are selected from substantially any type of molecule, including, but not limited to, small molecules, peptides, enzymes nucleic acids and the like.

Nucleic acid microarrays consisting of a multitude of immobilized nucleic acids are revolutionary tools for the generation of genomic information, see, Debouck et al., in supplement to *Nature Genetics*, 21:48-50 (1999). The discussion that follows focuses on the use of BHQs in conjunction with nucleic acid microarrays. This focus is intended to be illustrative and does not limit the scope of materials with which this aspect of the present invention can be practiced.

In another preferred embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are utilized in a microarray format. The BHQs, or species bearing BHQs can themselves be components of a microarray or, alternatively they can be utilized as a tool to screen components of a microarray.

Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a method of screening a microarray. The method includes contacting the members of the microarray with, for example, a BHQ-bearing probe and interrogating the microarray for regions of fluorescence. In an exemplary embodiment, fluorescent regions are indicative of the presence of an interaction between the BHQ-bearing probe and a microarray component. In another version of this method, the microarray is interrogated for regions in which fluorescence is quenched by the BHQ, again indicating the presence of an interaction between the BHQ-bearing probe and a component of the microarray.

In another preferred embodiment, the array comprises immobilized BHQ-bearing donor-acceptor energy transfer probes as the interrogating species. In this embodiment, the probe "turns on" when hybridized to its target. Such arrays are easily prepared and read, and can be designed to give quantitative data. Arrays comprising BHQ-bearing probes are valuable tools for expression analysis and clinical genomic screening.

In another preferred embodiment, the immobilized BHQ-bearing probe is not a donor-acceptor energy transfer probe. A microarray based on such a format can be used to probe for the presence of interactions between an analyte and the immobilized probe by, for example, observing the quenching of analyte fluorescence upon interaction between the probe and analyte.

US 7,109,312 B2

39

In a further preferred embodiment, the microarrays comprise n regions that comprise identical or different species (e.g., nucleic acid sequences, bioactive agents). For example, the microarray can comprise a mixture of n regions comprising groups of identical species. In a preferred embodiment, n is a number from 2 to 100, more preferably, from 10 to 1,000, and more preferably from 100 to 10,000. In a still further preferred embodiment, the n regions are patterned on a substrate as n distinct locations in a manner that allows the identity of each of the n locations to be ascertained.

In yet another preferred embodiment, the invention also provides a method for preparing a microarray of n BHQ-bearing probes. The method includes attaching BHQ-bearing probes to selected regions of a substrate. A variety of methods are currently available for making arrays of biological macromolecules, such as arrays nucleic acid molecules. The following discussion focuses on the assembly of a microarray of BHQ-bearing probes, this focus is for reasons of brevity and is intended to be illustrative and not limiting.

One method for making ordered arrays of BHQ-bearing probes on a substrate is a "dot blot" approach. In this method, a vacuum manifold transfers a plurality, e.g., 96, aqueous samples of probes from 3 millimeter diameter wells to a substrate. The probe is immobilized on the porous membrane by baking the membrane or exposing it to UV radiation. A common variant of this procedure is a "slot-blot" method in which the wells have highly-elongated oval shapes.

Another technique employed for making ordered arrays of probes uses an array of pins dipped into the wells, e.g., the 96 wells of a microtiter plate, for transferring an array of samples to a substrate, such as a porous membrane. One array includes pins that are designed to spot a membrane in a staggered fashion, for creating an array of 9216 spots in a 22×22 cm area. See, Lehrach, et al., HYBRIDIZATION FINGER-PRINTING IN GENOME MAPPING AND SEQUENCING, GENOME ANALYSIS, Vol. 1, Davies et al, Eds., Cold Springs Harbor Press, pp. 39–81 (1990).

An alternate method of creating ordered arrays of probes is analogous to that described by Pirrung et al. (U.S. Pat. No. 5,143,854, issued 1992), and also by Fodor et al., (*Science*, 251: 767–773 (1991)). This method involves synthesizing different probes at different discrete regions of a particle or other substrate. This method is preferably used with relatively short probe molecules, e.g., less than 20 bases. A related method has been described by Southern et al. (*Genomics*, 13: 1008–1017 (1992)).

Khrapko, et al., *DNA Sequence*, 1: 375–388 (1991) describes a method of making an nucleic acid matrix by spotting DNA onto a thin layer of polyacrylamide. The spotting is done manually with a micropipette.

The substrate can also be patterned using techniques such as photolithography (Kleinfield et al., *J. Neurosci.* 8:4098–120 (1998)), photoetching, chemical etching and microcontact printing (Kumar et al., *Langmuir* 10: 1498–511 (1994)). Other techniques for forming patterns on a substrate will be readily apparent to those of skill in the art.

The size and complexity of the pattern on the substrate is limited only by the resolution of the technique utilized and the purpose for which the pattern is intended. For example, using microcontact printing, features as small as 200 nm are layered onto a substrate. See, Xia, Y., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:3274–75 (1995). Similarly, using photolithography, pat-

40

terns with features as small as 1 μm are produced. See, Hickman et al., *J. Vac. Sci. Technol.* 12:607–16 (1994). Patterns which are useful in the present invention include those which include features such as wells, enclosures, partitions, recesses, inlets, outlets, channels, troughs, diffraction gratings and the like.

In a presently preferred embodiment, the patterning is used to produce a substrate having a plurality of adjacent wells, indentations or holes to contain the probes. In general, each of these substrate features is isolated from the other wells by a raised wall or partition and the wells do not readily fluidically communicate. Thus, a particle, reagent or other substance, placed in a particular well remains substantially confined to that well. In another preferred embodiment, the patterning allows the creation of channels through the device whereby an analyte or other substance can enter and/or exit the device.

In another embodiment, the probes are immobilized by "printing" them directly onto a substrate or, alternatively, a "lift off" technique can be utilized. In the lift off technique, a patterned resist is laid onto the substrate, and a probe is laid down in those areas not covered by the resist and the resist is subsequently removed. Resists appropriate for use with the substrates of the present invention are known to those of skill in the art. See, for example, Kleinfield et al., *J. Neurosci.* 8:4098–120 (1998). Following removal of the photoresist, a second probe, having a structure different from the first probe can be bonded to the substrate on those areas initially covered by the resist. Using this technique, substrates with patterns of probes having different characteristics can be produced. Similar substrate configurations are accessible through microprinting a layer with the desired characteristics directly onto the substrate. See, Mrkish et al., *Ann. Rev. Biophys. Biomol. Struct.* 25:55–78 (1996).

Spacer Groups

As used herein, the term "spacer group," refers to constituents of BHQ-bearing probes. The spacer group links donor and/or acceptor moieties and other groups to the nucleic acid, peptide or other component of the probe. The spacer groups can be hydrophilic (e.g., tetraethylene glycol, hexaethylene glycol, polyethylene glycol) or they can be hydrophobic (e.g., hexane, decane, etc.).

In a preferred embodiment, using solid supports the immobilized construct includes a spacer between the solid support reactive group and the BHQ analogue. The linker is preferably selected from C₆–C₃₀ alkyl groups, C₆–C₃₀ substituted alkyl groups, polyols, polyethers (e.g., poly(ethyleneglycol)), polyamines, polyamino acids, polysaccharides and combinations thereof.

In certain embodiments, it is advantageous to have the donor and/or acceptor of the probe attached to another polymeric component by a group that provides flexibility and distance from the polymeric component. Using such spacer groups, the properties of the donor and/or acceptor adjacent to another probe component is modulated. Properties that are usefully controlled include, for example, hydrophobicity, hydrophilicity, surface-activity, the distance of the donor and/or BHQ moiety from the other probe components (e.g., carrier molecule) and the distance of the donor from the BHQ.

In an exemplary embodiment, the spacer serves to distance the BHQ from a nucleic acid. Spacers with this characteristic have several uses. For example, a BHQ held

US 7,109,312 B2

41

too closely to the nucleic acid may not interact with the donor group, or it may interact with too low of an affinity. When a BHQ is itself sterically demanding, the interaction leading to quenching can be undesirably weakened, or it may not occur at all, due to a sterically-induced hindering of the approach of the two components.

When the construct comprising the BHQ is immobilized by attachment to, for example, a solid support, the construct can also include a spacer moiety between the reactive group of the solid support and the BHQ analogue, or other probe component bound to the solid support.

In yet a further embodiment, a spacer group used in the probes of the invention is provided with a group that can be cleaved to release a bound moiety, such as, for example, a BHQ, fluorophore, minor groove binder, intercalating moiety, and the like from the polymeric component. Many cleavable groups are known in the art. See, for example, Jung et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Acta*, 761: 152–162 (1983); Joshi et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 265: 14518–14525 (1990); Zarling et al., *J. Immunol.*, 124: 913–920 (1980); Bouizar et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 155: 141–147 (1986); Park et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 261: 205–210 (1986); Browning et al., *J. Immunol.*, 143: 1859–1867 (1989). Moreover a broad range of cleavable, bifunctional (both homo- and hetero-bifunctional) spacer arms are commercially available from suppliers such as Pierce.

An exemplary embodiment utilizing spacer groups is set forth in Formulae VII and VIII, above. In these formulae, R^b is either stable or it can be cleaved by chemical or photochemical reactions. For example, R^b groups comprising ester or disulfide bonds can be cleaved by hydrolysis and reduction, respectively. Also within the scope of the present invention is the use of R^b groups which are cleaved by light such as, for example, nitrobenzyl derivatives, phenacyl groups, benzoin esters, etc. Other such cleavable groups are well-known to those of skill in the art.

Kits

In another aspect, the present invention provides kits containing one or more of the BHQs or BHQ-bearing compositions of the invention. In one embodiment, a kit will include a reactive BHQ derivative and directions for attaching this derivative to another molecule. In another embodiment, the kit includes a BHQ-labeled nucleic acid that optionally is also labeled with a fluorophore and directions for using this nucleic acid in one or more assay formats. Other formats for kits will be apparent to those of skill in the art and are within the scope of the present invention.

The materials and methods of the present invention are further illustrated by the examples which follow. These examples are offered to illustrate, but not to limit the claimed invention.

EXAMPLES

The following Examples illustrate the synthesis and characterization of exemplary species of the invention.

Example 1 sets for the synthesis of the quencher BH1 and its conversion into a controlled pore glass conjugate. Examples 2 and 3, provide similar details regarding the quenchers BH2 and BH3.

Example 4 sets forth the incorporation of exemplary quenchers of the invention into nucleic acid-based donor-acceptor energy transfer probes. The quenching efficiency of the BHQs in the probes is assessed and compared to that of the art-recognized dark quencher DABCYL.

42

Example 1

This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH1 and derivatives thereof.

1.1 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-di(2-hydroxyethyl) azobenzene, (BH1 diol), 6

To a rapidly stirred suspension of 25 g (60 mmol) Fast Corinth V salt (Aldrich 22,736–5) in 400 mL of chilled water (ice bath) was added 50 g (276 mmol) N-phenyldiethanolamine dissolved in 400 mL methanol and 300 mL sat'd NaHCO₃ over 20 min. The mixture changed color from yellow to deep red during the course of the addition. The mixture was chilled for an additional 1 hr after addition, then filtered through a medium glass frit. The dark red solid was washed with 300 ml of ice cold water and air dried for 3 days. The yield of 6 was 27 g, (91%). TLC rf 0.15 (Silica plate, 5% MeOH in CH₂Cl₂). MALDI M/e 493.11 (Calc'd 492.5). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, δ) 7.9 (d, 2H), 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.45(d, 1H), 7.4(s, 1H), 6.8 (d, 2H), 4.0(s, 3H), 3.95(t, 2H), 3.85(t, 2H), 3.7(t, 2H), 3.6(t, 2H), 2.7(s, 3H), 2.5(s, 3H).

1.2 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxytrityl)ethyl)azobenzene (DMT-BH1), 7

A solution of 25 g (50 mmol) 6 in 400 mL of dry pyridine was stripped to dryness, and 7 g (21 mmol) of DMT-chloride was added in 300 mL of dry pyridine. The solution sat for 3 days at rt, then was stripped to a tar. The black residue was dissolved in 600 mL ethyl acetate, and washed with 300 mL of 1 N aqueous citric acid, followed by a 300 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO₃ wash. The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄ and stripped to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 55 by 8 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 0.5% MeOH, 0.5% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂. After 1 L of solvent eluted, a gradient to 2% MeOH was run over 4 L. Fractions containing pure 7 (0.42 rf, silica plate, 2% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 2.8 g (17% yield) of 2 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 793.88 (Calc'd 794.5). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, δ) 7.85 (d, 2H), 7.7 (m, 4H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.45(d, 1H), 7.4–7.1 (m, 10H), 6.8(m, 6H), 4.0(s, 3H), 3.85(m, 2H), 3.75 (s, 6H), 3.7(m, 2H), 3.5–3.3(m, 4H), 2.7(s, 3H), 2.5(s, 3H).

1.3 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-O-(N,N'-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-4,4'dimethoxytrityl)-ethyl)azobenzene, (DMT-BH1 amidite), 8

A solution of 2.8 g (3.5 mmol) of 7 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 1.5 g (5 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 60 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 7. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 200 mL of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with 100 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO₃ and dried over MgSO₄. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 25 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted with a mobile phase of 75% Pet. ether, 23% EtOAc, 2% pyridine. Fractions containing pure 8 (0.67 rf, pre-run silica plate, 50% Pet. ether, 48% EtOAc, 2% pyridine) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 1 g (20% yield) of 8 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 995.5 (Calc'd 994.5).

US 7,109,312 B2

43

1.4 Synthesis of BH1-CPG, 9

11 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500 Å, Biosearch part # BGS-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 , followed by one 50 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 1 g of 8. 25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 1 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 50 mL of acetonitrile, then 50 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac_2O , 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 . The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 16 $\mu\text{M}/\text{g}$.

Example 2

This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH2 and derivatives thereof.

2.1 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2',5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-di (2-hydroxyethyl) azobenzene, (BH2 diol), 10

To a rapidly stirred suspension of 25 g (60 mmol) Fast Black K salt (Aldrich 20,151-0) in 400 mL of chilled water (ice bath) was added 50 g (276 mmol) N-phenyldiethanolamine dissolved in 400 mL methanol and 300 mL sat'd NaHCO_3 over 20 min. The mixture changed color from brown to deep blue during the course of the addition. The mixture was chilled for an additional 1 hr after addition, then filtered through a medium glass frit. The dark blue solid was washed with 300 mL of ice cold water and air dried for 3 days. The yield of 10 was 22 g, (74%). TLC rf 0.2 (Silica plate, 5% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2). MALDI M/e 493.13 (Calc'd 494.4). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , δ) 8.3 (d, 2H), 8.0(d, 2H), 7.85(d, 2H), 7.4(d, 2H), 6.7(m, 2H), 4.1(s, 3H), 3.9(t, 2H), 3.8(t, 2H), 3.7(t, 2H), 3.5(t, 3H).

2.2 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2',5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4' dimethoxytrityl) ethylazobenzene, (DMT-BH2), 11

A solution of 22 g (44 mmol) 10 in 400 mL of dry pyridine was stripped to dryness, and 7 g (21 mmol) of DMT-chloride was added in 300 mL of dry pyridine. The solution sat for 3 days at rt, then was stripped to a tar. The black residue was dissolved in 600 mL ethyl acetate, and washed with 300 mL of 1 N aqueous citric acid, followed by a 300 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 wash. The organic layer was dried over MgSO_4 and stripped to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 55 by 8 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 0.5% MeOH, 0.5% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2 . After 1 L of solvent eluted, a gradient to 2% MeOH was run over 4 L. Fractions containing pure 11 (0.4 rf, silica plate, 2% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 2.8 g (17% yield) of 11 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 794.2 (Calc'd 796.4). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , δ) 8.3 (d, 2H), 7.9(d, 2H), 7.75(d, 2H), 7.4-7.1(m, 9H), 6.7-6.5(m, 6H), 4.1(s, 3H), 3.95(s, 3H), 3.9-3.6 (m, 12H), 3.3 (t, 3H).

44

2.3 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2',5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-O—(N,N'-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxy-trityl)ethyl)-azobenzene, (DMT-BH2 amidite), 12

5 A solution of 2.8 g (3.5 mmol) 11 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 1.5 g (5 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 60 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to 10 the flask containing the dried 11. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 200 mL of EtOAc . The organic layer was washed with 100 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 and dried over MgSO_4 . The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 25 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted with a mobile phase of 75% Pet. ether, 23% EtOAc , 2% pyridine. Fractions containing pure 12 (0.71 rf, pre-run silica plate, 50% Pet. ether, 48% EtOAc , 2% pyridine) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 1 g (20% yield) of 11 15 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 996.06 (Calc'd 996.4).

2.4 Synthesis of BH2-CPG, 13

10 5 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500 Å, Biosearch part # BG5-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 , followed by one 50 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 1 g of 12. 25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 1 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 50 mL of acetonitrile, then 50 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were 30 added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac_2O , 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 . The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 30 $\mu\text{M}/\text{g}$.

Example 3

45 This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH3 and derivatives thereof.

3.1 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4"-N,N-di(2-hydroxyethyl) azobenzene) chloride, (BH3 diol), 14

55 3-amino-7-(diethylamino)-5-phenylphenazium chloride (methylene violet 3RAX, Aldrich 30,750-5), 10 g (26 mmol) was stirred in 200 mL 1 N HCl while in an ice bath. A solution of 2 g NaNO_2 in 20 mL of cold water was added dropwise over 20 min. The solution was stirred for 30 min. N-phenyldiethanolamine, 4.7 g (27 mmol), was dissolved in 100 mL of methanol and added to the methylene violet solution, after the pH was adjusted to 6 with NaOH solution. 60 The solution changed color from violet to dark green. The solution was stirred for 1 hr, then extracted three times with 200 mL of CH_2Cl_2 . The aqueous layer was evaporated, and the dark green solid was triturated with 3 200 mL portions of pyridine. The pyridine was evaporated to give 2.9 g (21% yield) of 14 as a dark green solid. (0.85 rf, silica plate, 15% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) MALDI M/e 535.6 (calc'd 535.75).

US 7,109,312 B2

45

3.2 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxytrityl)ethyl)azobenzene chloride, (DMT-BH3), 15

Compound 14, 2.9 g (5.4 mmol) was dried by stripping with 100 mL dry pyridine, and then re-dissolved in 100 mL dry pyridine along with 2 g (5.9 mmol) of DMT chloride. The mixture sat overnight, and the solvent was stripped. The residue was re-dissolved in 200 mL CH_2Cl_2 and washed with 200 mL 1 M aqueous citric acid. The aqueous layer was backwashed with two 200 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 , and the combined organic layers were evaporated to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 20 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 2% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2 . A gradient to 6% MeOH was run over 3 L. Fractions containing pure 15 (0.9 rf, silica plate, 15% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 0.5 g (11% yield) of 15 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 837.6 (calc'd 836.75)

3.3 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-(2-O—(N,N'-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxy-trityl)ethyl)azobenzene chloride, (DMT-BH3 amidite), 16

A solution of 0.5 g (0.6 mmol) 15 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 0.5 g (1.7 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 20 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 15. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 100 mL of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with 50 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 and dried over MgSO_4 . The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 15 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 1% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2 . A gradient to 6% MeOH was run over 2 L. Fractions containing pure 16 (0.82 rf, pre-run silica plate, 5% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 0.26 g (42% yield) of 16 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 1037.3 (Calc'd 1036.75).

Synthesis of BH3-CPG, 17

2 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500 Å, Biosearch part # BG5-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 20 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 , followed by one 20 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 0.26 g of 16. 25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 0.5 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 10 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 20 mL of acetonitrile, then 20 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 20 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac_2O , 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 20 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 20 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 . The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 12 $\mu\text{M}/\text{g}$.

46

Example 4

This Example sets forth the preparation and characterization of nucleic acid analogues of exemplary BHQs of the invention. The nucleic acid-BHQ conjugates are compared to a similar conjugate of DABCYL.

The efficiency of donor-acceptor energy transfer (FRET) is inversely proportional to the sixth power of the distance between the donor and acceptor molecules (Stryer, L. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 1978, 47, 819–846). This property can be utilized to monitor hybridization of nucleic acids labeled at one end with a donor fluorophore (reporter) and at the opposite end with an acceptor (quencher) (Parkhurst et al., *Biochemistry* 1995, 34, 285–292). In the absence of a complementary target sequence the dual labeled probe is very flexible and undergoes rapid conformational changes so that the average distance between the donor (D) and acceptor (A) is close enough for efficient FRET to occur. Upon hybridization to complementary target, a rigid DNA duplex is formed separating the D-A pair and reducing the efficiency of transfer. This manifests itself in an increase in the fluorescence intensity of the reporter.

4.1 Synthesis and Characterization of BHQ Probes

To evaluate the efficiency of the Black Hole Quencher dyes (BHQs), the ability of these dyes to quench a series of common fluorophores was compared to the standard quencher dyes DABCYL and TAMRA in a complementation assay. As TAMRA exhibits its own native fluorescence, it can only be used to quench lower wavelength dyes and thus was only used to quench FAM in this assay.

4.1a Materials and Methods

Nucleic acids were synthesized on a Biosearch 8700 automated DNA synthesizer using standard phosphoramidite chemistry. A^{BZ}, C^{AC}, T, and G^{DMF} phosphoramidites were supplied by Chruachem. TAMRA, DABCYL, and BHQ controlled pore glass (CPG) supports from Biosearch Technologies were used for attachment of quencher dyes to the 3' terminus of nucleic acids. 5' fluorophore labeling was accomplished using fluorophore phosphoramidites with the exception of Cy5 which was added as a succinimidyl ester to 5' amino nucleic acids using the manufacturers' protocol. 6-FAM and TFA-aminoethyl amidite were from Biosearch. Cy3 phosphoramidite and Cy5 succinimidyl ester were from Amersham Pharmacia Biotech. Cleavage and deprotection of oligos was carried out in ammonia at 60° C. for 3 hrs, with the exception of 3' TAMRA oligos which were deprotected in 1:3 t-butylamine:H₂O for 8 hours at 60° C., and 3' BHQ oligos which were deprotected for 1 hour at 60° C. in ammonia. Following deprotection, dual labeled probes were evaporated to dryness then resuspended in HPLC grade water and filtered through 0.45 μm filters to prepare for HPLC purification. A two step method of HPLC purification of anion exchange followed by reverse phase HPLC was used to purify all dual labeled probes. Purified probes were analyzed by both anion exchange and reverse phase HPLC. Complementary nucleic acid was purified on a Biosearch Micropure II reverse phase cartridge using the standard protocol.

All fluorescence measurements were taken using a Spectramax Gemini fluorescent microplate reader. Probes were dissolved at 200 nM in a buffer composed of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 50 mM KCl, and 3.5 mM MgCl₂, pH 8.3, both in the presence and absence of a five fold excess of perfectly complimentary nucleic acid. Fluorescein was excited at 470 nm and emission was read at 530 nm with a 515 nm cutoff filter in place. Cy3 was excited at 510 nm and read at 567

US 7,109,312 B2

47

nm with a 550 nm cutoff filter. Cy5 was excited at 630 nm and read at 660 nm with a 630 nm cutoff filter. Average fluorescent intensity from a set of eight buffer blanks was subtracted from all probe fluorescence measurements before calculation of signal to noise ratios.

The set of nucleic acids displayed in Table 2 was synthesized and rigorously purified by HPLC:

TABLE 2

<u>Dual labeled probes prepared for hybridization assay.</u>			
Reporter	em max (5')	Sequence (5' to 3')	Quencher (3')
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TAMRA TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC DABCYL TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH1 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
FAM	518	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH2 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
Cy3	573	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC DABCYL TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
Cy3	573	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH1 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
Cy3	573	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH2 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
Cy5	678	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC DABCYL TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	
Cy5	678	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH2 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	

48**TABLE 2-continued**

<u>Dual labeled probes prepared for hybridization assay.</u>			
Reporter	em max (5')	Sequence (5' to 3')	Quencher (3')
Cy5	678	ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH3 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.: 1)	

The signal to noise ratio (S:N) of hybridization for each probe was measured in the presence of a five fold molar excess of perfectly complementary nucleic acid. All hybridization assays were performed in a buffer composed of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 50 mM KCl, and 3.5 mM MgCl₂, pH 8.3. S:N was calculated by dividing the fluorescence intensity of the probe in the presence of complement by the fluorescence intensity of the probe alone after subtracting out the fluorescence intensity of the buffer blank from each. All fluorescence measurements were taken in triplicate using a Spectramax Gemini fluorescent plate reader.

4.2 Results

Improved quenching by the BHQs was demonstrated for three widely separated fluorophores. A two fold increase in signal to noise ratio is achieved by replacing DABCYL with BH1 for the fluorescein probe. S:N increases are more striking for the cyanine dye labeled probes, with approximately a ten fold increase in S:N observed for the BH2 quenched Cy3 probe and a thirty fold S:N increase for the BH3 quenched Cy5 probe over identical structures quenched with DABCYL. This is consistant with the theory that efficiency of FRET is proportional to the magnitude of overlap between the donor and acceptor (Haugland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 1969, 63, 23–30). DABCYL, which absorbs maximally at 474 nm, quenches the red shifted reporter dyes with decreasing efficiency, whereas the BHQs can be chosen accordingly to have maximum spectral overlap with the reporter of interest.

Data from the hybridization assay is presented in Table 3.

TABLE 3

donor/acceptor	Signal to noise ratios of dual labeled FRET probes									
	Noise			Signal			Average	Average	S:N	
	measurement no.	#1	#2	#3	#1	#2	#3	Noise	Signal	S:N
FAMTAM		89.18	91.50	89.54	279.13	277.08	272.78	90.08	276.33	3.07
FAMDAB		89.97	81.03	86.74	348.98	323.82	352.00	85.92	341.61	3.98
FAMBH1		39.24	37.05	38.85	296.53	316.24	311.15	38.38	307.97	8.02
FAMBH2		67.12	66.64	56.79	445.48	415.78	442.75	63.52	434.34	6.84
Cy3DAB		19.66	19.65	19.39	147.70	139.83	154.35	19.57	147.29	7.53
Cy3BH1		1.86	2.09	2.41	140.72	135.20	135.25	2.12	137.06	64.51
Cy3BH2		2.02	1.94	2.08	149.65	148.89	150.40	2.02	149.65	74.15
Cy5/DAB		57.09	59.15	50.50	157.36	176.04	216.59	55.58	183.33	3.30
Cy5/BH2		19.92	21.47	22.53	263.64	288.20	256.07	21.31	269.31	12.64
Cy5/BH3		1.65	2.17	1.55	197.96	210.71	208.06	1.79	205.58	114.79

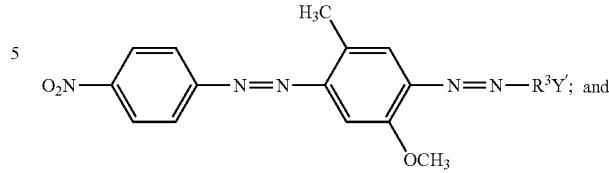
US 7,109,312 B2

49

It is understood that the examples and embodiments described herein are for illustrative purposes only and that various modifications or changes in light thereof will be suggested to persons skilled in the art and are to be included within the spirit and purview of this application and are considered within the scope of the appended claims. All publications, patents, and patent applications cited herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

50

4. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 3, having a formula which is a member selected from:



SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 1

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 25
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: probe synthetic

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

atgccttccc ccatgccatc ctgcg

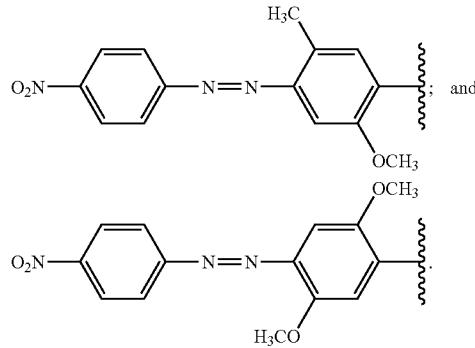
25

What is claimed is:

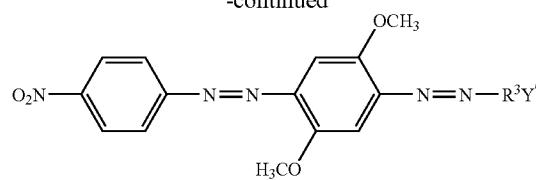
1. A quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising a first radical, a second radical and a third radical, wherein said first radical, said second radical and said third radical are each independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and combinations thereof, wherein said first radical is covalently attached to said second radical through an azo bond and said second radical is covalently attached to said third radical through an azo bond, wherein at least one of said first radical, said second radical and said third radical is aryl substituted with an alkoxy moiety, wherein said quencher is bound to a solid support through a linking group wherein said solid support is a member selected from a resin, glass, and a functionalized membrane.

2. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 1, wherein said linking group is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted C₆-C₃₀ alkyl groups, polyols, polyethers, polyamines, polyamino acids, polysaccharides and combinations thereof.

3. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 1, in which said first radical attached to said second radical through said azo bond forms a moiety having a formula which is a member selected from:



-continued



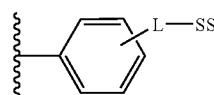
in which

R³ is a member selected from substituted and unsubstituted aryl, substituted and unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted and unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl; and

Y' is a linking group, said linking group covalently binding R³ to said solid support.

5. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 4, wherein R³ is substituted aryl.

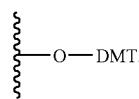
6. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 4 wherein R³Y' has the formula:



55 wherein

L is said linking group; and
SS is said solid support.

7. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 4, wherein said linking group comprises the moiety:



US 7,109,312 B2

51

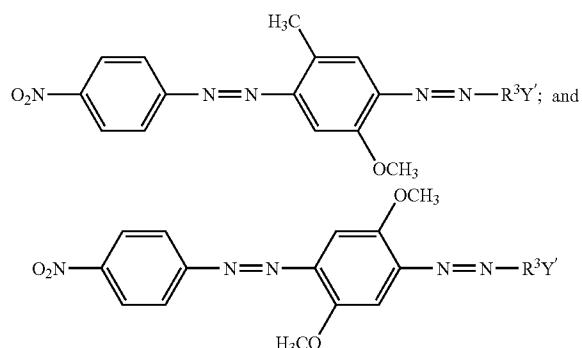
8. The quencher according to claim 1, wherein said solid support is a resin, and said resin is a peptide synthesis resin.

9. The quencher according to claim 8, wherein said peptide synthesis resin is a member selected from alkoxybenzyl alcohol resin, aminomethyl resin, aminopolystyrene resin, and benzhydrylamine resin.

10. The quencher according to claim 1, wherein said solid support is a glass, and said glass is controlled pore glass.

11. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 1, further comprising a nucleic acid covalently attached to said quencher.

12. A quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising a first radical, a second radical and a third radical, R³, said quencher having a formula which is a member selected from:

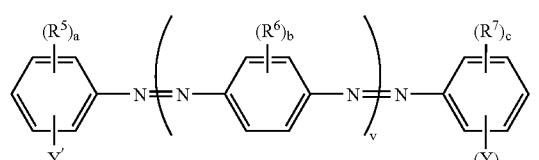


wherein

R³ is an aryl moiety substituted with an alkoxy group; and Y' is a member selected from a solid support, and a linker group covalently binding R³ to said solid support

wherein
said solid support is a member selected from a resin, glass, and a functionalized membrane.

13. A quencher of excited state energy having the formula:



wherein

R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R", substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy;

R' and R" are members independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl;

Y is a reactive functional group;

Y' is a member selected from a solid support, and a linker group covalently binding said quencher to said solid support

wherein
said solid support is a member selected from a resin, glass, and a functionalized membrane;

n is 0 or 1;

a is an integer from 0 to 4, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different;

52

b is an integer from 0 to 4, such that when (v×b) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different;

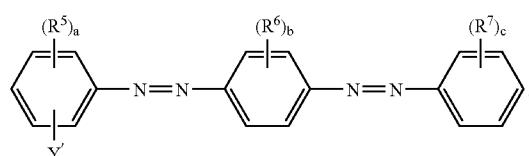
c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different;

v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the b phenyl rings is the same or different.

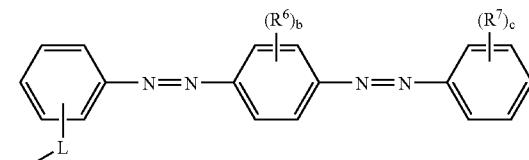
14. The quencher according to claim 13, wherein R⁶ and R⁷ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl and substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkoxy.

15. The quencher according to claim 13, wherein R⁶ and R⁷ are substituted or unsubstituted C₁—C₆ alkyl.

16. The quencher according to claim 13, having the formula:



17. The quencher according to claim 16, having the formula:

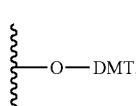


wherein

L is said linker group; and

SS is said solid support.

18. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 13, wherein said linker group comprises the moiety:



19. A quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising a first radical, a second radical and a third radical, wherein said first radical, said second radical and said third radical are each independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and combinations thereof, wherein said first radical is covalently attached to said second radical through an azo bond and said second radical is covalently attached to said third radical through an azo bond, wherein at least one of said first radical, said second radical and said third radical is aryl substituted with an alkoxy moiety, and wherein said quencher is bound to a solid support which is a member selected from a resin, glass, and a functionalized membrane.

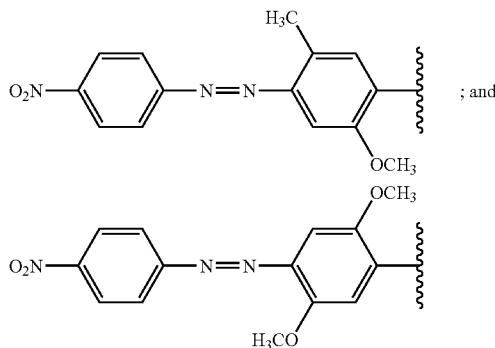
20. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim 19, wherein said quencher is attached to said solid support through a linking group.

US 7,109,312 B2

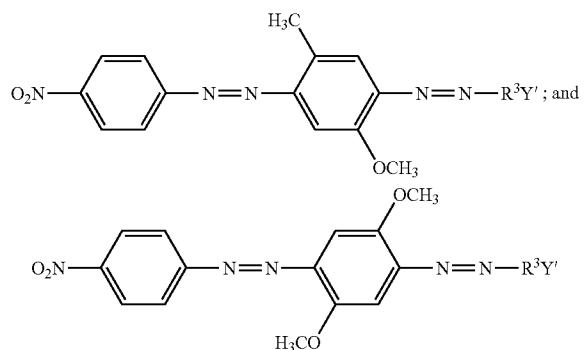
53

21. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim **20**, wherein said linking group is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted C₆–C₃₀ alkyl groups, polyols, polyethers, polyamines, polyamino acids, polysaccharides and combinations thereof.

22. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim **19**, in which said first radical attached to said second radical through said azo bond forms a moiety having a formula which is a member selected from:



23. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim **22**, having a formula which is a member selected from:

**54**

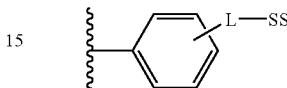
in which

R³ is a member selected from substituted and unsubstituted aryl, substituted and unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted and unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl; and

5 Y is a member selected from said solid support and said linking group, said linking group covalently binding R³ to said solid support.

24. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim **23**, wherein R³ is substituted aryl.

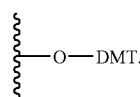
10 **25.** The quencher of excited state energy according to claim **23** wherein R³Y' has the formula:



wherein

20 L is said linking group; and
SS is said solid support.

26. The quencher of excited state energy according to claim **23**, wherein said linking group comprises the moiety:



27. The quencher according to claim **19**, wherein said solid support is a resin, and said resin is a peptide synthesis resin.

35 **28.** The quencher according to claim **27**, wherein said peptide synthesis resin is a member selected from alkoxybenzyl alcohol resin, aminomethyl resin, aminopolystyrene resin, and benzhydrylamine resin.

40 **29.** The quencher according to claim **19**, wherein said solid support is a glass, and said glass is controlled pore glass.

30 **30.** The quencher of excited state energy according to claim **19**, further comprising a nucleic acid covalently attached to said quencher.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT E



US007582432B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Cook et al.

(10) **Patent No.:** US 7,582,432 B2
(45) **Date of Patent:** Sep. 1, 2009

(54) **DARK QUENCHERS FOR DONOR-ACCEPTOR ENERGY TRANSFER**(75) Inventors: **Ronald M. Cook**, Novato, CA (US);
Matt Lytle, Fairfax, CA (US); **Daren Dick**, San Rafael, CA (US)(73) Assignee: **Bioscience Technologies, Inc.**, Novato, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 173 days.

(21) Appl. No.: 11/437,991

(22) Filed: May 19, 2006

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2007/0154898 A1 Jul. 5, 2007

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Division of application No. 11/192,705, filed on Jul. 29, 2005, now Pat. No. 7,109,312, which is a continuation of application No. 09/567,863, filed on May 9, 2000, now Pat. No. 7,019,129.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

C12Q 1/68 (2006.01)
C12P 19/34 (2006.01)
C07H 21/00 (2006.01)
C07H 21/02 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** 435/6; 435/91.1; 435/91.2;
435/7.1; 435/7.2; 536/23.1; 536/26.1(58) **Field of Classification Search** 435/6;
435/91.1, 91.2, 7.1, 7.2; 536/23.1, 26.6
See application file for complete search history.(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,523,936 A 8/1970 Toji
4,482,490 A 11/1984 Imahori et al.

4,687,728 A	8/1987	Folkard et al.
5,312,738 A	5/1994	Hamill et al.
5,401,847 A	3/1995	Glazer et al.
5,612,221 A	3/1997	Simons et al.
6,037,130 A	3/2000	Tyagi et al.
6,790,945 B2	9/2004	Lukhtanov et al.

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 008 029	2/1980
EP	0 009 191	4/1980
EP	0 601 889 A2	6/1994

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Bumelis, et al., *Database CA 'Online!'*, Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 85:125772 XP002243719 (Abstract only) (1974).

(Continued)

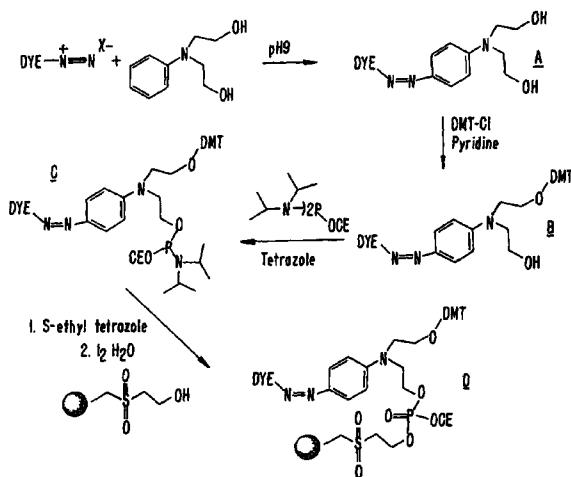
Primary Examiner—Jezia Riley

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Morgan, Lewis and Bockius, LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention provides a family of dark quenchers, termed Black Hole Quenchers (“BHQS”), that are efficient quenchers of excited state energy but which are themselves substantially non-fluorescent. Also provided are methods of using the BHQS, probes incorporating the BHQS and methods of using the probes.

24 Claims, 9 Drawing Sheets



US 7,582,432 B2

Page 2

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 909 823	4/1999
EP	0 876 430 B1	8/2001
FR	1544951	11/1968
FR	2243438	9/1974
JP	5-142600	6/1993
JP	6-258676	9/1994
WO	WO 90/03446	4/1990
WO	WO 95/02848	1/1995
WO	WO 98/10096	3/1998
WO	WO 99/64431	12/1999
WO	WO 00 05411	2/2000
WO	WO 01/42505 A	6/2001
WO	WO 03/019145 A	3/2003

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Gonzalez-Gomez, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 98:209380 XP002243718 (Abstract only) (1983).
- Jerzy, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 110:136859 XP002243716 (Abstract only) (1988).
- Juarranz, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 105:38550 XP002243717 (Abstract only) (1986).
- Kazimierz, *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 131:287725 XP002243715 (Abstract only) (1999).
- Riccardo, et al., *Database CA 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus Ohio, U.S.; Database accession No. 122:215261 XP002243714 (Abstract only) (1995).
- Tyagi, et al. "Molecular beacons: Probes that fluoresce upon hybridization," *Nature Biochemistry*, 14: 303-308 (Mar. 1996).
- Chou, et al., "Use of Dark-Quenched Fret Probes Real Time PCT," *American Biotechnology Laboratory*, 19(8):34; XP009012130 (Aug. 2001).

Ediss, et al., *International Journal of Applied Radiation and Isotopes*, 33(4):296-297 (1982).

Juarranz, et al., "Prediction of in situ Fluorescence of Histochemical Reagents Using a Structure-Staining Correlation Procedure," *Histochemistry*, 84(4-6):426-431 (Jun. 1986).

Marras, et al., "Efficiencies of Fluorescence Resonance Energy Transfer and Contact-Mediated Quenching in Oligonucleotide Probes," *Nucleic Acids. Res.*, 30(21):1-8 (2002).

Marshall, et al., "The Composition of Stains Produced by the Oxidation of Methylene Blue," *Histochemical Journal*, 8:431-442 (1976).

Marshall, et al., "A Technique for Distinguishing Between Methylene Violet and Methylene Violet Berthsen," *Stain Technology*, 50(1): 51-53 (Jan. 1975).

Medina, et al., "Thin-Layer Chromatographic Detection of Zeranol and Estradiol in Fortified Plasma and Tissue Extracts with Fast Corinth V," *J. Chrom. Biomedical Applications*, 581(1):119-128 (Oct. 2, 1992).

Medina, et al., "Improved Thin-Layer Chromatographic Detection of Diethylstilbestrol and Zeranol in Plasma and Tissues Isolated with Alumina and Ion-Exchange Membrane Columns in Tandem," *J. Chrom.*, 614:315-323 (Jan. 21, 1993).

Moreira, et al., "Effects of Fluorescent Dyes, Quenchers, and Dangling Ends of DNA Duplex Stability," *Biochem Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 327:473-484 (Feb. 25, 2005) published on-line Dec. 15, 2004.

Pelander, et al., "Preparation of N-Demethylated Drug Metabolites for Analytical Purposes Using 1-Chloroethyl Chloroformate," *Forensic Science International*, 85:193-198 (1997).

Pelander, et al., "Screening for Cyanobacterial Toxins in Bloom and Strain Samples by Thin Layer Chromatography," *Water Research*, 30(6):1464-1470 (1996).

Sahlin, et al., "Differentiation Between Attached and Ingested Immune Complexes by a Fluorescence Quenching Cytofluorometric Assay," *J. Immun. Methods*, 60:115-124 (1983).

Xie, et al., "Synthesis and Non-Linear Optical Properties of Four Polyurethane Containing Different Chromophore Groups," *European Polymer Journal*, 37:497-505 (2001) and *Chemical Abstracts Service*, XP002243721; STN Database Accession No. 134:296174.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 1 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

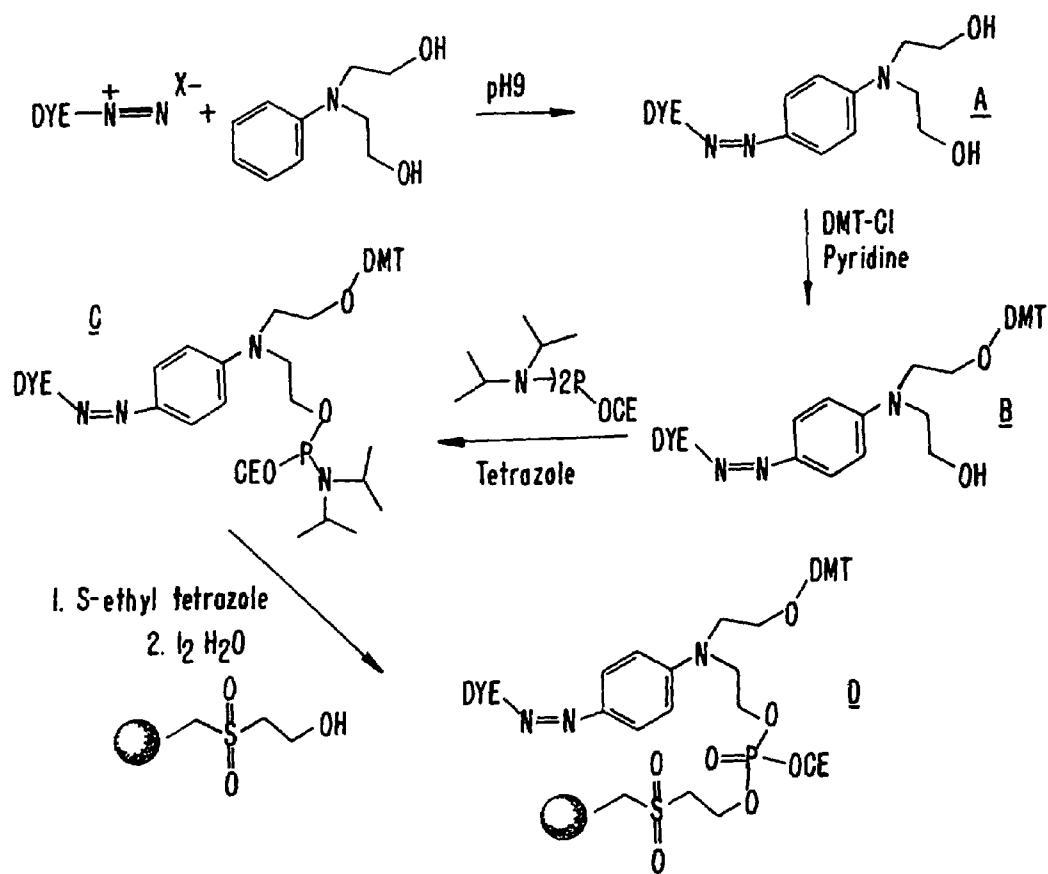


FIG. 1.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 2 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

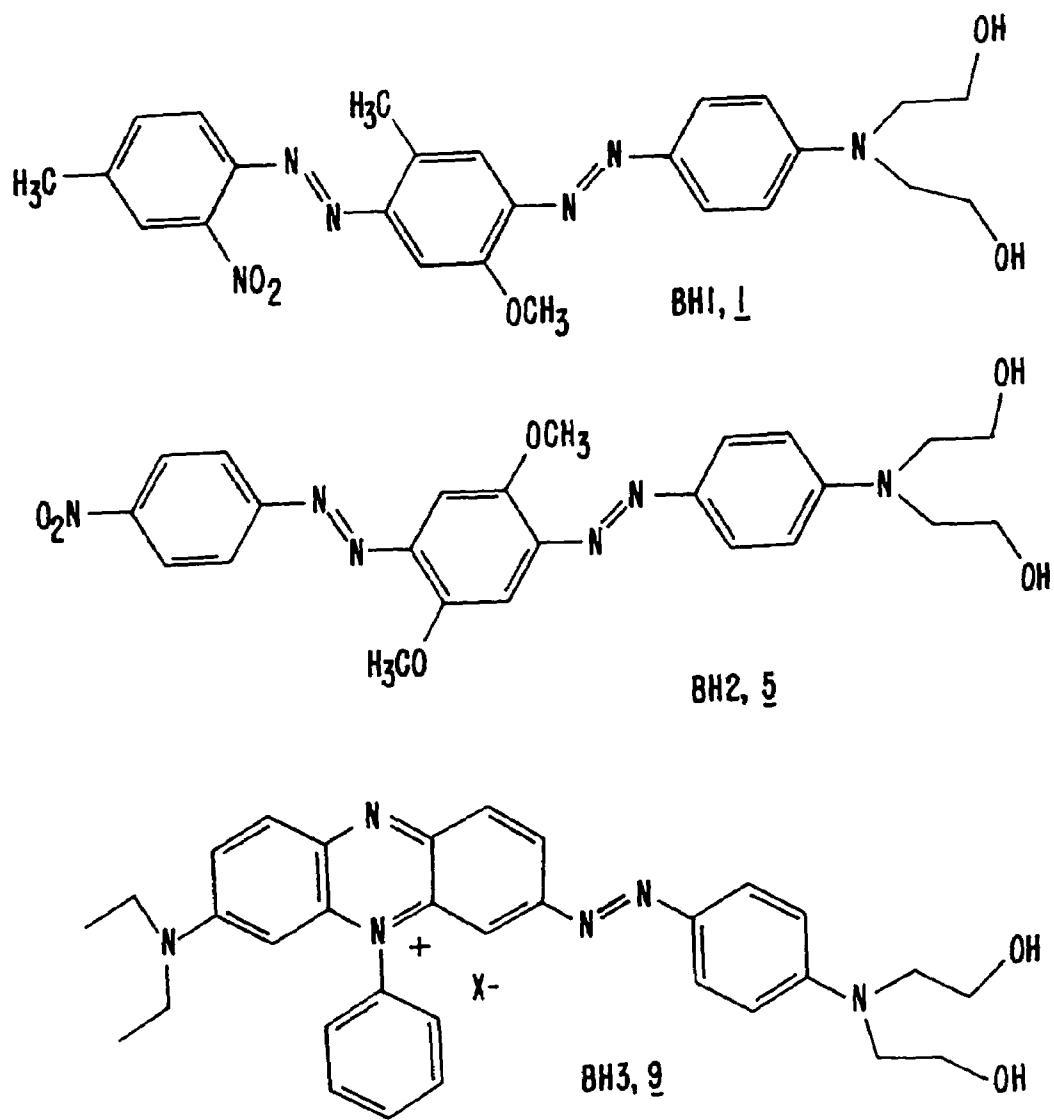


FIG. 2.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 3 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

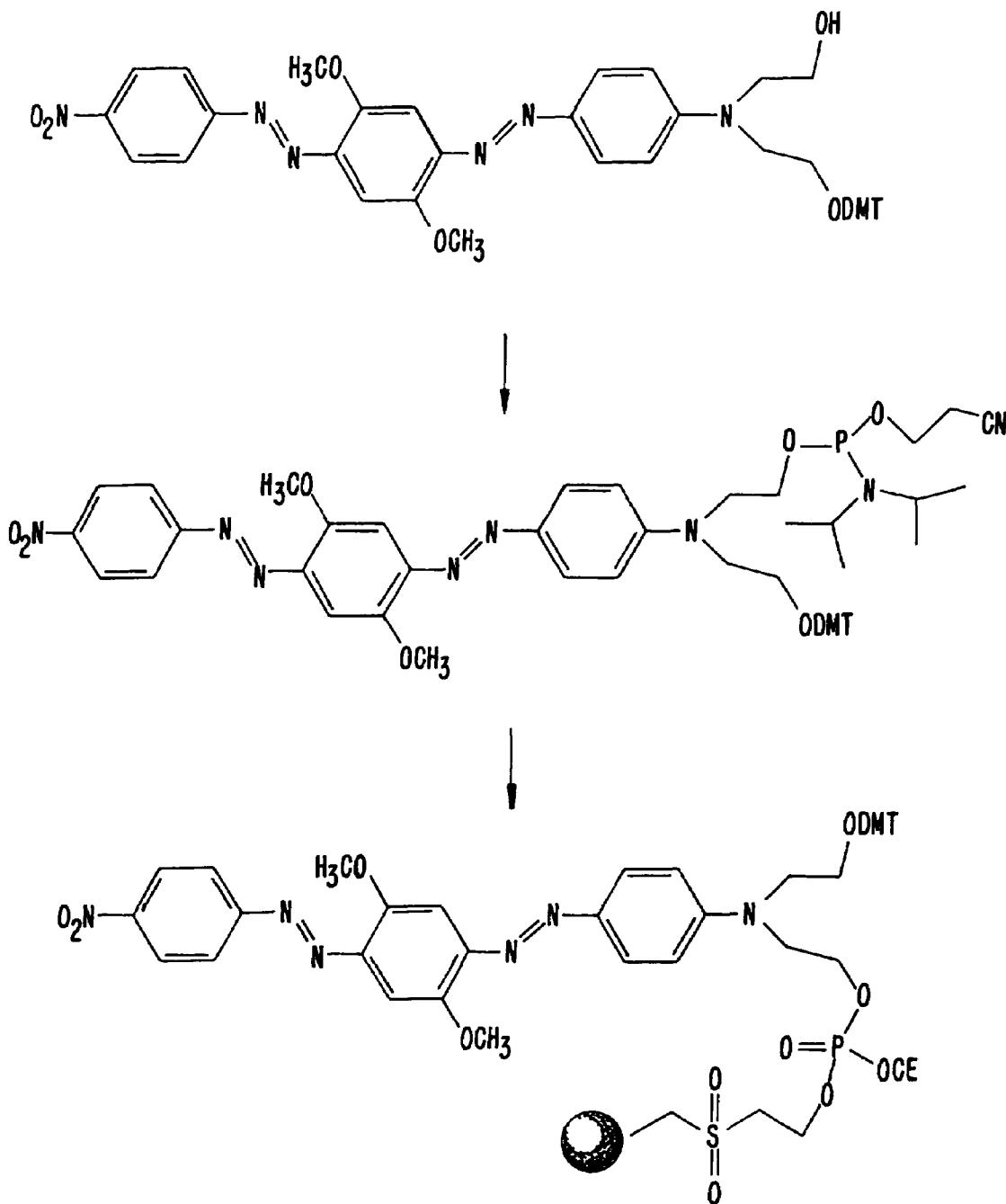


FIG. 3.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 4 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

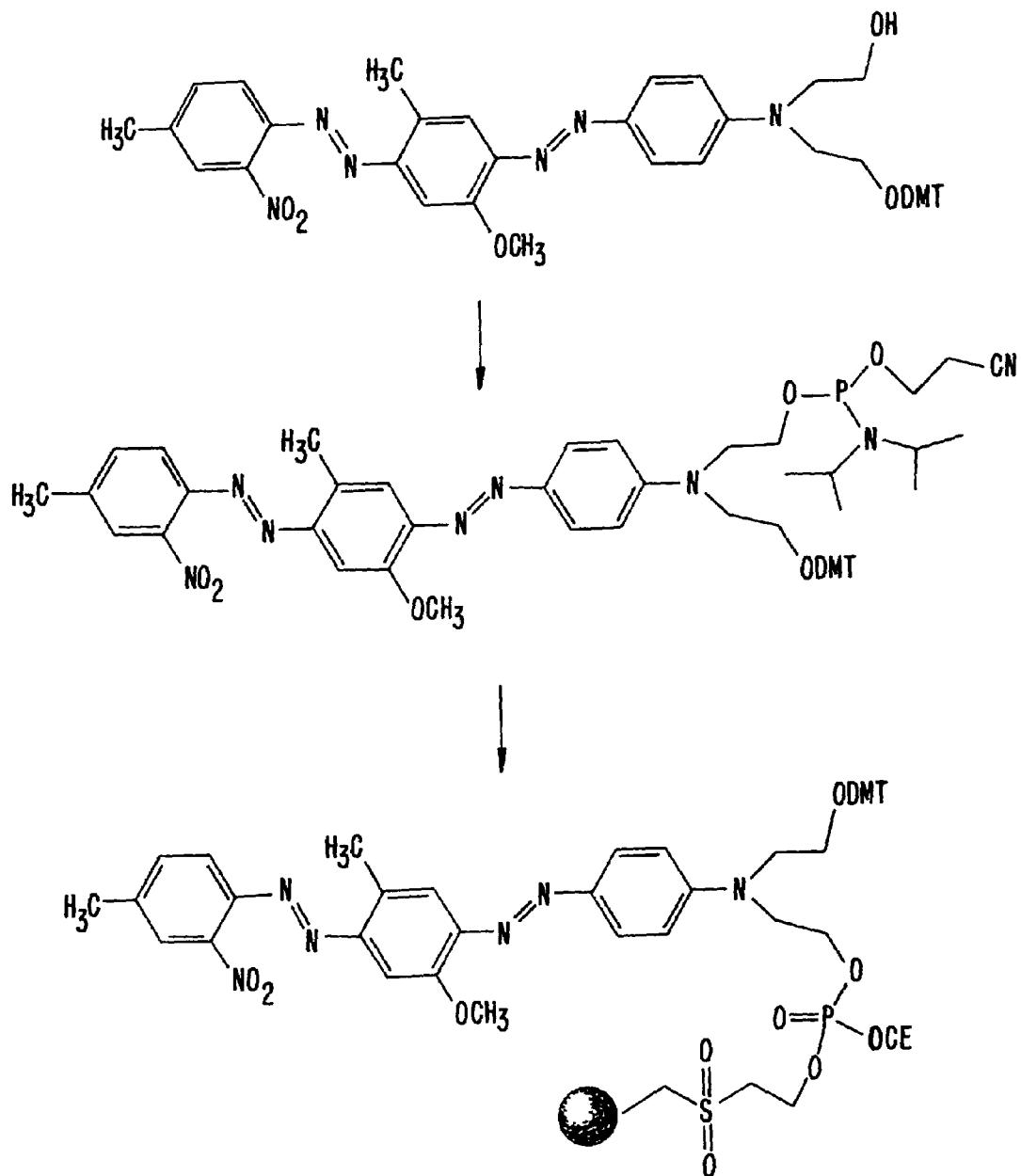


FIG. 4.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 5 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

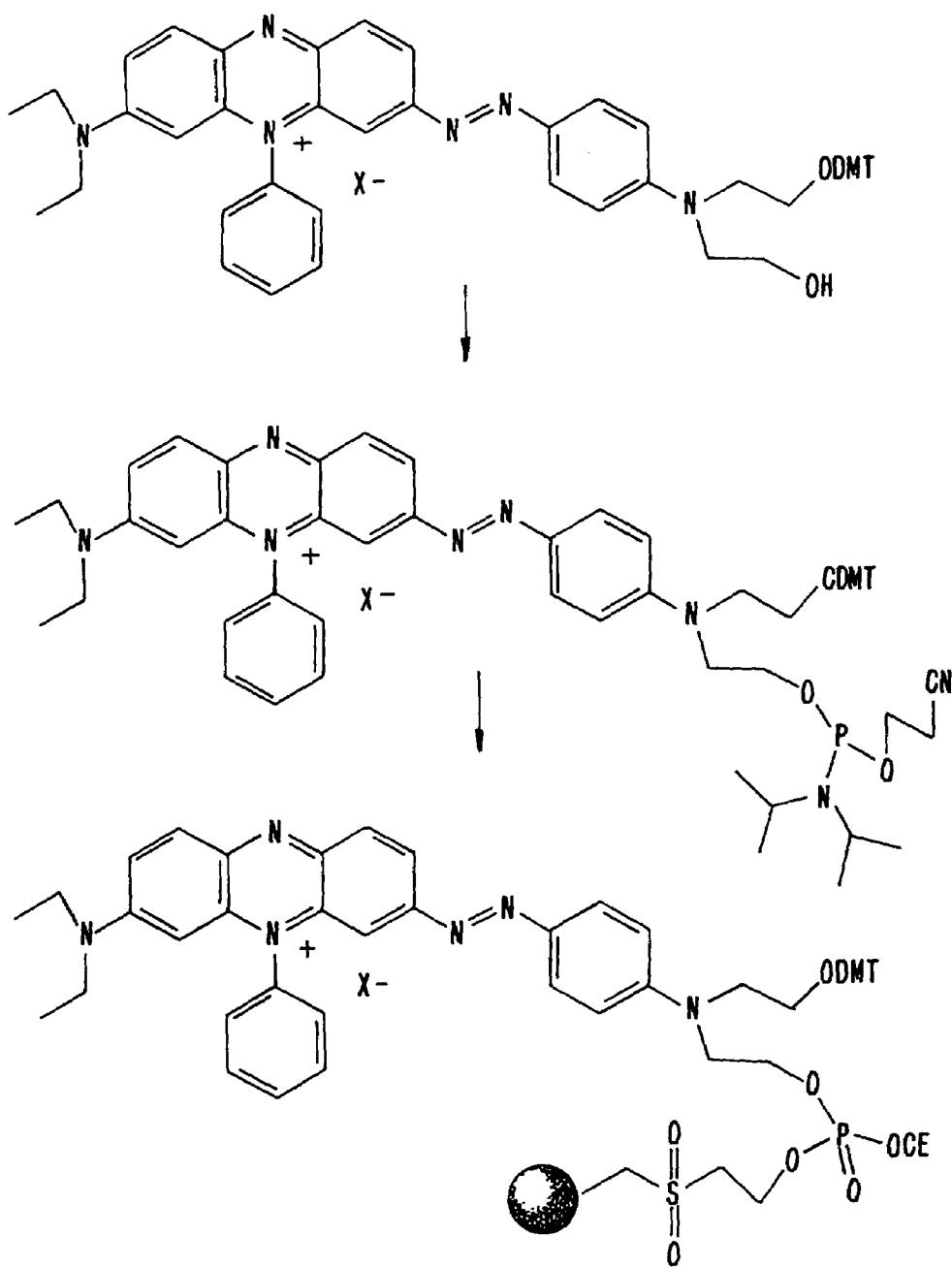


FIG. 5.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 6 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

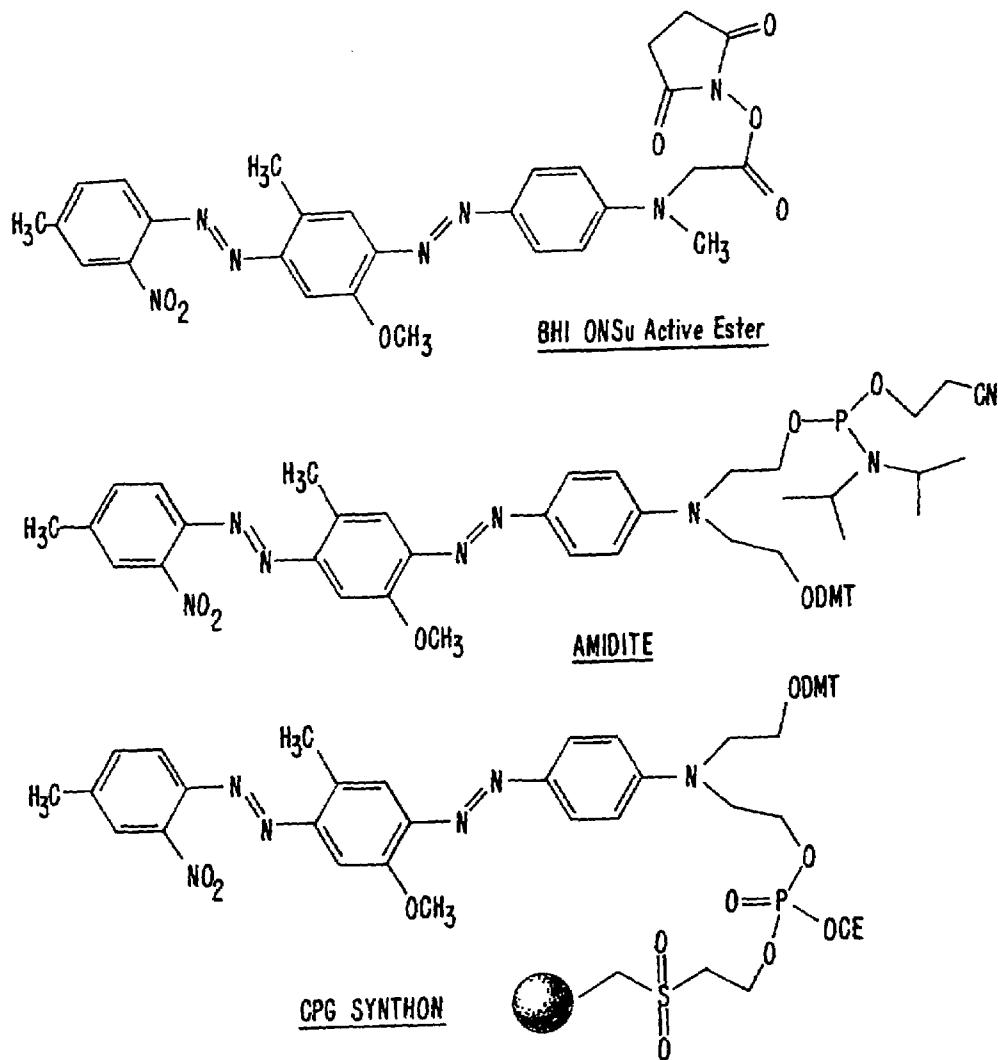


FIG. 6.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 7 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

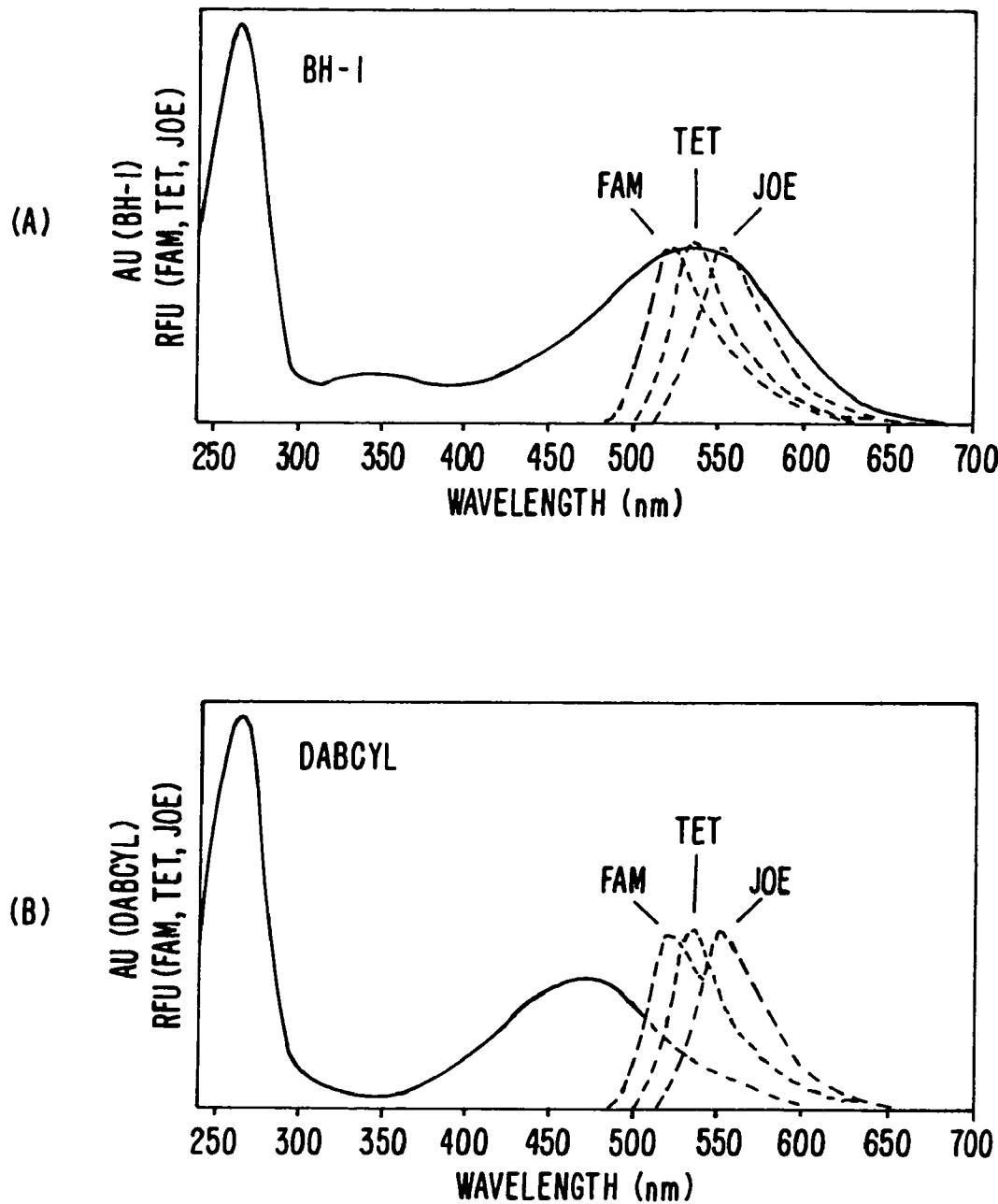


FIG. 7.

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 8 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

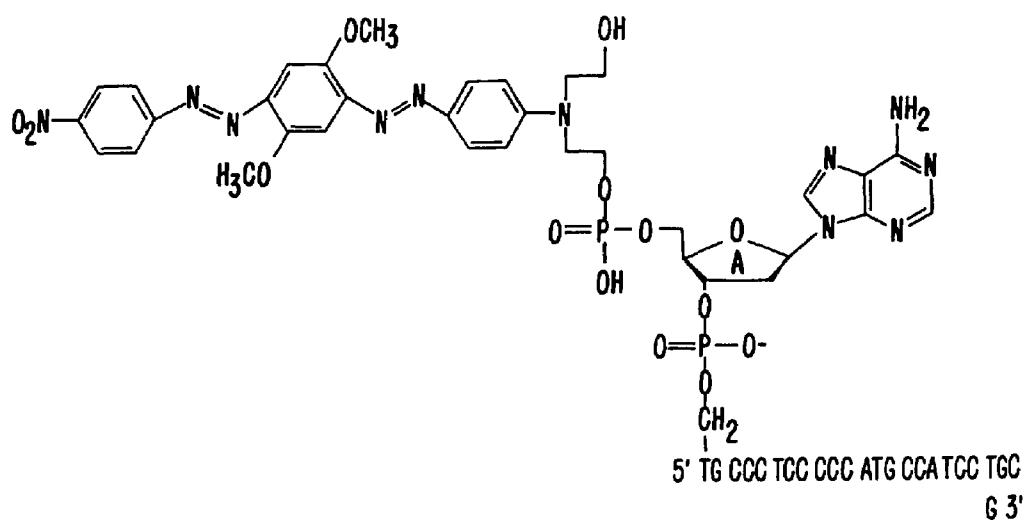
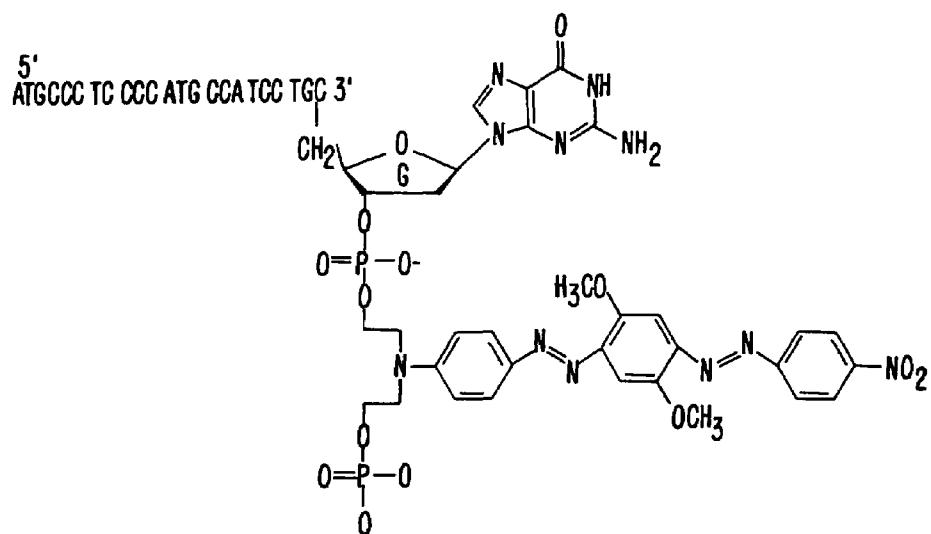


FIG. 8.A

U.S. Patent

Sep. 1, 2009

Sheet 9 of 9

US 7,582,432 B2

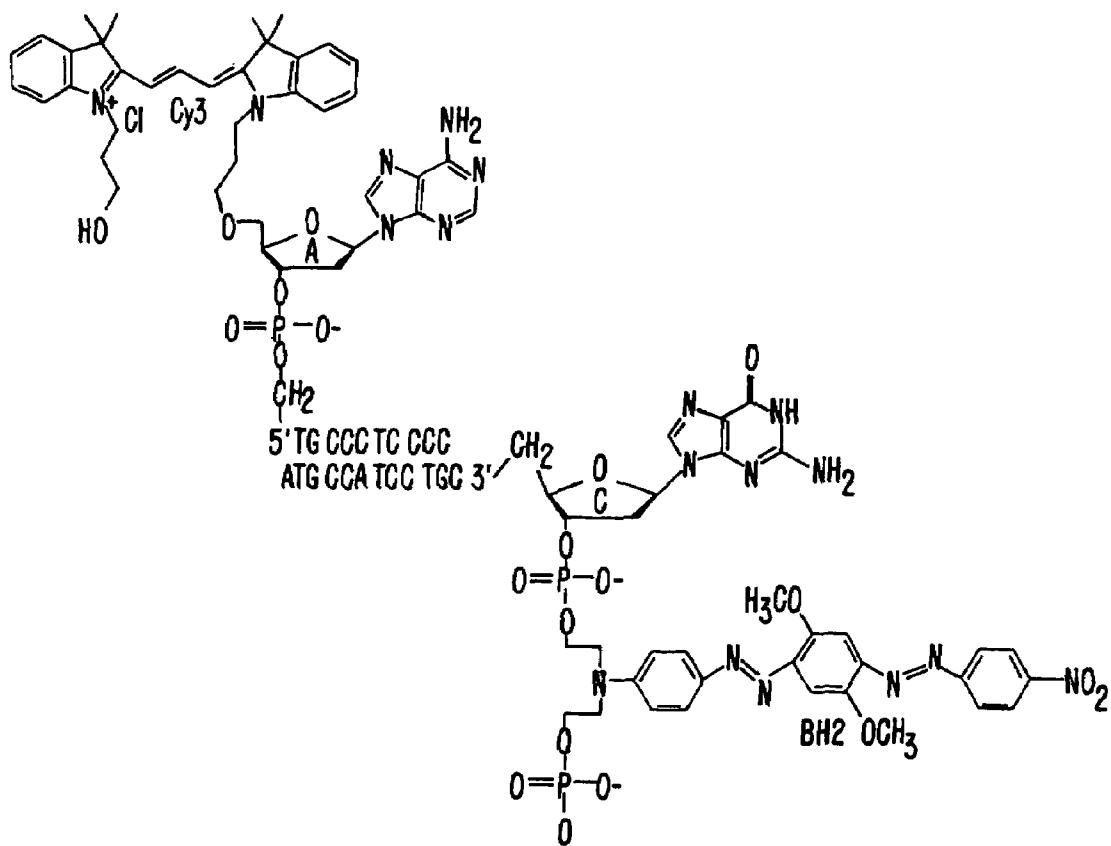


FIG. 8.B

US 7,582,432 B2

1

**DARK QUENCHERS FOR
DONOR-ACCEPTOR ENERGY TRANSFER**

**CROSS-REFERENCES TO RELATED
APPLICATIONS**

The present application is a divisional application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 11/192,705 filed Jul. 29, 2005, now U.S. Pat. No. 7,109,312, issued Sep. 19, 2006, which application is a continuation of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/567,863 filed May 9, 2000, now U.S. Pat. No. 7,019,129, issued Mar. 28, 2006, each of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

STATEMENT OF GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

This invention was made with government support under Grant Nos. IR43GM60848-01 and 2R44GM60848-02 awarded by the National Institutes of Health. The government has certain rights in the invention.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

There is a continuous and expanding need for rapid, highly specific methods of detecting and quantifying chemical, biochemical and biological substances as analytes in research and diagnostic mixtures. Of particular value are methods for measuring small quantities of nucleic acids, peptides, pharmaceuticals, metabolites, microorganisms and other materials of diagnostic value. Examples of such materials include narcotics and poisons, drugs administered for therapeutic purposes, hormones, pathogenic microorganisms and viruses, antibodies, and enzymes and nucleic acids, particularly those implicated in disease states.

The presence of a particular analyte can often be determined by binding methods that exploit the high degree of specificity, which characterizes many biochemical and biological systems. Frequently used methods are based on, for example, antigen-antibody systems, nucleic acid hybridization techniques, and protein-ligand systems. In these methods, the existence of a complex of diagnostic value is typically indicated by the presence or absence of an observable "label" which has been attached to one or more of the interacting materials. The specific labeling method chosen often dictates the usefulness and versatility of a particular system for detecting an analyte of interest. Preferred labels are inexpensive, safe, and capable of being attached efficiently to a wide variety of chemical, biochemical, and biological materials without significantly altering the important binding characteristics of those materials. The label should give a highly characteristic signal, and should be rarely, and preferably never, found in nature. The label should be stable and detectable in aqueous systems over periods of time ranging up to months. Detection of the label is preferably rapid, sensitive, and reproducible without the need for expensive, specialized facilities or the need for special precautions to protect personnel. Quantification of the label is preferably relatively independent of variables such as temperature and the composition of the mixture to be assayed.

A wide variety of labels have been developed, each with particular advantages and disadvantages. For example, radioactive labels are quite versatile, and can be detected at very low concentrations, such labels are, however, expensive, hazardous, and their use requires sophisticated equipment and trained personnel. Thus, there is wide interest in non-radioactive labels, particularly in labels that are observable by

2

spectrophotometric, spin resonance, and luminescence techniques, and reactive materials, such as enzymes that produce such molecules.

Labels that are detectable using fluorescence spectroscopy are of particular interest, because of the large number of such labels that are known in the art. Moreover, the literature is replete with syntheses of fluorescent labels that are derivatized to allow their facile attachment to other molecules, and many such fluorescent labels are commercially available.

In addition to being directly detected, many fluorescent labels operate to quench the fluorescence of an adjacent second fluorescent label. Because of its dependence on the distance and the magnitude of the interaction between the quencher and the fluorophore, the quenching of a fluorescent species provides a sensitive probe of molecular conformation and binding, or other, interactions. An excellent example of the use of fluorescent reporter quencher pairs is found in the detection and analysis of nucleic acids.

Fluorescent nucleic acid probes are important tools for genetic analysis, in both genomic research and development, and in clinical medicine. As information from the Human Genome Project accumulates, the level of genetic interrogation mediated by fluorescent probes will expand enormously. One particularly useful class of fluorescent probes includes self-quenching probes, also known as fluorescence energy transfer probes, or FET probes. The design of different probes using this motif may vary in detail. In an exemplary FET probe, both a fluorophore and a quencher are tethered to nucleic acid. The probe is configured such that the fluorophore is proximate to the quencher and the probe produces a signal only as a result of its hybridization to an intended target. Despite the limited availability of FET probes, techniques incorporating their use are rapidly displacing alternative methods.

Probes containing a fluorophore-quencher pair have been developed for nucleic acid hybridization assays where the probe forms a hairpin structure, i.e., where the probe hybridizes to itself to form a loop such that the quencher molecule is brought into proximity with the reporter molecule in the absence of a complementary nucleic acid sequence to prevent the formation of the hairpin structure (see, for example, WO 90/03446; European Patent Application No. 0 601 889 A2). When a complementary target sequence is present, hybridization of the probe to the complementary target sequence disrupts the hairpin structure and causes the probe to adopt a conformation where the quencher molecule is no longer close enough to the reporter molecule to quench the reporter molecule. As a result, the probes provide an increased fluorescence signal when hybridized to a target sequence than when they are unhybridized

Assays have also been developed for detecting a selected nucleic acid sequence and for identifying the presence of a hairpin structure using two separate probes, one containing a reporter molecule and the other a quencher molecule (see, 55 Meringue, et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 22: 920-928 (1994)). In these assays, the fluorescence signal of the reporter molecule decreases when hybridized to the target sequence due to the quencher molecule being brought into proximity with the reporter molecule.

One particularly important application for probes including a reporter—quencher molecule pair is their use in nucleic acid amplification reactions, such as polymerase chain reactions (PCR), to detect the presence and amplification of a target nucleic acid sequence. In general, nucleic acid amplification techniques have opened broad new approaches to genetic testing and DNA analysis (see, for example, Arnheim et al. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 61: 131-156 (1992)). PCR, in

US 7,582,432 B2

3

particular, has become a research tool of major importance with applications in, for example, cloning, analysis of genetic expression, DNA sequencing, genetic mapping and drug discovery (see, Arnheim et al., *supra*; Gilliland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87: 2725-2729 (1990); Bevan et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 1: 222-228 (1992); Green et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 1: 77-90 (1991); Blackwell et al., *Science*, 250: 1104-1110 (1990)).

Commonly used methods for detecting nucleic acid amplification products require that the amplified product be separated from unreacted primers. This is typically achieved either through the use of gel electrophoresis, which separates the amplification product from the primers on the basis of a size differential, or through the immobilization of the product, allowing free primer to be washed away. However, a number of methods for monitoring the amplification process without prior separation of primer have been described. All of them are based on FET, and none of them detect the amplified product directly. Instead, the methods detect some event related to amplification. For that reason, they are accompanied by problems of high background, and are not quantitative, as discussed below.

One method, described in Wang et al. (U.S. Pat. No. 5,348,853; and *Anal. Chem.*, 67: 1197-1203 (1995)), uses an energy transfer system in which energy transfer occurs between two fluorophores on the probe. In this method, detection of the amplified molecule takes place in the amplification reaction vessel, without the need for a separation step. This method, however, does not detect the amplified product, but instead detects the dissociation of primer from the "energy-sink" nucleic acid. Thus, this method is dependent on detection of a decrease in emissions; a significant portion of labeled primer must be utilized in order to achieve a reliable difference between the signals before and after the reaction.

A second method detecting an amplification product without prior separation of primer and product is the 5'-nuclease PCR assay (also referred to as the TaqMan™ assay) (Holland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 88: 7276-7280 (1991); Lee et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 21: 3761-3766 (1993)). This assay detects the accumulation of a specific PCR product by hybridization and cleavage of a doubly labeled fluorogenic probe (the "TaqMan" probe) during the amplification reaction. The fluorogenic probe consists of an nucleic acid labeled with both a fluorescent reporter dye and a quencher dye. During PCR, this probe is cleaved by the 5'-exonuclease activity of DNA polymerase if, and only if, it hybridizes to the segment being amplified. Cleavage of the probe generates an increase in the fluorescence intensity of the reporter dye.

In the TaqMan assay, the donor and quencher are preferably located on the 3'- and 5'-ends of the probe, because the requirement that 5'-3' hydrolysis be performed between the fluorophore and quencher may be met only when these two moieties are not too close to each other (Lyamichev et al., *Science*, 260:778-783 (1993)). This requirement is a serious drawback of the assay as the efficiency of energy transfer decreases with the inverse sixth power of the distance between the reporter and quencher. Thus, if the quencher is not close enough to the reporter to achieve the most efficient quenching the background emissions from the probe can be quite high.

Yet another method of detecting amplification products that relies on the use of energy transfer is the "beacon probe" method described by Tyagi et al. (*Nature Biotech.*, 14:303-309 (1996)) which is also the subject of U.S. Pat. No. 5,312,728 to Lizardi et al. This method employs nucleic acid hybridization probes that can form hairpin structures. On one end of the hybridization probe (either the 5'- or 3'-end) there is a donor fluorophore, and on the other end, an acceptor moiety.

4

In this method, the acceptor moiety is a quencher, absorbing energy from the donor. Thus when the beacon is in the open conformation, the fluorescence of the donor fluorophore is detectable, whereas when the beacon is in hairpin (closed) conformation, the fluorescence of the donor fluorophore is quenched. When employed in PCR, the molecular beacon probe, which hybridizes to one of the strands of the PCR product, is in "open conformation," and fluorescence is detected, while those that remain unhybridized will not fluoresce. As a result, the amount of fluorescence will increase as the amount of PCR product increases, and thus can be used as a measure of the progress of the PCR.

Certain limitations impede the application and use of FET probes, or result in assays that are less sensitive than they could be. Foremost among these limitations is the presence of background fluorescence attributable to the emission of the quencher, giving the probe a higher fluorescent noise background than is desirable. An approach that has been utilized to ameliorate this limitation is the use of a quencher that is not a fluorophore ("dark quenchers"), such as derivatives of 4-(dimethylamino)azobenzene (DABCYL). DABCYL is useful as a quenching agent for a limited group of fluorophores with whose emission characteristics, the absorption characteristics of DABCYL overlap. The limited absorption range of DABCYL restricts the utility of this compound by allowing the use of a limited number of fluorophores in conjunction with DABCYL. Because relatively few fluorophores can be used with DABCYL in FET pairs, multiplex applications, where it is desired to use two or more fluorophores with clearly resolved fluorescence emission spectra are difficult to design using this quencher.

In view of the limitations of presently available dark quenchers and probes, such as FET probes constructed with these quenchers, there exists in the art a need for improved quenchers that can be incorporated into probes for detecting analytes rapidly, sensitively, reliably and quantitatively. Ideal quenchers would be have little to no fluorescent quenching signal, and be easily and inexpensively prepared. Moreover, a series of quenchers having similar physical properties, but distinct spectral properties would be particularly advantageous. Quite surprisingly, the present invention provides such quenchers, probes incorporating these quenchers and methods for using the quenchers and probes.

45

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides a family of quenchers of excited state energy that are substantially non-fluorescent, termed "Black Hole Quenchers" ("BHs"). The quenchers of the invention remedy many of the deficiencies of currently utilized dark quenchers, probes assembled using these quenchers and methods using such quenchers and probes. The present invention provides a class of dark quenchers that are functionalized to allow their rapid attachment to probe components using techniques well known in the art, or modifications of such techniques that are well within the abilities of those of skill in the art. Moreover, the present invention provides a class of dark quenchers that can be engineered to have a desired light absorption profile. The provision of this class of dark quenchers represents a substantial improvement in the design of probes incorporating dark quenchers and methods using such probes.

Many of the nucleic acid probes presently used rely on an interaction between the fluorophore and the quencher in order to minimize the fluorescence of the probe in the absence of its hybridization to a complementary nucleic acid. The interac-

US 7,582,432 B2

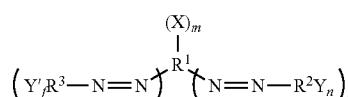
5

tion between the fluorophore and the quencher is typically brought about by using a nucleic acid probe sequence that forms a secondary structure (e.g., hairpin, loop, etc.). Requiring that a probe adopt a secondary structure significantly complicates the design of the probe and greatly restricts the nucleic acid sequences that can be used as components of the probes. In contrast, nucleic acid probes using BHQs of the present invention are found to facilitate the interaction between the quencher and the fluorophore without requiring concomitant formation of nucleic acid secondary structure, thereby allowing a much greater diversity of nucleic acid sequences to be used as components of fluorescent probes.

Moreover, by varying the number and identity of the members of the conjugated system of the BHQs, the spectral properties (e.g., absorbance) of a BHQ can be "tuned" to match the spectral characteristics (e.g., emission) of one or more fluorophores. For example, as the BHQs of the present invention can be selected to have a broad range of absorbance maxima, these quenchers are uniquely suited for use in multiplexing applications. Furthermore, the ability to select a BHQ having a particular spectral characteristic allows the use of BHQs in multiplexing applications using one or more distinct fluorophore in combination with one or more distinct BHQ, thereby expanding the choices of donor-acceptor pairs that can be incorporated into probes.

Thus, in a first aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond, the quencher further comprising a reactive functional group providing a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule.

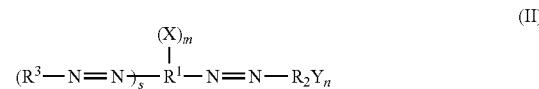
In a second aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula I:



wherein R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl. X, Y and Y' are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (f+s) is greater than 1, the Y' groups are the same or different; m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when (n+t) is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R³ groups are the same or different; and t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R² groups are the same or different, and when t is 1 and s is 0, a member selected from R¹, R² and combinations thereof is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic aryl and substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic heteroaryl groups.

6

In a third aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula II:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number selected from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

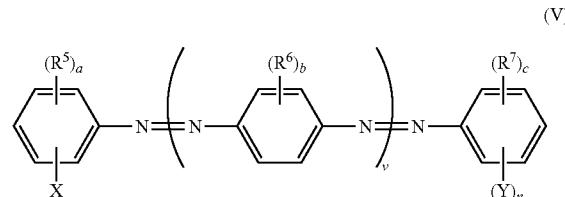
In each of the above-described aspects of the invention X is preferably a member selected from —COOH, —OH and —NR'R", wherein R' and R" are members independently selected from the group consisting of H and substituted or unsubstituted alkyl groups.

In a fourth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula IV:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; c is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different; v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, more preferably from 1 to 6, inclusive and more preferably still between 2 and 4, inclusive. When v is greater than 1, the R² groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof.

In a fifth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula V:

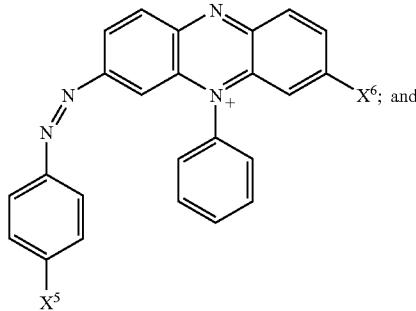
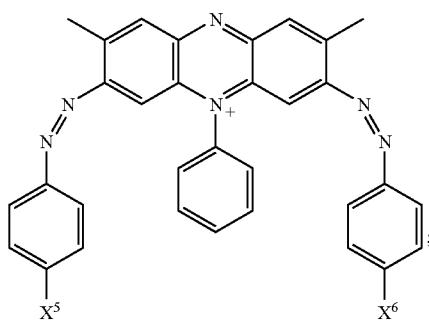
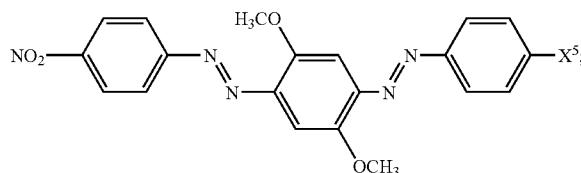
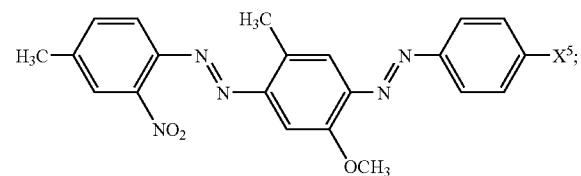


US 7,582,432 B2

7

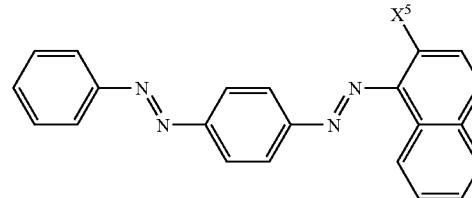
wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R'', substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy, wherein R' and R'' are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl. X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups; m is a number from 1 to 2, inclusive, such that when m is 2, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive; a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (v×b) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the b phenyl rings is the same or different.

In a sixth aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure, which is a member selected from:



8

-continued



wherein, X⁵ and X⁶ are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, —OR', —COOR', —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³)N(X⁴)₂, in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl, with the proviso that at least one of X⁵ and X⁶ is a reactive functional group. X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from CN, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

In an seventh aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method includes: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct that includes a fluorophore; (b) exciting said fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of said sample, wherein the presence of said enzyme in said sample results in a change in said fluorescence property.

Preferred peptide constructs include: i) a fluorophore; ii) a quencher comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond; and iii) a cleavage recognition site for the enzyme. Moreover, the peptide is preferably in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the quencher when the fluorophore is excited.

In another aspect, the invention provides a method for determining whether a compound alters an activity of an enzyme. Preferred embodiments of this aspect of the invention include the steps recited in connection with the above-recited aspect of the invention and further include a step (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein said activity of said enzyme in said sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

In an ninth aspect, the present invention provides a method for detecting a nucleic acid target sequence. The method includes: (a) contacting the target sequence with a detector nucleic acid; (b) hybridizing the target binding sequence to the target sequence, thereby altering the conformation of the detector nucleic acid, causing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (c) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the nucleic acid target sequence.

In the methods described herein, unless otherwise noted, a preferred detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence. The binding sequence has linked thereto: i) a fluorophore; and ii) a BHQ of the invention.

In an tenth aspect, the invention provides a method for detecting amplification of a target sequence. The method includes the use of an amplification reaction including the following steps: (a) hybridizing the target sequence and a detector nucleic acid. The detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence and an intramolecularly associated secondary structure 5' to the target binding sequence. At least a portion of the detector sequence forms a single stranded tail which is available for hybridization to the target sequence; (b) extending the hybridized detector nucleic acid on the target sequence with a polymerase to produce a

US 7,582,432 B2

9

detector nucleic acid extension product and separating the detector nucleic acid extension product from the target sequence; (c) hybridizing a primer to the detector nucleic acid extension product and extending the primer with the polymerase, thereby linearizing the intramolecularly associated secondary structure and producing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (d) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the target sequence.

In an eleventh aspect, the invention provides a method of ascertaining whether a first nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid hybridize. In this method, the first nucleic acid includes a BHQ according to the invention. The method includes: (a) contacting the first nucleic acid with the second nucleic acid; (b) detecting an alteration in a fluorescent property of a member selected from the first nucleic acid, the second nucleic acid and a combination thereof, thereby ascertaining whether the hybridization occurs.

In a twelfth aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method comprises: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct; (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the presence of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

Peptide constructs useful in practicing the invention include those with the following features: i) a fluorophore; ii) a BHQ of the invention; and iii) a cleavage recognition site for the enzyme.

In an thirteenth aspect, the invention provides methods of determining the amount of activity of an enzyme in a sample from an organism. The method includes: (a) contacting a sample comprising the enzyme and the compound with a peptide construct comprising (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the activity of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property. Peptide constructs useful in this aspect of the invention are substantially similar to those described immediately above.

In a fourteenth aspect, the invention provides a microarray comprising a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The quencher is conjugated directly to a solid support or to a carrier molecule attached to the solid support.

In a fifteenth aspect, the invention provides a method of probing a microarray for the presence of a compound. The method includes: (a) contacting the microarray with a probe interacting with the compound. Preferred probes include a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond; and (b) detecting a difference in a fluorescence property of a member selected from the probe, the compound and combinations thereof, thereby ascertaining the presence of the compound.

In a sixteenth aspect, the present invention provides a mixture including at least a first carrier molecule and a second carrier molecule. The first carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a first quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The second carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a second

10

quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond.

Additional objects and advantages of the present invention will be apparent to those of skill in the art upon examination of the detailed description that follows.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is an exemplary synthetic scheme for preparing a BHQ of the invention.

FIG. 2 is a collection of structures of exemplary BHQs (BH1, BH2 and BH3) of the invention.

FIG. 3 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH1-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH1-CPG.

FIG. 4 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH2-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH2-CPG.

FIG. 5 is a collection of structures of an exemplary BHQ attached to a controlled pore glass support (BH3-CPG) and intermediates along the synthesis of BH3-CPG.

FIG. 6 is a collection of structures of activated derivatives of BH1.

FIG. 7(a-b) is a comparison of the absorbance spectra of Dabcyl and the BHQs of the invention:

(a) is an overlay plot of the absorbance spectra of BH1 and the emission spectra of three commonly used fluorophores FAM, TET and JOE;

(b) is an overlay plot of the absorbance spectra of DABCYL and the emission spectra of three commonly used fluorophores FAM, TET and JOE.

FIG. 8 is a series of nucleic acid structures incorporating exemplary BHQs of the invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION AND THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Abbreviations

“BHQ,” as used herein, refers to “Black Hole Quenchers.”

“FET,” as used herein, refers to “Fluorescence Energy Transfer.” “FRET,” as used herein, refers to “Fluorescence Resonance Energy Transfer.” These terms are used herein to refer to both radiative and non-radiative energy transfer processes. For example, processes in which a photon is emitted and those involving long range electron transfer are included within these terms. Throughout this specification, both of these phenomena are subsumed under the general term “donor-acceptor energy transfer.”

Definitions

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein generally have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. Generally, the nomenclature used herein and the laboratory procedures in cell culture, molecular genetics, organic chemistry and nucleic acid chemistry and hybridization described below are those well known and commonly employed in the art. Standard techniques are used for nucleic acid and peptide synthesis. Generally, enzymatic reactions and purification steps are performed according to the manufacturer’s specifications. The techniques and procedures are generally performed according to conventional methods in the art and various general references (see generally, Sambrook et al. MOLECULAR CLONING: A LABORATORY

US 7,582,432 B2

11

MANUAL, 2d ed. (1989) Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y., which is incorporated herein by reference), which are provided throughout this document. The nomenclature used herein and the laboratory procedures in analytical chemistry, and organic synthetic described below are those well known and commonly employed in the art. Standard techniques, or modifications thereof, are used for chemical syntheses and chemical analyses.

“Analyte”, as used herein means any compound or molecule of interest for which a diagnostic test is performed. An analyte can be, for example, a protein, peptide, carbohydrate, polysaccharide, glycoprotein, hormone, receptor, antigen, antibody, virus, substrate, metabolite, transition state analog, cofactor, inhibitor, drug, dye, nutrient, growth factor, etc., without limitation.

As used herein, “energy transfer” refers to the process by which the excited state energy of an excited group is altered by a modifying group, such as a quencher. If the excited state energy-modifying group is a quenching group, then the fluorescence emission from the fluorescent group is attenuated (quenched). Energy transfer can occur through fluorescence resonance energy transfer, or through direct energy transfer. The exact energy transfer mechanisms in these two cases are different. It is to be understood that any reference to energy transfer in the instant application encompasses all of these mechanistically-distinct phenomena.

As used herein, “energy transfer pair” refers to any two molecules that participate in energy transfer. Typically, one of the molecules acts as a fluorescent group, and the other acts as a fluorescence-modifying group. The preferred energy transfer pair of the instant invention comprises a fluorescent group and a quenching group of the invention. There is no limitation on the identity of the individual members of the energy transfer pair in this application. All that is required is that the spectroscopic properties of the energy transfer pair as a whole change in some measurable way if the distance between the individual members is altered by some critical amount. “Energy transfer pair” is used to refer to a group of molecules that form a complex within which energy transfer occurs. Such complexes may include, for example, two fluorescent groups, which may be different from one another and one quenching group, two quenching groups and one fluorescent group, or multiple fluorescent groups and multiple quenching groups. In cases where there are multiple fluorescent groups and/or multiple quenching groups, the individual groups may be different from one another.

As used herein, “fluorescence-modifying group” refers to a molecule of the invention that can alter in any way the fluorescence emission from a fluorescent group. A fluorescence-modifying group generally accomplishes this through an energy transfer mechanism. Depending on the identity of the fluorescence-modifying group, the fluorescence emission can undergo a number of alterations, including, but not limited to, attenuation, complete quenching, enhancement, a shift in wavelength, a shift in polarity, and a change in fluorescence lifetime. One example of a fluorescence-modifying group is a quenching group.

As used herein, “quenching group” refers to any fluorescence-modifying group of the invention that can attenuate at least partly the light emitted by a fluorescent group. This attenuation is referred to herein as “quenching”. Hence, illumination of the fluorescent group in the presence of the quenching group leads to an emission signal that is less intense than expected, or even completely absent. Quenching typically occurs through energy transfer between the fluorescent group and the quenching group.

12

As used herein, “nucleic acid” means DNA, RNA, single-stranded, double-stranded, or more highly aggregated hybridization motifs, and any chemical modifications thereof. Modifications include, but are not limited to, those providing chemical groups that incorporate additional charge, polarizability, hydrogen bonding, electrostatic interaction, and fluxionality to the nucleic acid ligand bases or to the nucleic acid ligand as a whole. Such modifications include, but are not limited to, peptide nucleic acids (PNAs), phosphodiester group modifications (e.g., phosphorothioates, methylphosphonates), 2'-position sugar modifications, 5-position pyrimidine modifications, 8-position purine modifications, modifications at exocyclic amines, substitution of 4-thiouridine, substitution of 5-bromo or 5-ido-uracil; backbone modifications, methylations, unusual base-pairing combinations such as the isobases, isocytidine and isoguanidine and the like. Nucleic acids can also include non-natural bases, such as, for example, nitroindole. Modifications can also include 3' and 5' modifications such as capping with a BHQ, a fluorophore or another moiety.

“Peptide” refers to a polymer in which the monomers are amino acids and are joined together through amide bonds, alternatively referred to as a polypeptide. When the amino acids are α -amino acids, either the L-optical isomer or the D-optical isomer can be used. Additionally, unnatural amino acids, for example, β -alanine, phenylglycine and homoarginine are also included. Commonly encountered amino acids that are not gene-encoded may also be used in the present invention. All of the amino acids used in the present invention may be either the D- or L-isomer. The L-isomers are generally preferred. In addition, other peptidomimetics are also useful in the present invention. For a general review, see, Spatola, A. F., in CHEMISTRY AND BIOCHEMISTRY OF AMINO ACIDS, PEPTIDES AND PROTEINS, B. Weinstein, eds., Marcel Dekker, New York, p. 267 (1983).

“Bioactive species,” refers to molecules that, when administered to an organism, affect that organism. Exemplary bioactive species include pharmaceuticals, pesticides, herbicides, growth regulators and the like. Bioactive species encompass small molecules (i.e., approximately <1000 daltons), oligomers, polymers and the like. Also included are nucleic acids and their analogues, peptides and their analogues and the like.

The term “alkyl” is used herein to refer to a branched or unbranched, saturated or unsaturated, monovalent and divalent hydrocarbon radical, generally having from about 1-30 carbons and preferably, from 4-20 carbons and more preferably from 6-18 carbons. When the alkyl group has from 1-6 carbon atoms, it is referred to as a “lower alkyl.” Suitable alkyl radicals include, for example, structures containing one or more methylene, methine and/or methyne groups. Branched structures have a branching motif similar to i-propyl, t-butyl, i-butyl, 2-ethylpropyl, etc. As used herein, the term encompasses “substituted alkyls,” and “cyclic alkyl.”

“Substituted alkyl” refers to alkyl as just described including one or more substituents such as, for example, lower alkyl, aryl, acyl, halogen (i.e., alkylhalos, e.g., CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, thioamido, acyloxy, aryloxy, aryloxyalkyl, mercapto, thia, aza, oxo, both saturated and unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbons, heterocycles and the like. These groups may be attached to any carbon or substituent of the alkyl moiety. Additionally, these groups may be pendent from, or integral to, the alkyl chain.

The term “aryl” is used herein to refer to an aromatic substituent, which may be a single aromatic ring or multiple aromatic rings which are fused together, linked covalently, or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or

US 7,582,432 B2

13

ethylene moiety. The common linking group may also be a carbonyl as in benzophenone. The aromatic ring(s) may include phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, diphenylmethyl and benzophenone among others. The term "aryl" encompasses "arylalkyl" and "substituted aryl."

"Substituted aryl" refers to aryl as just described including one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, phenoxy, mercapto and both saturated and unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbons which are fused to the aromatic ring(s), linked covalently or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The linking group may also be a carbonyl such as in cyclohexyl phenyl ketone. The term "substituted aryl" encompasses "substituted arylalkyl."

The term "arylalkyl" is used herein to refer to a subset of "aryl" in which the aryl group is attached to another group by an alkyl group as defined herein.

"Substituted arylalkyl" defines a subset of "substituted aryl" wherein the substituted aryl group is attached to another group by an alkyl group as defined herein.

The term "acyl" is used to describe a ketone substituent, —C(O)R, where R is alkyl or substituted alkyl, aryl or substituted aryl as defined herein.

The term "halogen" is used herein to refer to fluorine, bromine, chlorine and iodine atoms.

The term "hydroxy" is used herein to refer to the group —OH.

The term "amino" is used to —NRR', wherein R and R' are independently H, alkyl, aryl or substituted analogues thereof. "Amino" encompasses "alkylamino" denoting secondary and tertiary amines and "acylamino" describing the group RC(O)NR'.

The term "alkoxy" is used herein to refer to the —OR group, where R is alkyl, or a substituted analogue thereof. Suitable alkoxy radicals include, for example, methoxy, ethoxy, t-butoxy, etc.

As used herein, the term "aryloxy" denotes aromatic groups that are linked to another group directly through an oxygen atom. This term encompasses "substituted aryloxy" moieties in which the aromatic group is substituted as described above for "substituted aryl." Exemplary aryloxy moieties include phenoxy, substituted phenoxy, benzyloxy, phenethyloxy, etc.

As used herein "aryloxyalkyl" defines aromatic groups attached, through an oxygen atom to an alkyl group, as defined herein. The term "aryloxyalkyl" encompasses "substituted aryloxyalkyl" moieties in which the aromatic group is substituted as described for "substituted aryl."

As used herein, the term "mercapto" defines moieties of the general structure —S—R wherein R is H, alkyl, aryl or heterocyclic as described herein.

The term "saturated cyclic hydrocarbon" denotes groups such as the cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, etc., and substituted analogues of these structures. These cyclic hydrocarbons can be single- or multi-ring structures.

The term "unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbon" is used to describe a monovalent non-aromatic group with at least one double bond, such as cyclopentene, cyclohexene, etc. and substituted analogues thereof. These cyclic hydrocarbons can be single- or multi-ring structures.

The term "heteroaryl" as used herein refers to aromatic rings in which one or more carbon atoms of the aromatic ring(s) are replaced by a heteroatom such as nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur. Heteroaryl refers to structures that may be a single aromatic ring, multiple aromatic ring(s), or one or more aromatic rings coupled to one or more non-aromatic ring(s). In

14

structures having multiple rings, the rings can be fused together, linked covalently, or linked to a common group such as a diazo, methylene or ethylene moiety. The common linking group may also be a carbonyl as in phenyl pyridyl ketone. As used herein, rings such as thiophene, pyridine, isoxazole, phthalimide, pyrazole, indole, furan, etc. or benzo-fused analogues of these rings are defined by the term "heteroaryl."

"Heteroarylalkyl" defines a subset of "heteroaryl" wherein an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heteroaryl group to another group.

"Substituted heteroaryl" refers to heteroaryl as just described wherein the heteroaryl nucleus is substituted with one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, mercapto, etc. Thus, substituted analogues of heteroaromatic rings such as thiophene, pyridine, isoxazole, phthalimide, pyrazole, indole, furan, etc. or benzo-fused analogues of these rings are defined by the term "substituted heteroaryl."

"Substituted heteroarylalkyl" refers to a subset of "substituted heteroaryl" as described above in which an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heteroaryl group to another group.

The term "heterocyclic" is used herein to describe a monovalent saturated or unsaturated non-aromatic group having a single ring or multiple condensed rings from 1-12 carbon atoms and from 1-4 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen within the ring. Such heterocycles are, for example, tetrahydrofuran, morpholine, piperidine, pyrrolidine, etc.

The term "substituted heterocyclic" as used herein describes a subset of "heterocyclic" wherein the heterocycle nucleus is substituted with one or more functional groups such as lower alkyl, acyl, halogen, alkylhalos (e.g. CF₃), hydroxy, amino, alkoxy, alkylamino, acylamino, acyloxy, mercapto, etc.

The term "heterocyclicalkyl" defines a subset of "heterocyclic" wherein an alkyl group, as defined herein, links the heterocyclic group to another group.

Introduction

The present invention provides a class of fluorescence modifiers, particularly quenchers, of excited state energy. The compounds of the invention absorb excited state energy from a reporter fluorophore, but are themselves substantially non-fluorescent. The fluorophore transferring the excited state energy to the quenchers of the invention will generally be a label that is attached to an analyte or a species that interacts with, and allows detection and/or quantification of the analyte.

Fluorescent labels have the advantage of requiring few precautions in handling, and being amenable to high-throughput visualization techniques (optical analysis including digitization of the image for analysis in an integrated system comprising a computer). Preferred labels are typically characterized by one or more of the following: high sensitivity, high stability, low background, low environmental sensitivity and high specificity in labeling. Many fluorescent labels are commercially available from the SIGMA chemical company (Saint Louis, Mo.), Molecular Probes (Eugene, Oreg.), R&D systems (Minneapolis, Minn.), Pharmacia LKB Biotechnology (Piscataway, N.J.), CLONTECH Laboratories, Inc. (Palo Alto, Calif.), Chem Genes Corp., Aldrich Chemical Company (Milwaukee, Wis.), Glen Research, Inc., GIBCO BRL Life Technologies, Inc. (Gaithersburg, Md.), Fluka Chemica-Biochemika Analytika (Fluka Chemie A G, Buchs, Switzerland), and Applied Biosystems (Foster City, Calif.), as well as many other commercial sources known to one of

US 7,582,432 B2

15

skill. Furthermore, those of skill in the art will recognize how to select an appropriate fluorophore for a particular application and, if it not readily available commercially, will be able to synthesize the necessary fluorophore de novo or synthetically modify commercially available fluorescent compounds to arrive at the desired fluorescent label.

In addition to small molecule fluorophores, naturally occurring fluorescent proteins and engineered analogues of such proteins are useful in the present invention. Such proteins include, for example, green fluorescent proteins of cnidarians (Ward et al., *Photochem. Photobiol.* 35:803-808 (1982); Levine et al., *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.*, 72B:77-85 (1982)), yellow fluorescent protein from *Vibrio fischeri* strain (Baldwin et al., *Biochemistry* 29:5509-15 (1990)), Peridinin-chlorophyll from the dinoflagellate Symbiodinium sp. (Morris et al., *Plant Molecular Biology* 24:673:77 (1994)), phycobiliproteins from marine cyanobacteria, such as Synechococcus, e.g., phycoerythrin and phycocyanin (Wilbanks et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:1226-35 (1993)), and the like.

The compounds, probes and methods discussed in the following sections are generally representative of the compositions of the invention and the methods in which such compositions can be used. The following discussion is intended as illustrative of selected aspects and embodiments of the present invention and it should not be interpreted as limiting the scope of the present invention.

Black Hole Quenchers

The present invention provides a family of dark quenchers that are referred to herein as "Black Hole Quenchers™" ("BHQ"s). The quenchers of the invention include conjugated π -bonded systems that are preferably azo-linked aromatic species.

In a first aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond, the quencher further comprising a reactive functional group providing a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule. Although the quenchers can be used in their free unbound form, it is generally preferred that they be tethered to another species, thus, preferred quenchers further comprise a reactive functional group that provides a locus for conjugation of the quencher to a carrier molecule.

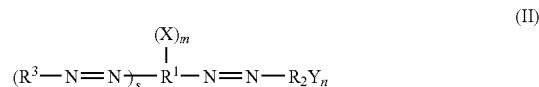
In another preferred embodiment, the BHQs of the invention described herein have substantially no native fluorescence, particularly near their absorbance maxima or near the absorbance maxima of fluorophores used in conjunction with the BHQs. The BHQs will preferably have an absorbance maximum of from about 400 nm to about 760 nm, and more preferably, of from about 500 nm to about 600 nm.

In a second aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula I:

16

ated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl. X, Y and Y' are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (fxs) is greater than 1, the Y' groups are the same or different; m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when (nxt) is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R³ groups are the same or different; and t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R² groups are the same or different, and when t is 1 and s is 0, a member selected from R¹, R² and combinations thereof is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic aryl and substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic heteroaryl groups.

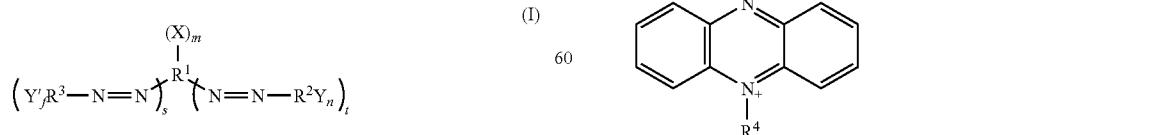
20 In a third aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula II:



in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; n is a number selected from 0 to 5,
35 inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different; s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.
40
45

In a preferred embodiment, m is 1; n is 0; c is 1; and R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from aryl and substituted aryl.

In a preferred embodiment of each of the above-described aspects of the invention, R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from aryl and aryl substituted with a member selected from amino, amino derivatives, nitro, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy and combinations thereof, and still more preferably, R¹ includes a structure according to Formula III:



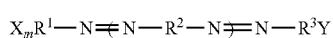
wherein R¹, R² and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsatur-

65 wherein R⁴ is a member selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

US 7,582,432 B2

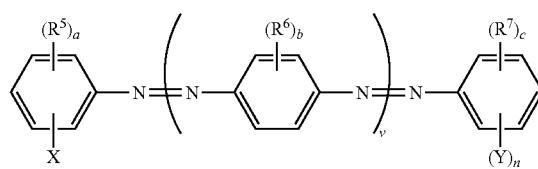
17

In a fourth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula IV:



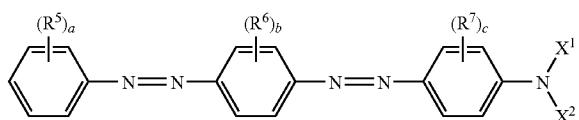
in which, X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups; m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different; c is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different; v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, more preferably from 1 to 6, inclusive and more preferably still between 2 and 4, inclusive. When v is greater than one the R² groups are the same or different. R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof.

In a fifth aspect, the invention provides compounds having a structure according to Formula V:



wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R'', substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy, wherein R' and R'' are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl. X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups; n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive; a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (vxb) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the v phenyl rings is the same or different.

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure according to Formula VI:

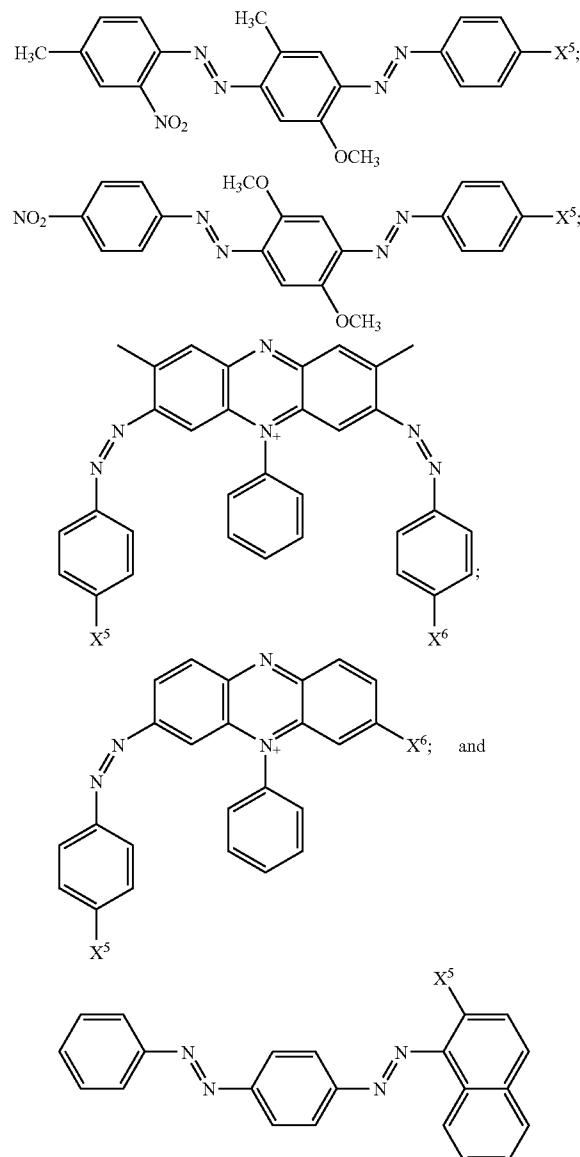


wherein, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from amine, alkyl amine, substituted or unsubstituted aryl,

18

nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy; a is a number between 0 and 5, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when b is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and X¹ and X² are members independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl or C₁-C₆ substituted alkyl, —OH, —COOH, —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³)(NR'R''), in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl.

In a sixth aspect, the present invention provides a quencher of excited state energy having a structure, which is a member selected from:



X⁵ and X⁶ are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, —OR', —COOR', —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³)(NR'R''), in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of

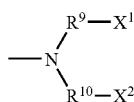
US 7,582,432 B2

19

H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl. At least one of X⁵ and X⁶ is a reactive functional group. X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from CN, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

The following discussion is generally relevant to the identity of the reactive groups of the compounds of the invention and is particularly relevant to the groups X, X¹ and X² in each of the above-described aspects of the invention.

In a preferred embodiment, X is a member selected from amine, alkyl amine, substituted alkyl amine, and aryl amine groups, more preferably X has a structure according to Formula VII:

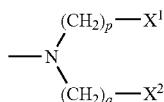


(VII)

wherein, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl; and X¹ and X² are members independently selected from —CH₃, —OH, —COOH, —NH₂, —SH, —OP(OX³)N(X⁴)₂, wherein, X³ and X⁴ are members independently selected from alkyl and substituted alkyl, and preferably X³ is cyanoethyl; and X⁴ is isopropyl.

In another preferred embodiment, a member selected from R⁹, R¹⁰ and combinations thereof comprises a polyether. Preferred polyethers include, for example, poly(ethylene glycol), poly(propylene glycol) and copolymers thereof.

In a further preferred embodiment, X has a structure according to Formula VIII:



(VIII)

wherein, X¹, X², X³ and X⁴ are substantially as described above and p and q are numbers independently selected from 1 to 20, inclusive, preferably from 2 to 16, inclusive.

The compounds of the invention can be prepared as a single isomer or a mixture of isomers, including, for example cis-isomers, trans-isomers, diastereomers and stereoisomers. In a preferred embodiment, the compounds are prepared as substantially a single isomer. Isomerically pure compounds are prepared by using synthetic intermediates that are isomerically pure in combination with reactions that either leave the stereochemistry at a chiral center unchanged or result in its complete inversion. Alternatively, the final product or intermediates along the synthetic route can be resolved into a single isomer. Techniques for inverting or leaving unchanged a particular stereocenter, and those for resolving mixtures of stereoisomers are well known in the art and it is well within the ability of one of skill in the art to choose an appropriate resolution or synthetic method for a particular situation. See, generally, Furniss et al. (eds.), VOGEL'S ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY 5TH ED., Longman Scientific and Technical Ltd., Essex, 1991, pp. 809-816; and Heller, *Acc. Chem. Res.* 23: 128 (1990).

Reactive Functional Groups

The compounds of the invention bear a reactive functional group, which can be located at any position on an aryl nucleus or on a chain, such as an alkyl chain, attached to an aryl

20

nucleus. When the reactive group is attached to an alkyl, or substituted alkyl chain tethered to an aryl nucleus, the reactive group is preferably located at a terminal position of an alkyl chain. Reactive groups and classes of reactions useful in practicing the present invention are generally those that are well known in the art of bioconjugate chemistry. Currently favored classes of reactions available with reactive BHQs are those which proceed under relatively mild conditions. These include, but are not limited to nucleophilic substitutions (e.g., 5 reactions of amines and alcohols with acyl halides, active esters), electrophilic substitutions (e.g., enamine reactions) and additions to carbon-carbon and carbon-heteroatom multiple bonds (e.g., Michael reaction, Diels-Alder addition). These and other useful reactions are discussed in, for example, March, ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, 3rd Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1985; Hermanson, BIOCONJUGATE TECHNIQUES, Academic Press, San Diego, 1996; and Feeney et al., MODIFICATION OF PROTEINS; Advances in Chemistry Series, Vol. 198, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C., 20 1982.

Useful reactive functional groups include, for example:

- (a) carboxyl groups and various derivatives thereof including, but not limited to, N-hydroxysuccinimide esters, N-hydroxybenztriazole esters, acid halides, acyl imidazoles, thioesters, p-nitrophenyl esters, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl and aromatic esters;
- (b) hydroxyl groups, which can be converted to esters, ethers, aldehydes, etc.
- (c) haloalkyl groups, wherein the halide can be later displaced with a nucleophilic group such as, for example, an amine, a carboxylate anion, thiol anion, carbanion, or an alkoxide ion, thereby resulting in the covalent attachment of a new group at the site of the halogen atom;
- (d) dienophile groups, which are capable of participating in Diels-Alder reactions such as, for example, maleimido groups;
- (e) aldehyde or ketone groups, such that subsequent derivatization is possible via formation of carbonyl derivatives such as, for example, imines, hydrazones, semicarbazones or oximes, or via such mechanisms as Grignard addition or alkylolithium addition;
- (f) sulfonyl halide groups for subsequent reaction with amines, for example, to form sulfonamides;
- (g) thiol groups, which can be, for example, converted to disulfides or reacted with acyl halides;
- (h) amine or sulfhydryl groups, which can be, for example, acylated, alkylated or oxidized;
- (i) alkenes, which can undergo, for example, cycloadditions, acylation, Michael addition, etc;
- (j) epoxides, which can react with, for example, amines and hydroxyl compounds; and
- (k) phosphoramidites and other standard functional groups useful in nucleic acid synthesis.

The reactive functional groups can be chosen such that they do not participate in, or interfere with, the reactions necessary to assemble the reactive BHQ analogue. Alternatively, a reactive functional group can be protected from participating in the reaction by the presence of a protecting group. Those of skill in the art understand how to protect a particular functional group such that it does not interfere with a chosen set of reaction conditions. For examples of useful protecting groups, see, for example, Greene et al., PROTECTIVE GROUPS IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1991.

Donor and Acceptor Moieties

One of the advantages of the compounds of the invention is that a wide range of energy donor molecules can be used in conjunction with the BHQs. A vast array of fluorophores are

US 7,582,432 B2

21

known to those of skill in the art. See, for example, Cardullo et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 8790-8794 (1988); Dexter, D. L., *J. of Chemical Physics* 21: 836-850 (1953); Hochstrasser et al., *Biophysical Chemistry* 45: 133-141 (1992); Selvin, P., *Methods in Enzymology* 246: 300-334 (1995); Steinberg, I. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 40: 83-114 (1971); Stryer, L. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 47: 819-846 (1978); Wang et al., *Tetrahedron Letters* 31: 6493-6496 (1990); Wang et al., *Anal. Chem.* 67: 1197-1203 (1995).

A non-limiting list of exemplary donors that can be used in conjunction with the quenchers of the invention is provided in Table 1.

TABLE 1

Suitable moieties that can be selected as donors or acceptors in donor-acceptor energy transfer pairs	
4-acetamido-4'-isothiocyanatostilbene-2,2'disulfonic acid	
acridine and derivatives:	
acridine	
acridine isothiocyanate	
5-(2'-aminoethyl)aminonaphthalene-1-sulfonic acid (EDANS)	
4-amino-N-[3-vinylsulfonyl]phenyl]naphthalimide-3,5 disulfonate	
N-(4-anilino-1-naphthyl)maleimide	
anthranilamide	
BODIPY	
Brilliant Yellow	
coumarin and derivatives:	
coumarin	
7-amino-4-methylcoumarin (AMC, Coumarin 120)	
7-amino-4-trifluoromethylcoumarin (Coumaran 151)	
cyanine dyes	
cyanosine	
4',6-diamidino-2-phenylindole (DAPI)	
5',5"-dibromopyrogallol-sulfonaphthalene (Bromopyrogallol Red)	
7-diethylamino-3-(4'-isothiocyanatophenyl)-4-methylcoumarin	
diethylenetriamine pentaacetate	
4,4'-diisothiocyanatodihydro-stilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid	
4,4'-diisothiocyanatostilbene-2,2'-disulfonic acid	
5-[dimethylamino]naphthalene-1-sulfonyl chloride (DNS, dansylchloride)	
4-(4'-dimethylaminophenylazo)benzoic acid (DABCYL)	
4-dimethylaminophenylazophenyl-4'-isothiocyanate (DABITC)	
eosin and derivatives:	
eosin	
eosin isothiocyanate	
erythrosin and derivatives:	
erythrosin B	
erythrosin isothiocyanate	
ethidium	
fluorescein and derivatives:	
5-carboxyfluorescein (FAM)	
5-(4,6-dichlorotriazin-2-yl)aminofluorescein (DTAF)	
2',7-dimethoxy-4'5'-dichloro-6-carboxyfluorescein (JOE)	
fluorescein	
fluorescein isothiocyanate	
QFITC (XRITE)	
fluorescamine	
IR144	
IR1446	
Malachite Green isothiocyanate	
4-methylumbellifereone	
ortho cresolphthalein	
nitrotyrosine	
pararosaniline	
Phenol Red	
B-phycoerythrin	
o-phthaldialdehyde	
pyrene and derivatives:	
pyrene	
pyrene butyrate	
succinimidyl 1-pyrene butyrate	
quantum dots	

22

TABLE 1-continued

5	Suitable moieties that can be selected as donors or acceptors in donor-acceptor energy transfer pairs
10	Reactive Red 4 (Cibacron™ Brilliant Red 3B-A) rhodamine and derivatives: 6-carboxy-X-rhodamine (ROX) 6-carboxyrhodamine (R6G) lissamine rhodamine B sulfonyl chloride rhodamine (Rhod) rhodamine B rhodamine 123 rhodamine X isothiocyanate sulforhodamine B sulforhodamine 101 sulfonyl chloride derivative of sulforhodamine 101 (Texas Red) N,N,N',N"-tetramethyl-6-carboxyrhodamine (TAMRA) tetramethyl rhodamine tetramethyl rhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC) riboflavin rosolic acid terbium chelate derivatives
15	
20	
25	There is a great deal of practical guidance available in the literature for selecting appropriate donor-acceptor pairs for particular probes, as exemplified by the following references: Pesce et al., Eds., FLUORESCENCE SPECTROSCOPY (Marcel Dekker, New York, 1971); White et al., FLUORESCENCE ANALYSIS: A PRACTICAL APPROACH (Marcel Dekker, New York, 1970); and the like. The literature also includes references providing exhaustive lists of fluorescent and chromogenic molecules and their relevant optical properties for choosing reporter-quencher pairs (see, for example, Berlman, HANDBOOK OF FLUORESCENCE SPECTRA OF AROMATIC MOLECULES, 2nd Edition (Academic Press, New York, 1971); Griffiths, COLOUR AND CONSTITUTION OF ORGANIC MOLECULES (Academic Press, New York, 1976); Bishop, Ed., INDICATORS (Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1972); Haugland, HANDBOOK OF FLUORESCENT PROBES AND RESEARCH CHEMICALS (Molecular Probes, Eugene, 1992) Pringsheim, FLUORESCENCE AND PHOSPHORESCENCE (Interscience Publishers, New York, 1949); and the like. Further, there is extensive guidance in the literature for derivatizing reporter and quencher molecules for covalent attachment via common reactive groups that can be added to a nucleic acid, as exemplified by the following references: Haugland (supra); Ullman et al., U.S. Pat. No. 3,996,345; Khanna et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,351,760. Thus, it is well within the abilities of those of skill in the art to choose an energy exchange pair for a particular application and to conjugate the members of this pair to a probe molecule, such as, for example, a nucleic acid, peptide or other polymer.
30	
35	
40	
45	
50	Generally, it is preferred that an absorbance band of the BHQ substantially overlap the fluorescence emission band of the donor. When the donor (fluorophore) is a component of a probe that utilizes donor-acceptor energy transfer, the donor fluorescent moiety and the quencher (acceptor) of the invention are preferably selected so that the donor and acceptor moieties exhibit donor-acceptor energy transfer when the donor moiety is excited. One factor to be considered in choosing the fluorophore-quencher pair is the efficiency of donor-acceptor energy transfer between them. Preferably, the efficiency of FRET between the donor and acceptor moieties is at least 10%, more preferably at least 50% and even more preferably at least 80%. The efficiency of FRET can easily be empirically tested using the methods both described herein and known in the art.
55	
60	
65	The efficiency of energy transfer between the donor-acceptor pair can also be adjusted by changing the ability of the donor and acceptor groups to dimerize or closely associate. If

US 7,582,432 B2

23

the donor and acceptor moieties are known or determined to closely associate, an increase or decrease in association can be promoted by adjusting the length of a linker moiety, or of the probe itself, between the donor and acceptor. The ability of donor-acceptor pair to associate can be increased or decreased by tuning the hydrophobic or ionic interactions, or the steric repulsions in the probe construct. Thus, intramolecular interactions responsible for the association of the donor-acceptor pair can be enhanced or attenuated. Thus, for example, the association between the donor-acceptor pair can be increased by, for example, utilizing a donor bearing an overall negative charge and an acceptor with an overall positive charge.

In addition to fluorophores that are attached directly to a probe, the fluorophores can also be attached by indirect means. In this embodiment, a ligand molecule (e.g., biotin) is generally covalently bound to the probe species. The ligand then binds to another molecules (e.g., streptavidin) molecule, which is either inherently detectable or covalently bound to a signal system, such as a fluorescent compound, or an enzyme that produces a fluorescent compound by conversion of a non-fluorescent compound. Useful enzymes of interest as labels include, for example, hydrolases, particularly phosphatases, esterases and glycosidases, hydrolases, peptidases or oxidases, particularly peroxidases, and. Fluorescent compounds include fluorescein and its derivatives, rhodamine and its derivatives, dansyl, umbelliferone, etc., as discussed above. For a review of various labeling or signal producing systems that can be used, see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,391,904.

Presently preferred donors of use in conjunction with BHQ, include, for example, xanthene dyes, including fluoresceins, cyanine dyes and rhodamine dyes. Many suitable forms of these compounds are widely available commercially with substituents on their phenyl moieties, which can be used as the site for bonding or as the bonding functionality for attachment to a nucleic acid. Another group of preferred fluorescent compounds are the naphthylamines, having an amino group in the alpha or beta position. Included among such naphthylamino compounds are 1-dimethylaminonaphthyl-5-sulfonate, 1-anilino-8-naphthalene sulfonate and 2-p-touidinyl-6-naphthalene sulfonate. Other donors include 3-phenyl-7-isocyanoatocoumarin, acridines, such as 9-isothiocyanatoacridine and acridine orange; N-(p-(2-benzoxazolyl)phenyl)maleimide; benzoxadiazoles, stilbenes, pyrenes, and the like.

For clarity of illustration, the discussion below focuses on attaching BHQs and fluorophores to nucleic acids. The focus on nucleic acid probes is not intended to limit the scope of probe molecules to which BHQs can be attached. Those of skill in the art will appreciate that BHQs can also be attached to small molecules, proteins, peptides, synthetic polymers, solid supports and the like using standard synthetic chemistry.

In a presently preferred embodiment, in which the probe is a nucleic acid probe, the reporter molecule is a fluorescein dye (FAM). The fluorescein moiety is preferably attached to either the 3'- or the 5'-terminus of the nucleic acid, although internal sites are also accessible and have utility for selected purposes. Whichever terminus the FAM derivative is attached to, the BHQ will generally be attached to its antipode, or at a position internal to the nucleic acid chain. The FAM donor is preferably introduced using a 6-FAM amidite. Different donor groups are also preferably introduced using an amidite derivative of the donor. Alternatively, donor groups comprising reactive groups (e.g., isothiocyanates, active esters, etc.) can be introduced via reaction with a reactive moiety on a tether or linker arm attached to the nucleic acid (e.g., hexyl amine).

24

In yet another preferred embodiment, the donor moiety can be attached at the 3'-terminus of a nucleic acid by the use of a derivatized synthesis support. For example, TAMRA (tetramethylrhodamine carboxylic acid) is attached to a nucleic acid 3'-terminus using a solid support that is derivatized with an analogue of this fluorophore (Biosearch Technologies, Inc.)

In view of the well-developed body of literature concerning the conjugation of small molecules to nucleic acids, many other methods of attaching donor/acceptor pairs to nucleic acids will be apparent to those of skill in the art. For example, rhodamine and fluorescein dyes are conveniently attached to the 5'-hydroxyl of an nucleic acid at the conclusion of solid phase synthesis by way of dyes derivatized with a phosphoramidite moiety (see, for example, Woo et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,231,191; and Hobbs, Jr., U.S. Pat. No. 4,997,928).

More specifically, there are many linking moieties and methodologies for attaching groups to the 5'- or 3'-termini of nucleic acids, as exemplified by the following references: Eckstein, editor, *Nucleic acids and Analogues: A Practical Approach* (IRL Press, Oxford, 1991); Zuckerman et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 15: 5305-5321 (1987) (3'-thiol group on nucleic acid); Sharma et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 19: 3019 (1991) (3'-sulphydryl); Giusti et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, 2: 223-227 (1993) and Fung et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,757,141 (5'-phosphoamino group via Amino-link TM II available from P.E. Biosystems, Calif.) Stabinsky, U.S. Pat. No. 4,739,044 (3-aminoalkylphosphoryl group); Agrawal et al., *Tetrahedron Letters*, 31: 1543-1546 (1990) (attachment via phosphoramidate linkages); Sproat et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 15: 4837 (1987) (5-mercaptop group); Nelson et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 17: 7187-7194 (1989) (3'-amino group), and the like.

Means of detecting fluorescent labels are well known to those of skill in the art. Thus, for example, fluorescent labels can be detected by exciting the fluorophore with the appropriate wavelength of light and detecting the resulting fluorescence. The fluorescence can be detected visually, by means of photographic film, by the use of electronic detectors such as charge coupled devices (CCDs) or photomultipliers and the like. Similarly, enzymatic labels may be detected by providing the appropriate substrates for the enzyme and detecting the resulting reaction product.

Synthesis

The compounds of the invention are synthesized by an appropriate combination of generally well-known synthetic methods. Techniques useful in synthesizing the compounds of the invention are both readily apparent and accessible to those of skill in the relevant art. The discussion below is offered to illustrate certain of the diverse methods available for use in assembling the compounds of the invention, it is not intended to define the scope of reactions or reaction sequences that are useful in preparing the compounds of the present invention.

One method of synthesizing compounds of the invention is set forth in Scheme 1 (FIG. 1). Scheme 1 is a generalized schematic of one synthetic scheme useful with the BHQs of the invention. An azido derivative of a dye is coupled to an aryl derivative 1, at pH 9, forming the corresponding diazo adduct 2. The diol 2 is monoprotected with a group, such as the dimethoxytrityl group to form compound 3, having one free hydroxyl moiety. Compound 3 is converted to phosphoramidite 4 by contacting it with an agent, such as 2-cyanoethyl diisopropylchlorophosphoramidite in the presence of a mildly acidic activator, such as tetrazole. The phosphoramidite is coupled to a hydroxyl-bearing controlled pore glass support and subsequently oxidized to the corresponding phosphotriester derivative, thereby forming an appropriate

US 7,582,432 B2

25

starting material, 5, for the synthesis of an array of nucleic acids derivatized at the 3'-position with a BHQ.

The above-recited synthetic scheme is intended to be exemplary of one embodiment of the invention, those of skill in the art will recognize that many other synthetic strategies employing reactive BHQ analogues are available. For example, by a slight modification of the method above, a derivative appropriate for modification of a nucleic acid at the 5'-position is easily accessible. In an alternative scheme, compound 4, is not tethered to a solid support, but is added as the final subunit during nucleic acid synthesis, to prepare a nucleic acid with a 5'-BHQ group.

The above-described synthetic scheme can be practiced using a variety of BHQ compounds of the invention, such as those set forth in FIG. 2. FIG. 2 provides the structures of three exemplary BHQs, BH1 (6), BH2 (10) and BH3 (14).

FIG. 3 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (8) of BH1 (7), and a derivative of BH1, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (9). Both the phosphoramidite and the CPG conjugate can be prepared by art-recognized methods, including those set forth herein. Similarly, FIG. 4 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (12) of BH2 (11), and a derivative of BH2, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (13) and FIG. 5 sets forth the structures of a phosphoramidite (16) of BH1 (15), and a derivative of BH3, which is tethered to a controlled pore glass support (17).

In a still further modification of the scheme of FIG. 1, compound 4 is coupled to a nucleic acid intermediate between the 3'- and 5'-positions, the DMT group is removed using standard nucleic acid chemistry, or a modification thereof, and a nucleic acid subunit is tethered to the deprotected primary hydroxyl group as though the hydroxyl group were the 5'-hydroxyl of a preceding nucleic acid subunit, thereby providing a nucleic acid having a BHQ moiety at an internal position.

Assays and BHQ-Bearing Probes

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a BHQ that is tethered to another molecule, such as a probe molecule and assays using these probes.

Assays

The following discussion is generally relevant to the assays described herein. This discussion is intended to illustrate the invention by reference to certain preferred embodiments and should not be interpreted as limiting the scope of probes and assay types in which the compounds of the invention find use. Other assay formats utilizing the compounds of the invention will be apparent to those of skill in the art.

In general, to determine the concentration of a target molecule, such as, for example, a nucleic acid, it is preferable to first obtain reference data in which constant amounts of probe and nucleic acid ligand are contacted with varying amounts of target. The fluorescence emission of each of the reference mixtures is used to derive a graph or table in which target concentration is compared to fluorescence emission. For example, a probe that: a) hybridizes to a target-free nucleic acid ligand; and b) has a stem-loop architecture with the 5' and 3' termini being the sites of fluorescent group and BHQ labeling, can be used to obtain such reference data. Such a probe gives a characteristic emission profile in which the fluorescence emission decreases as the target concentration increases in the presence of a constant amount of probe and nucleic acid ligand. Then, a test mixture with an unknown amount of target is contacted with the same amount of first nucleic acid ligand and second probe, and the fluorescence emission is determined. The value of the fluorescence emis-

26

sion is then compared with the reference data to obtain the concentration of the target in the test mixture.

Multiplex Analyses

In another preferred embodiment, the quenchers of the invention are utilized as a component of one or more probes used in a multiplex assay for detecting one or more species in a mixture.

Probes that include the BHQs of the invention are particularly useful in performing multiplex-type analyses and assays. In a typical multiplex analysis, two or more distinct species (or regions of one or more species) are detected using two or more probes, wherein each of the probes is labeled with a different fluorophore. Preferred species used in multiplex analyses relying on donor-acceptor energy transfer meet at least two criteria: the fluorescent species is bright and spectrally well-resolved; and the energy transfer between the fluorescent species and the quencher is efficient.

Thus, in a further embodiment, the invention provides a mixture comprising at least a first carrier molecule and a second carrier molecule. The first carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a first quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof. At least two of the radicals are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond. The mixture also includes a second carrier molecule. The second carrier molecule has covalently bound thereto a second quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three radicals selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of the radicals are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond.

The BHQs of the invention allow for the design of multiplex assays in which more than one quencher structure is used in the assay. A number of different multiplex assays using the BHQs of the invention will be apparent to one of skill in the art. In one exemplary assay, each of the at least two distinct BHQ quenchers is used to quench energy derived from one or more identical fluorophore. Alternatively, an assay can be practiced in which each distinct BHQ quenches energy derived from a distinct fluorophore to which the BHQ is "matched." The fluorophores can be bound to the same molecule as the BHQ or to a different molecule. Moreover, similar to the BHQs and the fluorophores, the carrier molecules of use in a particular assay system can be the same or different.

In addition to the mixtures described above, the present invention also provides a method for detecting or quantifying a particular molecular species. The method includes: (a) contacting the species with a mixture such as that described above; and (b) detecting a change in a fluorescent property of one or more component of the mixture, the molecular species or a combination thereof, thereby detecting or quantifying the molecular species.

Because of the ready availability of BHQs of the invention having different absorbance characteristics, the compounds of the invention are particularly well suited for use in multiplex applications. Access to BHQs having a range of absorbance characteristics allows for the design of donor-acceptor energy transfer probes in which the acceptor emission properties and the BHQ absorbance properties are substantially matched, thereby providing a useful level of spectral overlap (see, for example, FIG. 7).

The simultaneous use of two or more probes using donor-acceptor energy transfer is known in the art. For example, multiplex assays using nucleic acid probes with different sequence specificities have been described. Fluorescent probes have been used to determine whether an individual is

US 7,582,432 B2

27

homozygous wild-type, homozygous mutant or heterozygous for a particular mutation. For example, using one quenched-fluorescein molecular beacon that recognizes the wild-type sequence and another rhodamine-quenched molecular beacon that recognizes a mutant allele, it is possible to genotype individuals for the β -chemokine receptor (Kostrikis et al. *Science* 279:1228-1229 (1998)). The presence of only a fluorescein signal indicates that the individual is wild-type, and the presence of rhodamine signal only indicates that the individual is a homozygous mutant. The presence of both rhodamine and fluorescein signal is diagnostic of a heterozygote. Tyagi et al. *Nature Biotechnology* 16: 49-53 (1998) have described the simultaneous use of four differently labeled molecular beacons for allele discrimination, and Lee et al., *Bio Techniques* 27: 342-349 (1999) have described seven color homogenous detection of six PCR products.

The quenchers of the present invention can be used in multiplex assays designed to detect and/or quantify substantially any species, including, for example, whole cells, viruses, proteins (e.g., enzymes, antibodies, receptors), glycoproteins, lipoproteins, subcellular particles, organisms (e.g., *Salmonella*), nucleic acids (e.g., DNA, RNA, and analogues thereof), polysaccharides, lipopolysaccharides, lipids, fatty acids, non-biological polymers and small molecules (e.g., toxins, drugs, pesticides, metabolites, hormones, alkaloids, steroids).

Probes

The invention provides probes including BHQ moieties conjugated to, for example, a target species (e.g., receptor, enzyme, etc.) a ligand for a target species (e.g., nucleic acid, peptide, etc.), a small molecule (e.g., drug, pesticide, etc.), and the like. The probes can be used for in vitro and in vivo applications.

A particularly unexpected and surprising advantage of the BHQs is their ability to quench excited state energy from fluorophores attached to carrier molecules (e.g., nucleic acids) without the need to design secondary structure forming components (e.g., hairpins, loops, etc.) into the carrier molecule to bring the fluorophore and the BHQ into proximity. The energy transfer pairs of probes presently used in the art typically require the introduction of some form of secondary structure in order to function properly, thereby seriously constraining the identity of species that can be used as carrier molecules. Thus, the probes of the present invention can be of simple design, can be produced more inexpensively and used to probe a much greater array of systems in much less time than current art-recognized probes.

Yet another unexpected property of the BHQs of the invention is their robustness under a variety of synthetic conditions used to attach the BHQs to a carrier molecule. For example, many of the BHQs of the invention survive the conditions necessary for automated synthesis of nucleic acids without undergoing any substantial degree of degradation or alteration. In contrast, many of the art-recognized quenchers presently in use require the use of special conditions to assemble the carrier molecule to which they are attached, or they have to be attached after the completion of the carrier molecule synthesis. The additional complexity of the synthesis of a probe increases both the duration of the synthesis and its cost.

Small Molecule Probes

The BHQs of the invention can be used as components of small molecule probes. In a preferred design, a small molecule probe includes a fluorophore or fluorophore precursor and a BHQ. In an exemplary embodiment, an agent, such as an enzyme cleaves the BHQ, the fluorophore or both from the

28

small molecule generating fluorescence in the system under investigation (see, for example, Zlokarnik et al., *Science* 279: 84-88 (1998)).

Nucleic Acid Probes

The dark quenchers of the invention are useful in conjunction with nucleic-acid probes and they can be used as components of detection agents in a variety of DNA amplification/quantification strategies including, for example, 5'-nuclease assay, Strand Displacement Amplification (SDA), Nucleic Acid Sequence-Based Amplification (NASBA), Rolling Circle Amplification (RCA), as well as for direct detection of targets in solution phase or solid phase (e.g., array) assays. Furthermore, the BHQ-derivatized nucleic acids can be used in probes of substantially any format, including, for example, format selected from molecular beacons, Scorpion probesTM, Sunrise probesTM, conformationally assisted probes, light up probes, Invader Detection probes, and TaqManTM probes. See, for example, Cardullo, R., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 85:8790-8794 (1988); Dexter, D. L., *J. Chem. Physics*, 21:836-850 (1953); Hochstrasser, R. A., et al., *Biophysical Chemistry*, 45:133-141 (1992); Selvin, P., *Methods in Enzymology*, 246:300-334 (1995); Steinberg, I., *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 40:83-114 (1971); Stryer, L., *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 47:819-846 (1978); Wang, G., et al., *Tetrahedron Letters*, 31:6493-6496 (1990); Wang, Y., et al., *Anal. Chem.*, 67:1197-1203 (1995); Debouck, C., et al., in supplement to *nature genetics*, 21:48-50 (1999); Rehman, F. N., et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 27:649-655 (1999); Cooper, J. P., et al., *Biochemistry*, 29:9261-9268 (1990); Gibson, E. M., et al., *Genome Methods*, 6:995-1001 (1996); Hochstrasser, R. A., et al., *Biophysical Chemistry*, 45:133-141 (1992); Holland, P. M., et al., *Proc Natl. Acad. Sci USA*, 88:7276-7289 (1991); Lee, L. G., et al., *Nucleic Acids Resch.*, 21:3761-3766 (1993); Livak, K. J., et al., *PCR Methods and Applications*, Cold Spring Harbor Press (1995); Vámosi, G., et al., *Biophysical Journal*, 71:972-994 (1996); Wittwer, C. T., et al., *Biotechniques*, 22:176-181 (1997); Wittwer, C. T., et al., *Biotechniques*, 22:130-38 (1997); Giesendorf, B. A. J., et al., *Clinical Chemistry*, 44:482-486 (1998); Kostrikis, L. G., et al., *Science*, 279:1228-1229 (1998); Matsuo, T., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 1379:178-184 (1998); Piatek, A. S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 16:359-363 (1998); Schofield, P., et al., *Appl. Environ. Microbiology*, 63:1143-1147 (1997); Tyagi S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 16:49-53 (1998); Tyagi, S., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 14:303-308 (1996); Nazarenko, I. A., et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 25:2516-2521 (1997); Uehara, H., et al., *Biotechniques*, 26:552-558 (1999); D. Whitcombe, et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 17:804-807 (1999); Lyamichev, V., et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 17:292 (1999); Daubendiek, et al., *Nature Biotechnology*, 15:273-277 (1997); Lizardi, P. M., et al., *Nature Genetics*, 19:225-232 (1998); Walker, G., et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 20:1691-1696 (1992); Walker, G. T., et al., *Clinical Chemistry*, 42:9-13 (1996); and Compton, J., *Nature*, 350:91-92 (1991).

Thus, in a further aspect, the present invention provides a method for detecting a nucleic acid target sequence. The method includes: (a) contacting the target sequence with a detector nucleic acid; (b) hybridizing the target binding sequence to the target sequence, thereby altering the conformation of the detector nucleic acid, causing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (c) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the nucleic acid target sequence.

In the methods described herein, unless otherwise noted, a preferred detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence. The binding sequence has linked thereto: i) a fluorophore; and ii) a BHQ of the invention.

US 7,582,432 B2

29

Moreover, prior to its hybridization to a complementary sequence, the detector nucleic acid is preferably in a conformation that allows donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the BHQ when the fluorophore is excited. Furthermore, in each of the methods described in this section, a change in fluorescence is detected as an indication of the presence of the target sequence. The change in fluorescence is preferably detected in-real time.

Presently preferred nucleic acid probes do not require the carrier molecule to adopt a secondary structure for the probe to function.

In this method, and unless otherwise noted, the other methods described in this section, the detector nucleic acid can assume substantially any intramolecularly associated secondary structure, but this structure is preferably a member selected from hairpins, stem-loop structures, pseudoknots, triple helices and conformationally assisted structures. Moreover, the intramolecularly base-paired secondary structure preferably comprises a portion of the target binding sequence.

In another aspect, the invention provides a method for detecting amplification of a target sequence. The method includes the use of an amplification reaction including the following steps: (a) hybridizing the target sequence and a detector nucleic acid. The detector nucleic acid includes a single-stranded target binding sequence and an intramolecularly associated secondary structure 5' to the target binding sequence. At least a portion of the detector sequence forms a single stranded tail which is available for hybridization to the target sequence; (b) extending the hybridized detector nucleic acid on the target sequence with a polymerase to produce a detector nucleic acid extension product and separating the detector nucleic acid extension product from the target sequence; (c) hybridizing a primer to the detector nucleic acid extension product and extending the primer with the polymerase, thereby linearizing the intramolecularly associated secondary structure and producing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and (d) detecting the change in the fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting the target sequence.

In yet a further aspect, the invention provides a method of ascertaining whether a first nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid hybridize. In this method, the first nucleic acid includes a BHQ according to the invention. The method includes: (a) contacting the first nucleic acid with the second nucleic acid; (b) detecting an alteration in a fluorescent property of a member selected from the first nucleic acid, the second nucleic acid and a combination thereof, thereby ascertaining whether the hybridization occurs.

A probe bearing both a BHQ and a fluorophore can be used or, alternatively, one or more of the nucleic acids can be singly labeled with a BHQ or fluorophore. When a nucleic acid singly labeled with a BHQ is the probe, the interaction between the first and second nucleic acids can be detected by observing the interaction between the BHQ and the nucleic acid or, more preferably, the quenching by the BHQ of the fluorescence of a fluorophore attached to the second nucleic acid.

In addition to their general utility in probes designed to investigate nucleic acid amplification, detection and quantification, the present dark quenchers can be used in substantially any nucleic acid probe format now known or later discovered. For example, the dark quenchers of the invention can be incorporated into probe motifs, such as Taqman™ probes (Held et al., *Genome Res.* 6: 986-994 (1996), Holland et al., *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 7276-7280 (1991), Lee et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 21: 3761-3766 (1993)), molecular beacons (Tyagi et al., *Nature Biotechnology* 14:303-308

30

(1996), Jayasena et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,989,823, issued Nov. 23, 1999)) scorpion probes (Whitcomb et al., *Nature Biotechnology* 17: 804-807 (1999)), sunrise probes (Nazarenko et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 25: 2516-2521 (1997)), conformationally assisted probes (Cook, R., copending and commonly assigned U.S. Provisional Application 60/138,376, filed Jun. 9, 1999), peptide nucleic acid (PNA)-based light up probes (Kubista et al., WO 97/45539, December 1997), double-strand specific DNA dyes (Higuchi et al, *Bio/Technology* 10: 413-417 (1992), Wittwer et al, *BioTechniques* 22: 130-138 (1997)) and the like. These and other probe motifs with which the present quenchers can be used are reviewed in NONISOTOPIC DNA PROBE TECHNIQUES, Academic Press, Inc. 1992.

The nucleic acids for use in the probes of the invention can be any suitable size, and are preferably in the range of from about 10 to about 100 nucleotides, more preferably from about 10 to about 80 nucleotides and more preferably still, from about 20 to about 40 nucleotides. The precise sequence and length of a nucleic acid probe of the invention depends in part on the nature of the target polynucleotide to which it binds. The binding location and length may be varied to achieve appropriate annealing and melting properties for a particular embodiment. Guidance for making such design choices can be found in many art-recognized references.

Preferably, the 3'-terminal nucleotide of the nucleic acid probe is blocked or rendered incapable of extension by a nucleic acid polymerase. Such blocking is conveniently carried out by the attachment of a donor or acceptor moiety to the terminal 3'-position of the nucleic acid probe, either directly or by a linking moiety.

The nucleic acid can comprise DNA, RNA or chimeric mixtures or derivatives or modified versions thereof. Both the probe and target nucleic acid can be present as a single strand, duplex, triplex, etc. Moreover, the nucleic acid can be modified at the base moiety, sugar moiety, or phosphate backbone with other groups such as radioactive labels, minor groove binders, intercalating agents, donor and/or acceptor moieties and the like.

For example, the nucleic acid can comprise at least one modified base moiety which is selected from the group including, but not limited to, 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-iodouracil, hypoxanthine, xanthine, 4-acetylcytosine, 5-(carboxyhydroxymethyl) uracil, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thiouridine, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyluracil, dihydrouracil, beta-D-galactosylqueosine, inosine, N⁶-isopentenyladenine, 1-methylguanine, 1-methylinosine, 2,2-dimethylguanine, 2-methyladenine, 2-methylguanine, 3-methylcytosine, 5-methylcytosine, N⁶-adenine, 7-methylguanine, 5-methylaminomethyluracil, 5-methoxyminomethyl-2-thiouracil, beta-D-mannosylqueosine, 5'-methoxycarboxymethyluracil, 5-methoxyuracil, 2-methylthio-N⁶-isopentenyladenine, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), wybutoxosine, pseudouracil, queosine, 2-thiocytosine, 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 2-thiouracil, 4-thiouracil, 5-methyluracil, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid methyl ester, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 3-(3-amino-3-N-2-carboxypropyl) uracil, (acp3)w, nitroindole, and 2,6-diaminopurine.

In another embodiment, the nucleic acid comprises at least one modified sugar moiety selected from the group including, but not limited to, arabinose, 2-fluoroarabinose, xylulose, and hexose.

In yet another embodiment, the nucleic acid comprises at least one modified phosphate backbone selected from the group including, but not limited to, a peptide nucleic acid hybrid, a phosphorothioate, a phosphorodithioate, a phos-

US 7,582,432 B2

31

phoramidothioate, a phosphoramidate, a phosphordiamidate, a methylphosphonate, an alkyl phosphotriester, and a formacetal or analog thereof.

Phosphodiester linked nucleic acids of the invention can be synthesized by standard methods known in the art, e.g. by use of an automated DNA synthesizer (such as are commercially available from P.E. Biosystems, etc.) using commercially available amidite chemistries. Nucleic acids bearing modified phosphodiester linking groups can be synthesized by methods known in the art. For example, phosphorothioate nucleic acids may be synthesized by the method of Stein et al. (*Nucl. Acids Res.* 16:3209 (1988)), methylphosphonate nucleic acids can be prepared by use of controlled pore glass polymer supports (Sarin et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 85:7448-7451 (1988)). Other methods of synthesizing both phosphodiester- and modified phosphodiester-linked nucleic acids will be apparent to those of skill in the art.

Nucleic acid probes of the invention can be synthesized by a number of approaches, e.g., Ozaki et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 20: 5205-5214 (1992); Agrawal et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 18: 5419-5423 (1990); or the like. The nucleic acid probes of the invention are conveniently synthesized on an automated DNA synthesizer, e.g., a P.E. Biosystems, Inc. (Foster City, Calif.) model 392 or 394 DNA/RNA Synthesizer, using standard chemistries, such as phosphoramidite chemistry (see, for example, disclosed in the following references, Beaucage et al., *Tetrahedron*, 48: 2223-2311 (1992); Molko et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,980,460; Koster et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,725,677; Caruthers et al., U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,415,732; 4,458,066; and 4,973,679). Alternative chemistries resulting in non-natural backbone groups, such as phosphorothioate, phosphoramidate, and the like, can also be employed.

When the nucleic acids are synthesized utilizing an automated nucleic acid synthesizer, the donor and acceptor moieties are preferably introduced during automated synthesis. Alternatively, one or more of these moieties can be introduced either before or after the automated synthesis procedure has commenced. For example, donor and/or acceptor groups can be introduced at the 3'-terminus using a solid support modified with the desired group(s). Additionally, donor and/or acceptor groups can be introduced at the 5'-terminus by, for example a derivative of the group that includes a phosphoramidite. In another exemplary embodiment, one or more of the donor and/or acceptor groups is introduced after the automated synthesis is complete.

In the dual labeled probes, the donor moiety is preferably separated from the BHQ by at least about 10 nucleotides, and more preferably by at least about 15 nucleotides. The donor moiety is preferably attached to either the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotides of the probe. The BHQ moiety is also preferably attached to either the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotides of the probe. More preferably, the donor and acceptor moieties are attached to the 3'- and 5'- or 5'- and 3'-terminal nucleotides of the probe, respectively, although internal placement is also useful.

Once the desired nucleic acid is synthesized, it is preferably cleaved from the solid support on which it was synthesized and treated, by methods known in the art, to remove any protecting groups present (e.g., 60° C., 5 h, concentrated ammonia). In those embodiments in which a base-sensitive group is attached to the nucleic acids (e.g., TAMRA), the deprotection will preferably use milder conditions (e.g., butylamine:water 1:3, 8 hours, 70° C.). Deprotection under these conditions is facilitated by the use of quick deprotect amidites (e.g., dC-acetyl, dG-dmf).

32

Following cleavage from the support and deprotection, the nucleic acid is purified by any method known in the art, including chromatography, extraction and gel purification. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleic acid is purified using HPLC. The concentration and purity of the isolated nucleic acid is preferably determined by measuring the optical density at 260 nm in a spectrophotometer.

Peptide Probes

Peptides, proteins and peptide nucleic acids that are labeled with a fluorophore and a quencher of the invention can be used in both *in vivo* and *in vitro* enzymatic assays.

Thus, in another aspect, the present invention provides a method for determining whether a sample contains an enzyme. The method comprises: (a) contacting the sample with a peptide construct; (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the presence of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property.

Peptide constructs useful in practicing the invention include those with the following features: i) a fluorophore; ii) a BHQ of the invention; and iii) a cleavage or assembly recognition site for the enzyme. Moreover, the peptide construct is preferably of a length and orientation and in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between the fluorophore and the BHQ when the fluorophore is excited.

When the probe is used to detect an enzyme, such as a degradative enzyme (e.g., protease), and a degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer that is lower than an expected amount is observed, this is generally indicative of the presence of an enzyme. The degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample can be determined, for example, as a function of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety, the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety, the ratio of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety to the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety or the excitation state lifetime of the donor moiety.

The assay also is useful for determining the amount of enzyme in a sample by determining the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer at a first and second time after contact between the enzyme and the tandem construct, and determining the difference in the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer. The difference in the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer reflects the amount of enzyme in the sample.

The assay methods also can also be used to determine whether a compound alters the activity of an enzyme, i.e., screening assays. Thus, in a further aspect, the invention provides methods of determining the amount of activity of an enzyme in a sample from an organism. The method includes: (a) contacting a sample comprising the enzyme and the compound with a peptide construct comprising (b) exciting the fluorophore; and (c) determining a fluorescence property of the sample, wherein the activity of the enzyme in the sample results in a change in the fluorescence property. Peptide constructs useful in this aspect of the invention are substantially similar to those described immediately above.

In a preferred embodiment, the amount of enzyme activity in the sample is determined as a function of the degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample and the amount of activity in the sample is compared with a standard activity for the same amount of the enzyme. A difference between the amount of enzyme activity in the sample and the standard activity indicates that the compound alters the activity of the enzyme.

Representative enzymes with which the present invention can be practiced include, for example, trypsin, enterokinase, HIV-1 protease, prohormone convertase, interleukin-1b-converting enzyme, adenovirus endopeptidase, cytomegalovirus

US 7,582,432 B2

33

assemblin, leishmanolysin, β -secretase for amyloid precursor protein, thrombin, renin, angiotensin-converting enzyme, cathepsin-D and a kininogenase, and proteases in general.

Proteases play essential roles in many disease processes such as Alzheimer's, hypertension, inflammation, apoptosis, and AIDS. Compounds that block or enhance their activity have potential as therapeutic agents. Because the normal substrates of peptidases are linear peptides and because established procedures exist for making non-peptidic analogs, compounds that affect the activity of proteases are natural subjects of combinatorial chemistry. Screening compounds produced by combinatorial chemistry requires convenient enzymatic assays.

The most convenient assays for proteases are based on donor-acceptor energy transfer from a donor fluorophore to a quencher placed at opposite ends of a short peptide chain containing the potential cleavage site (see, Knight C. G., *Methods in Enzymol.* 248:18-34 (1995)). Proteolysis separates the fluorophore and quencher, resulting in increased intensity in the emission of the donor fluorophore. Existing protease assays use short peptide substrates incorporating unnatural chromophoric amino acids, assembled by solid phase peptide synthesis.

Assays of the invention are also useful for determining and characterizing substrate cleavage sequences of proteases or for identifying proteases, such as orphan proteases. In one embodiment the method involves the replacement of a defined linker moiety amino acid sequence with one that contains a randomized selection of amino acids. A library of fluorescent BHQ-bearing probes, wherein the fluorophore and the BHQ are linked by a randomized peptide linker moiety can be generated using recombinant engineering techniques or synthetic chemistry techniques. Screening the members of the library can be accomplished by measuring a signal related to cleavage, such as donor-acceptor energy transfer, after contacting the cleavage enzyme with each of the library members of the tandem fluorescent peptide construct. A degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer that is lower than an expected amount indicates the presence of a linker sequence that is cleaved by the enzyme. The degree of donor-acceptor energy transfer in the sample can be determined, for example, as a function of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety, the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor donor moiety, or the ratio of the amount of fluorescence from the donor moiety to the amount of fluorescence from the acceptor moiety or the excitation state lifetime of the donor moiety.

In the tandem constructs of the invention, the donor and acceptor moieties are connected through a linker moiety. The linker moiety, preferably, includes a peptide moiety, but can be or can include another organic molecular moiety, as well. In a preferred embodiment, the linker moiety includes a cleavage recognition site specific for an enzyme or other cleavage agent of interest. A cleavage site in the linker moiety is useful because when a tandem construct is mixed with the cleavage agent, the linker is a substrate for cleavage by the cleavage agent. Rupture of the linker moiety results in separation of the fluorophore and the quencher of the invention. The separation is measurable as a change in donor-acceptor energy transfer. Alternatively, peptide assembly can be detected by an increase in donor-acceptor energy transfer between a peptide fragment bearing a BHQ and a peptide fragment bearing a donor moiety.

When the cleavage agent of interest is a protease, the linker generally includes a peptide containing a cleavage recognition sequence for the protease. A cleavage recognition sequence for a protease is a specific amino acid sequence

34

recognized by the protease during proteolytic cleavage. Many protease cleavage sites are known in the art, and these and other cleavage sites can be included in the linker moiety. See, e.g., Matayoshi et al. *Science* 247: 954 (1990); Dunn et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 241: 254 (1994); Seidah et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 175 (1994); Thornberry, *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 615 (1994); Weber et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 595 (1994); Smith et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 412 (1994); Bouvier et al. *Meth. Enzymol.* 248: 614 (1995), Hardy et al., in AMYLOID PROTEIN PRECURSOR IN DEVELOPMENT, AGING, AND ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE, ed. Masters et al. pp. 190-198(1994).

Solid Support Immobilized BHQ Analogues

The BHQs of the invention can be immobilized on substantially any polymer, biomolecule, and solid or semi-solid material having any useful configuration. Moreover, any conjugate comprising one or more BHQs can be similarly immobilized. When the support is a solid or semi-solid, examples of preferred types of supports for immobilization of the nucleic acid probe include, but are not limited to, controlled pore glass, glass plates, polystyrene, avidin coated polystyrene beads, cellulose, nylon, acrylamide gel and activated dextran. These solid supports are preferred because of their chemical stability, ease of functionalization and well-defined surface area. Solid supports such as, controlled pore glass (CPG, 500 Å, 1000 Å) and non-swelling high cross-linked polystyrene (1000 Å) are particularly preferred.

According to the present invention, the surface of a solid support is functionalized with a quencher of the invention or a species including a quencher of the invention. For clarity of illustration, the following discussion focuses on attaching a reactive BHQ to a solid support. The following discussion is also broadly relevant to attaching a species that includes within its structure a reactive BHQ to a solid support, and the attachment of such species and reactive BHQ analogues to other molecules and structures.

The BHQs are preferably attached to a solid support by forming a bond between a reactive group on the BHQ and a reactive group on the surface of the solid support or a linker attached to the solid support, thereby derivatizing the solid support with one or more BHQ analogues. The bond between the solid support and the BHQ is preferably a covalent bond, although ionic, dative and other such bonds are useful as well. Reactive groups which can be used in practicing the present invention are discussed in detail above and include, for example, amines, hydroxyl groups, carboxylic acids, carboxylic acid derivatives, alkenes, sulphydryls, siloxanes, etc.

A large number of solid supports appropriate for practicing the present invention are available commercially and include, for example, peptide synthesis resins, both with and without attached amino acids and/or peptides (e.g., alkoxybenzyl alcohol resin, aminomethyl resin, aminopolystyrene resin, benzhydrylamine resin, etc. (Bachem)), functionalized controlled pore glass (BioSearch Technologies, Inc.), ion exchange media (Aldrich), functionalized membranes (e.g., —COOH membranes; Asahi Chemical Co., Asahi Glass Co., and Tokuyama Soda Co.), and the like.

Moreover, for applications in which an appropriate solid support is not commercially available, a wide variety of reaction types are available for the functionalization of a solid support surface. For example, supports constructed of a plastic such as polypropylene, can be surface derivatized by chromic acid oxidation, and subsequently converted to hydroxylated or aminomethylated surfaces. The functionalized support is then reacted with a BHQ of complementary reactivity, such as a BHQ active ester, acid chloride or sulfonate ester, for example. Supports made from highly crosslinked divinylbenzene can be surface derivatized by chloromethylation.

US 7,582,432 B2

35

tion and subsequent functional group manipulation. Additionally, functionalized substrates can be made from etched, reduced polytetrafluoroethylene.

When the support is constructed of a siliceous material such as glass, the surface can be derivatized by reacting the surface Si—OH, SiO—H, and/or Si—Si groups with a functionalizing reagent.

In a preferred embodiment, wherein the substrates are made from glass, the covalent bonding of the reactive group to the glass surface is achieved by conversion of groups on the substrate's surface by a silicon-modifying reagent such as:



where R^a is an alkyl group, such as methyl or ethyl, R^b is a linking group between silicon and X^a, and X^a is a reactive group or a protected reactive group. Silane derivatives having halogens or other leaving groups beside the displayed alkoxy groups are also useful in the present invention.

In another preferred embodiment, the reagent used to functionalize the solid support provides for more than one reactive group per each reagent molecule. Using reagents, such as the compound below, each reactive site on the substrate surface is, in essence, "amplified" to two or more functional groups:



where R^a is an alkyl group (e.g., methyl, ethyl), R^b is a linking group between silicon and X^a, X^a is a reactive group or a protected reactive group and n is an integer between 2 and 50, and more preferably between 2 and 20. The amplification of a BHQ by its attachment to a silicon-containing substrate is intended to be exemplary of the general concept of BHQ amplification. This amplification strategy is equally applicable to other aspects of the invention in which a BHQ analogue is attached to another molecule or solid support.

A number of siloxane functionalizing reagents can be used, for example:

1. Hydroxyalkyl siloxanes (Silylate surface, functionalize with diborane, and H₂O₂ to oxidize to the alcohol)
 - a. allyl trichlorosilane → 3-hydroxypropyl
 - b. 7-oct-1-enyl trichlorchlorosilane → 8-hydroxyoctyl
2. Diol(dihydroxyalkyl) siloxanes (silylate surface and hydrolyze to diol)a. (glycidyl trimethoxysilane → (2, 3-dihydroxypropoxyloxy)propyl
3. Aminoalkyl siloxanes (amines requiring no intermediate functionalizing step)
 - a. 3-aminopropyl trimethoxysilane → aminopropyl
4. Dimeric secondary aminoalkyl siloxanes
 - a. bis(3-trimethoxysilylpropyl)amine → bis(silyloxypropyl)amine.

It will be apparent to those of skill in the art that an array of similarly useful functionalizing chemistries is available when support components other than siloxanes are used. Thus, for example alkyl thiols, functionalized as discussed above in the context of siloxane-modifying reagents, can be attached to metal films and subsequently reacted with a BHQ to produce the immobilized compound of the invention.

R groups of use for R^b in the above described embodiments of the present invention include, but are not limited to, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, substituted aryl, substituted arylalkyl, acyl, halogen, hydroxy, amino, alkylamino, acylamino, alkoxy, acyloxy, aryloxy, aryloxyalkyl, mercapto, saturated cyclic hydrocarbon, unsaturated cyclic hydrocarbon, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, substituted heteroaryl, substituted heteroarylalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and heterocyclicalkyl groups and combinations thereof.

36

Nucleic Acid Capture Probes

In one embodiment, an immobilized nucleic acid comprising a BHQ is used as a capture probe. The nucleic acid probe can be attached directly to a solid support, for example by attachment of the 3'- or 5'-terminal nucleotide of the probe to the solid support. More preferably, however, the probe is attached to the solid support by a linker (i.e., spacer arm, supra). The linker serves to distance the probe from the solid support. The linker is most preferably from about 5 to about 50 atoms in length, more preferably from about 10 to about 50 atoms in length.

In yet another preferred embodiment, the solid support is also used as the synthesis support in preparing the probe. The length and chemical stability of the linker between the solid support and the first 3'-unit of nucleic acid play an important role in efficient synthesis and hybridization of support bound nucleic acids. The linker arm should be sufficiently long so that a high yield (>97%) can be achieved during automated synthesis. The required length of the linker will depend on the particular solid support used. For example, a six atom linker is generally sufficient to achieve a >97% yield during automated synthesis of nucleic acids when high cross-linked polystyrene is used as the solid support. The linker arm is preferably at least 20 atoms long in order to attain a high yield (>97%) during automated synthesis when CPG is used as the solid support.

Hybridization of a probe immobilized on a solid support generally requires that the probe be separated from the solid support by at least 30 atoms, more preferably at least 50 atoms. In order to achieve this separation, the linker generally includes a spacer positioned between the linker and the 3'-terminus. For nucleic acid synthesis, the linker arm is usually attached to the 3'-OH of the 3'-terminus by an ester linkage which can be cleaved with basic reagents to free the nucleic acid from the solid support.

A wide variety of linkers are known in the art, which may be used to attach the nucleic acid probe to the solid support. The linker may be formed of any compound, which does not significantly interfere with the hybridization of the target sequence to the probe attached to the solid support. The linker may be formed of, for example, a homopolymeric nucleic acid, which can be readily added on to the linker by automated synthesis. Alternatively, polymers such as functionalized polyethylene glycol can be used as the linker. Such polymers are presently preferred over homopolymeric nucleic acids because they do not significantly interfere with the hybridization of probe to the target nucleic acid. Polyethylene glycol is particularly preferred because it is commercially available, soluble in both organic and aqueous media, easy to functionalize, and completely stable under nucleic acid synthesis and post-synthesis conditions.

The linkages between the solid support, the linker and the probe are preferably not cleaved during synthesis or removal of base protecting groups under basic conditions at high temperature. These linkages can, however, be selected from groups that are cleavable under a variety of conditions. Examples of presently preferred linkages include carbamate, ester and amide linkages.

Acrylamide-Immobilized Probes

In another preferred embodiment, a species is within a matrix, such as an acrylamide matrix and the species bears a BHQ, or the presence of the immobilized species is ascertained using a probe bearing a BHQ. In a preferred embodiment, the immobilization is accomplished in conjunction with the "acrydite" process invented and commercialized by Mosaic Technologies (Cambridge, Mass., see, Rehman et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 27: 649-655 (1999)). The acrydite

US 7,582,432 B2

37

method allows immobilization of alkene labeled capture probes within a polymerized polyacrylamide network. When target mixes are run past the immobilized probe band under electrophoresis conditions, the target nucleic acid is captured substantially quantitatively. However, detection of this event currently requires a second probe. In one embodiment, probes bearing a BHQ, and/or a fluorophore, are immobilized in an acrylamide matrix and subsequently contacted with the target mix. By using fluorescent probes as capture probes, signals from target mixes can be directly detected in real time.

Microarrays

The present invention also provides microarrays including immobilized BHQs and compounds (e.g., peptides, nucleic acids, bioactive agents, etc.) functionalized with BHQs. Moreover, the invention provides methods of interrogating microarrays using probes that are functionalized with BHQs. The immobilized species and the probes are selected from substantially any type of molecule, including, but not limited to, small molecules, peptides, enzymes nucleic acids and the like.

Nucleic acid microarrays consisting of a multitude of immobilized nucleic acids are revolutionary tools for the generation of genomic information, see, Debouck et al., in supplement to *Nature Genetics*, 21:48-50 (1999). The discussion that follows focuses on the use of BHQs in conjunction with nucleic acid microarrays. This focus is intended to be illustrative and does not limit the scope of materials with which this aspect of the present invention can be practiced.

In another preferred embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are utilized in a microarray format. The BHQs, or species bearing BHQs can themselves be components of a microarray or, alternatively they can be utilized as a tool to screen components of a microarray.

Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a method of screening a microarray. The method includes contacting the members of the microarray with, for example, a BHQ-bearing probe and interrogating the microarray for regions of fluorescence. In an exemplary embodiment, fluorescent regions are indicative of the presence of an interaction between the BHQ-bearing probe and a microarray component. In another version of this method, the microarray is interrogated for regions in which fluorescence is quenched by the BHQ, again indicating the presence of an interaction between the BHQ-bearing probe and a component of the microarray.

In another preferred embodiment, the array comprises immobilized BHQ-bearing donor-acceptor energy transfer probes as the interrogating species. In this embodiment, the probe "turns on" when hybridized to its target. Such arrays are easily prepared and read, and can be designed to give quantitative data. Arrays comprising BHQ-bearing probes are valuable tools for expression analysis and clinical genomic screening.

In another preferred embodiment, the immobilized BHQ-bearing probe is not a donor-acceptor energy transfer probe. A microarray based on such a format can be used to probe for the presence of interactions between an analyte and the immobilized probe by, for example, observing the quenching of analyte fluorescence upon interaction between the probe and analyte.

In a further preferred embodiment, the microarrays comprise n regions that comprise identical or different species (e.g., nucleic acid sequences, bioactive agents). For example, the microarray can comprise a mixture of n regions comprising groups of identical species. In a preferred embodiment, n is a number from 2 to 100, more preferably, from 10 to 1,000,

38

and more preferably from 100 to 10,000. In a still further preferred embodiment, the n regions are patterned on a substrate as n distinct locations in a manner that allows the identity of each of the n locations to be ascertained.

5 In yet another preferred embodiment, the invention also provides a method for preparing a microarray of n BHQ-bearing probes. The method includes attaching BHQ-bearing probes to selected regions of a substrate. A variety of methods are currently available for making arrays of biological macromolecules, such as arrays nucleic acid molecules. The following discussion focuses on the assembly of a microarray of BHQ-bearing probes, this focus is for reasons of brevity and is intended to be illustrative and not limiting.

One method for making ordered arrays of BHQ-bearing 15 probes on a substrate is a "dot blot" approach. In this method, a vacuum manifold transfers a plurality, e.g., 96, aqueous samples of probes from 3 millimeter diameter wells to a substrate. The probe is immobilized on the porous membrane by baking the membrane or exposing it to UV radiation. A 20 common variant of this procedure is a "slot-blot" method in which the wells have highly-elongated oval shapes.

Another technique employed for making ordered arrays of probes uses an array of pins dipped into the wells, e.g., the 96 wells of a microtiter plate, for transferring an array of samples 25 to a substrate, such as a porous membrane. One array includes pins that are designed to spot a membrane in a staggered fashion, for creating an array of 9216 spots in a 22×22 cm area. See, Lehrach, et al., HYBRIDIZATION FINGERPRINTING IN GENOME MAPPING AND SEQUENCING, GENOME ANALYSIS, Vol. 1, 30 Davies et al., Eds., Cold Springs Harbor Press, pp. 39-81 (1990).

An alternate method of creating ordered arrays of probes is analogous to that described by Pirrung et al. (U.S. Pat. No. 5,143,854, issued 1992), and also by Fodor et al., (*Science*, 35 251: 767-773 (1991)). This method involves synthesizing different probes at different discrete regions of a particle or other substrate. This method is preferably used with relatively short probe molecules, e.g., less than 20 bases. A related method has been described by Southern et al. (*Genomics*, 13: 40 1008-1017 (1992)).

Khrapko, et al., *DNA Sequence*, 1: 375-388 (1991) describes a method of making an nucleic acid matrix by spotting DNA onto a thin layer of polyacrylamide. The spotting is done manually with a micropipette.

45 The substrate can also be patterned using techniques such as photolithography (Kleinfield et al., *J. Neurosci.* 8:4098-120 (1998)), photoetching, chemical etching and microcontact printing (Kumar et al., *Langmuir* 10:1498-511 (1994)). Other techniques for forming patterns on a substrate will be 50 readily apparent to those of skill in the art.

The size and complexity of the pattern on the substrate is limited only by the resolution of the technique utilized and the purpose for which the pattern is intended. For example, using microcontact printing, features as small as 200 nm are layered 55 onto a substrate. See, Xia, Y., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:3274-75 (1995). Similarly, using photolithography, patterns with features as small as 1 μm are produced. See, Hickman et al., *J. Vac. Sci. Technol.* 12:607-16 (1994). Patterns which are useful in the present invention include those which include features such as wells, enclosures, partitions, recesses, inlets, outlets, channels, troughs, diffraction gratings and the like.

In a presently preferred embodiment, the patterning is used 60 to produce a substrate having a plurality of adjacent wells, indentations or holes to contain the probes. In general, each of these substrate features is isolated from the other wells by a raised wall or partition and the wells do not readily fluidically communicate. Thus, a particle, reagent or other substance,

US 7,582,432 B2

39

placed in a particular well remains substantially confined to that well. In another preferred embodiment, the patterning allows the creation of channels through the device whereby an analyte or other substance can enter and/or exit the device.

In another embodiment, the probes are immobilized by "printing" them directly onto a substrate or, alternatively, a "lift off" technique can be utilized. In the lift off technique, a patterned resist is laid onto the substrate, and a probe is laid down in those areas not covered by the resist and the resist is subsequently removed. Resists appropriate for use with the substrates of the present invention are known to those of skill in the art. See, for example, Kleinfield et al., *J. Neurosci.* 8:4098-120 (1998). Following removal of the photoresist, a second probe, having a structure different from the first probe can be bonded to the substrate on those areas initially covered by the resist. Using this technique, substrates with patterns of probes having different characteristics can be produced. Similar substrate configurations are accessible through microprinting a layer with the desired characteristics directly onto the substrate. See, Mrkish et al. *Ann. Rev. Biophys. Biomol. Struct.* 25:55-78 (1996).

Spacer Groups

As used herein, the term "spacer group," refers to constituents of BHQ-bearing probes. The spacer group links donor and/or acceptor moieties and other groups to the nucleic acid, peptide or other component of the probe. The spacer groups can be hydrophilic (e.g., tetraethylene glycol, hexaethylene glycol, polyethylene glycol) or they can be hydrophobic (e.g., hexane, decane, etc.).

In a preferred embodiment, using solid supports the immobilized construct includes a spacer between the solid support reactive group and the BHQ analogue. The linker is preferably selected from C₆-C₃₀ alkyl groups, C₆-C₃₀ substituted alkyl groups, polyols, polyethers (e.g., poly(ethyleneglycol)), polyamines, polyamino acids, polysaccharides and combinations thereof.

In certain embodiments, it is advantageous to have the donor and/or acceptor of the probe attached to another polymeric component by a group that provides flexibility and distance from the polymeric component. Using such spacer groups, the properties of the donor and/or acceptor adjacent to another probe component is modulated. Properties that are usefully controlled include, for example, hydrophobicity, hydrophilicity, surface-activity, the distance of the donor and/or BHQ moiety from the other probe components (e.g., carrier molecule) and the distance of the donor from the BHQ.

In an exemplary embodiment, the spacer serves to distance the BHQ from a nucleic acid. Spacers with this characteristic have several uses. For example, a BHQ held too closely to the nucleic acid may not interact with the donor group, or it may interact with too low of an affinity. When a BHQ is itself sterically demanding, the interaction leading to quenching can be undesirably weakened, or it may not occur at all, due to a sterically-induced hindering of the approach of the two components.

When the construct comprising the BHQ is immobilized by attachment to, for example, a solid support, the construct can also include a spacer moiety between the reactive group of the solid support and the BHQ analogue, or other probe component bound to the solid support.

In yet a further embodiment, a spacer group used in the probes of the invention is provided with a group that can be cleaved to release a bound moiety, such as, for example, a BHQ, fluorophore, minor groove binder, intercalating moiety, and the like from the polymeric component. Many cleavable groups are known in the art. See, for example, Jung et al.,

40

Biochem. Biophys. Acta, 761: 152-162 (1983); Joshi et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 265: 14518-14525 (1990); Zarling et al., *J. Immunol.*, 124: 913-920 (1980); Bouizar et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 155: 141-147 (1986); Park et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 261: 205-210 (1986); Browning et al., *J. Immunol.*, 143: 1859-1867 (1989). Moreover a broad range of cleavable, bifunctional (both homo- and hetero-bifunctional) spacer arms are commercially available from suppliers such as Pierce.

An exemplary embodiment utilizing spacer groups is set forth in Formulae VII and VIII, above. In these formulae, R^b is either stable or it can be cleaved by chemical or photochemical reactions. For example, R^b groups comprising ester or disulfide bonds can be cleaved by hydrolysis and reduction, respectively. Also within the scope of the present invention is the use of R^b groups which are cleaved by light such as, for example, nitrobenzyl derivatives, phenacyl groups, benzoin esters, etc. Other such cleavable groups are well-known to those of skill in the art.

Kits

In another aspect, the present invention provides kits containing one or more of the BHQs or BHQ-bearing compositions of the invention. In one embodiment, a kit will include a reactive BHQ derivative and directions for attaching this derivative to another molecule. In another embodiment, the kit includes a BHQ-labeled nucleic acid that optionally is also labeled with a fluorophore and directions for using this nucleic acid in one or more assay formats. Other formats for kits will be apparent to those of skill in the art and are within the scope of the present invention.

The materials and methods of the present invention are further illustrated by the examples which follow. These examples are offered to illustrate, but not to limit the claimed invention.

EXAMPLES

The following Examples illustrate the synthesis and characterization of exemplary species of the invention.

Example 1 sets forth the synthesis of the quencher BH1 and its conversion into a controlled pore glass conjugate. Examples 2 and 3, provide similar details regarding the quenchers BH2 and BH3.

Example 4 sets forth the incorporation of exemplary quenchers of the invention into nucleic acid-based donor-acceptor energy transfer probes. The quenching efficiency of the BHQs in the probes is assessed and compared to that of the art-recognized dark quencher DABCYL.

Example 1

This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH1 and derivatives thereof.

1.1 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-di(2-hydroxyethyl)azobenzene, (BH1 diol), 6

To a rapidly stirred suspension of 25 g (60 mmol) Fast Corinth V salt (Aldrich 22,736-5) in 400 mL of chilled water (ice bath) was added 50 g (276 mmol) N-phenyldiethanolamine dissolved in 400 mL methanol and 300 mL sat'd NaHCO₃ over 20 min. The mixture changed color from yellow to deep red during the course of the addition. The mixture was chilled for an additional 1 hr after addition, then filtered through a medium glass frit. The dark red solid was washed with 300 ml of ice cold water and air dried for 3 days. The

US 7,582,432 B2

41

yield of 6 was 27 g, (91%). TLC rf 0.15 (Silica plate, 5% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2). MALDI M/e 493.11 (Calc'd 492.5). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , δ) 7.9 (d, 2H), 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.45(d, 1H), 7.4(s, 1H), 6.8(d, 2H), 4.0(s, 3H), 3.95(t, 2H), 3.85(t, 2H), 3.7(t, 2H), 3.6(t, 2H), 2.7(s, 3H), 2.5(s, 3H).

1.2 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxytrityl)ethylazobenzene (DMT-BH1), 7

A solution of 25 g (50 mmol) 6 in 400 mL of dry pyridine was stripped to dryness, and 7 g (21 mmol) of DMT-chloride was added in 300 mL of dry pyridine. The solution sat for 3 days at rt, then was stripped to a tar. The black residue was dissolved in 600 mL ethyl acetate, and washed with 300 mL of 1 N aqueous citric acid, followed by a 300 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 wash. The organic layer was dried over MgSO_4 and stripped to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 55 by 8 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 0.5% MeOH, 0.5% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2 . After 1 L of solvent eluted, a gradient to 2% MeOH was run over 4 L. Fractions containing pure 7 (0.42 rf, silica plate, 2% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 2.8 g (17% yield) of 2 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 793.88 (Calc'd 794.5). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , δ) 7.85 (d, 2H), 7.7 (m, 4H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.45(d, 1H), 7.4-7.1 (m, 10H), 6.8(m, 6H), 4.0(s, 3H), 3.85(m, 2H), 3.75 (s, 6H), 3.7(m, 2H), 3.5-3.3(m, 4H), 2.7(s, 3H), 2.5(s, 3H).

1.3 Synthesis of 4-methyl-2-nitrobenzylazo-2'-methyl-5'-nitrobenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-O-(N',N'-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-4',4'dimethoxytrityl)-ethyl)azobenzene, (DMT-BH1 amidite), 8

A solution of 2.8 g (3.5 mmol) of 7 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 1.5 g (5 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 60 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 7. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 200 mL of EtOAc . The organic layer was washed with 100 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 and dried over MgSO_4 . The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 25 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted with a mobile phase of 75% Pet. ether, 23% EtOAc , 2% pyridine. Fractions containing pure 8 (0.67 rf, pre-run silica plate, 50% Pet. ether, 48% EtOAc , 2% pyridine) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 1 g (20% yield) of 8 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 995.5 (Calc'd 994.5).

1.4 Synthesis of BH1-CPG, 9

11 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500 \AA , Biosearch part # BGS-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 , followed by one 50 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 1 g of 8.25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 1 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min.

42

The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 50 mL of acetonitrile, then 50 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac_2O , 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 50 mL portions of CH_2Cl_2 . The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 16 $\mu\text{M/g}$.

Example 2

15 This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH2 and derivatives thereof.

2.1 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2',5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-di (2-hydroxyethyl) azobenzene, (BH2 diol), 10

To a rapidly stirred suspension of 25 g (60 mmol) Fast Black K salt (Aldrich 20,151-0) in 400 mL of chilled water (ice bath) was added 50 g (276 mmol) N-phenyldiethanolamine dissolved in 400 mL methanol and 300 mL sat'd NaHCO_3 over 20 min. The mixture changed color from brown to deep blue during the course of the addition. The mixture was chilled for an additional 1 hr after addition, then filtered through a medium glass frit. The dark blue solid was washed with 300 mL of ice cold water and air dried for 3 days. The yield of 10 was 22 g, (74%). TLC rf 0.2 (Silica plate, 5% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2). MALDI M/e 493.13 (Calc'd 494.4). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , δ) 8.3 (d, 2H), 8.0(d, 2H), 7.85(d, 2H), 7.4(d, 2H), 6.7(m, 2H), 4.1(s, 3H), 3.95(s, 3H), 3.9(t, 2H), 3.7(t, 2H), 3.5(t, 3H).

2.2 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2',5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxytrityl)ethylazobenzene1, (DMT-BH2), 11

40 A solution of 22 g (44 mmol) 10 in 400 mL of dry pyridine was stripped to dryness, and 7 g (21 mmol) of DMT-chloride was added in 300 mL of dry pyridine. The solution sat for 3 days at rt, then was stripped to a tar. The black residue was dissolved in 600 mL ethyl acetate, and washed with 300 mL of 1 N aqueous citric acid, followed by a 300 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO_3 wash. The organic layer was dried over MgSO_4 and stripped to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 55 by 8 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 0.5% MeOH, 0.5% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2 . After 1 L of solvent eluted, a gradient to 2% MeOH was run over 4 L. Fractions containing pure 11 (0.4 rf, silica plate, 2% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH_2Cl_2) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 2.8 g (17% yield) of 11 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 794.2 (Calc'd 796.4). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , δ) 8.3 (d, 2H), 7.9(d, 2H), 7.75(d, 2H), 7.4-7.1(m, 9H), 6.7-6.5(m, 6H), 4.1(s, 3H), 3.95(s, 3H), 3.9-3.6(m, 12H), 3.3(t, 3H).

2.3 Synthesis of 4-nitrobenzylazo-2',5'-dimethoxybenzylazo-4"-N,N-(2-O-(N',N'-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxy-trityl)-ethyl)-azobenzene, (DMT-BH2 amidite), 12

65 A solution of 2.8 g (3.5 mmol) 11 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for sev-

US 7,582,432 B2

43

eral hrs. A solution of 1.5 g (5 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraiso-propyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 60 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 11. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 200 mL of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with 100 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO₃ and dried over MgSO₄. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 25 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted with a mobile phase of 75% Pet. ether, 23% EtOAc, 2% pyridine. Fractions containing pure 12 (0.71 rf, pre-run silica plate, 50% Pet. ether, 48% EtOAc, 2% pyridine) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 1 g (20% yield) of 11 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 996.06 (Calc'd 996.4).

2.4 Synthesis of BH2-CPG, 13

10 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500Å, Biosearch part # BG5-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 50 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂, followed by one 50 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 1 g of 12.25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 1 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 50 mL of acetonitrile, then 50 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac₂O, 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 50 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 50 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂. The material was dried overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 30 µM/g.

Example 3

This Example sets forth the synthesis and characterization of BH3 and derivatives thereof.

3.1 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-di(2-hydroxyethyl) azobenzene) chloride, (BH3 diol), 14

3-amino-7-(diethylamino)-5-phenylphenazium chloride (methylene violet 3RAX, Aldrich 30,750-5), 10 g (26 mmol) was stirred in 200 mL 1 N HCl while in an ice bath. A solution of 2 g NaNO₂ in 20 mL of cold water was added dropwise over 20 min. The solution was stirred for 30 min. N-phenyldiethanolamine, 4.7 g (27 mmol), was dissolved in 100 mL of methanol and added to the methylene violet solution, after the pH was adjusted to 6 with NaOH solution. The solution changed color from violet to dark green. The solution was stirred for 1 hr, then extracted three times with 200 mL of CH₂Cl₂. The aqueous layer was evaporated, and the dark green solid was triturated with 3 200 mL portions of pyridine. The pyridine was evaporated to give 2.9 g (21% yield) of 14 as a dark green solid. (0.85 rf, silica plate, 15% MeOH, 2% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂) MALDI M/e 535.6 (calc'd 535.75).

44

3.2 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-(2-O-(4',4'dimethoxytrityl)ethyl)azobenzene chloride, (DMT-BH3), 15

Compound 14, 2.9 g (5.4 mmol) was dried by stripping with 100 mL dry pyridine, and then re-dissolved in 100 mL dry pyridine along with 2 g (5.9 mmol) of DMT chloride. The mixture sat overnight, and the solvent was stripped. The residue was re-dissolved in 200 mL CH₂Cl₂ and washed with 200 mL 1 M aqueous citric acid. The aqueous layer was back-washed with two 200 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂, and the combined organic layers were evaporated to a tar. The residue was loaded onto a 20 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 2% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂. A gradient to 6% MeOH was run over 3 L. Fractions containing pure 15 (0.9 rf, silica plate, 15% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 0.5 g (11% yield) of 15 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 837.6 (calc'd 836.75)

3.3 Synthesis of 3-diethylamino-5-phenylphenazium-7-(4'-N,N-(2-O-(N',N'-diisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphite)ethyl)-(2-O-(4,4'dimethoxy-trityl)ethyl)azobenzene chloride, (DMT-BH3 amidite), 16

A solution of 0.5 g (0.6 mmol) 15 in 50 mL of dry pyridine was evaporated to dryness and high vacuum applied for several hrs. A solution of 0.5 g (1.7 mmol) of N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-2-cyanoethylphosphane and 20 mg of tetrazole were mixed in 20 mL of dry acetonitrile and added to the flask containing the dried 15. After 2 hrs, the solvent was stripped, and the residue was dissolved in 100 mL of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with 50 mL sat'd aqueous NaHCO₃ and dried over MgSO₄. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue applied to a 15 by 3 cm chromatography column of neutral alumina, 7% by weight water, and eluted first with a mobile phase of 1% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂. A gradient to 6% MeOH was run over 2 L. Fractions containing pure 16 (0.82 rf, pre-run silica plate, 5% MeOH, 1% pyridine in CH₂Cl₂) were pooled and evaporated. The yield was 0.26 g (42% yield) of 16 as a dark foam. MALDI M/e 1037.3 (Calc'd 1036.75).

Synthesis of BH3-CPG, 17

2 g DMT-2,2'-sulfonyldiethanol-succinyl controlled pore glass, 500Å, Biosearch part # BG5-5000, was washed three times with 3% dichloroacetic acid to effect removal of the DMT group. The CPG was washed well with three 20 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂, followed by one 20 mL wash with dry pyridine. The CPG was added to the flask containing 0.26 g of 16.25 mL of dry pyridine was added, and the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, followed by high vacuum for 3 hrs. The dried CPG and amidite were treated with a solution of 0.5 g S-ethyl tetrazole in 10 mL of dry acetonitrile for 20 min. The CPG was washed in a sintered glass funnel twice with 20 mL of acetonitrile, then 20 mL of 0.02 M iodine in 90% THF, 8% water and 2% pyridine were added. After 5 min, the iodine solution was washed out of the CPG with three 20 mL portions of acetonitrile, then a capping solution of 10% Ac₂O, 10% N-methylimidazole and 10% pyridine in THF was added. After 20 min, the solution was washed out of the CPG with three 20 mL portions of acetonitrile, followed by three 20 mL portions of CH₂Cl₂. The material was dried

US 7,582,432 B2

45

overnight under high vacuum. DMT loading determination on the dried material was 12 $\mu\text{M}/\text{g}$.

Example 4

This Example sets forth the preparation and characterization of nucleic acid analogues of exemplary BHQs of the invention. The nucleic acid-BHQ conjugates are compared to a similar conjugate of DABCYL.

The efficiency of donor-acceptor energy transfer (FRET) is inversely proportional to the sixth power of the distance between the donor and acceptor molecules (Stryer, L. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 1978, 47, 819-846). This property can be utilized to monitor hybridization of nucleic acids labeled at one end with a donor fluorophore (reporter) and at the opposite end with an acceptor (quencher) (Parkhurst et al., *Biochemistry* 1995, 34, 285-292). In the absence of a complementary target sequence the dual labeled probe is very flexible and undergoes rapid conformational changes so that the average distance between the donor (D) and acceptor (A) is close enough for efficient FRET to occur. Upon hybridization to complementary target, a rigid DNA duplex is formed separating the D-A pair and reducing the efficiency of transfer. This manifests itself in an increase in the fluorescence intensity of the reporter.

4.1 Synthesis and Characterization of BHQ Probes

To evaluate the efficiency of the Black Hole Quencher dyes (BHQs), the ability of these dyes to quench a series of common fluorophores was compared to the standard quencher dyes DABCYL and TAMRA in a complementation assay. As TAMRA exhibits its own native fluorescence, it can only be used to quench lower wavelength dyes and thus was only used to quench FAM in this assay.

4.1a Materials and Methods

Nucleic acids were synthesized on a Biosearch 8700 automated DNA synthesizer using standard phosphoramidite chemistry. A^{BZ}, C^{AC}, T, and G^{DMF} phosphoramidites were supplied by Chruachem. TAMRA, DABCYL, and BHQ controlled pore glass (CPG) supports from Biosearch Technologies were used for attachment of quencher dyes to the 3' terminus of nucleic acids. 5' fluorophore labeling was accomplished using fluorophore phosphoramidites with the exception of Cy5 which was added as a succinimidyl ester to 5' amino nucleic acids using the manufacturers' protocol. 6-FAM and TFA-aminoethyl amidite were from Biosearch. Cy3 phosphoramidite and Cy5 succinimidyl ester were from Amersham Pharmacia Biotech. Cleavage and deprotection of oligos was carried out in ammonia at 60° C. for 3 hrs, with the exception of 3' TAMRA oligos which were deprotected in 1:3 t-butylamine:H₂O for 8 hours at 60° C., and 3' BH3 oligos which were deprotected for 1 hour at 60° C. in ammonia. Following deprotection, dual labeled probes were evaporated to dryness then resuspended in HPLC grade water and filtered through 0.45 μm filters to prepare for HPLC purification. A two step method of HPLC purification of anion exchange followed by reverse phase HPLC was used to purify all dual labeled probes. Purified probes were analyzed by both anion exchange and reverse phase HPLC. Complementary nucleic acid was purified on a Biosearch Micropure II reverse phase cartridge using the standard protocol.

All fluorescence measurements were taken using a Spectramax Gemini fluorescent microplate reader. Probes were dissolved at 200 nM in a buffer composed of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 50 mM KCl, and 3.5 mM MgCl₂, pH 8.3, both in the presence and absence of a five fold excess of perfectly complimentary nucleic acid. Fluorescein was excited at 470

46

nm and emission was read at 530 nm with a 515 nm cutoff filter in place. Cy3 was excited at 510 nm and read at 567 nm with a 550 nm cutoff filter. Cy5 was excited at 630 nm and read at 660 nm with a 630 nm cutoff filter. Average fluorescent intensity from a set of eight buffer blanks was subtracted from all probe fluorescence measurements before calculation of signal to noise ratios.

The set of nucleic acids displayed in Table 2 was synthesized and rigorously purified by HPLC:

TABLE 2

Dual labeled probes prepared for hybridization assay.			
	Reporter em max (5')	Sequence (5' to 3')	Quencher (3')
15	FAM	518 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC TAMRA TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	
20	FAM	518 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC DABCYL TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	
25	FAM	518 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH1 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	
30	Cy3	573 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC DABCYL TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	
35	Cy3	573 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH1 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	
40	Cy5	678 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC DABCYL TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	
45	Cy5	678 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH2 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	
50	Cy5	678 ATG CCC TCC CCC ATG CCA TCC BH3 TGC G (SEQ ID NO.:1)	

The signal to noise ratio (S:N) of hybridization for each probe was measured in the presence of a five fold molar excess of perfectly complementary nucleic acid. All hybridization assays were performed in a buffer composed of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 50 mM KCl, and 3.5 mM MgCl₂, pH 8.3. S:N was calculated by dividing the fluorescence intensity of the probe in the presence of complement by the fluorescence intensity of the probe alone after subtracting out the fluorescence intensity of the buffer blank from each. All fluorescence measurements were taken in triplicate using a Spectramax Gemini fluorescent plate reader.

4.2 Results

Improved quenching by the BHQs was demonstrated for three widely separated fluorophores. A two fold increase in signal to noise ratio is achieved by replacing DABCYL with BH1 for the fluorescein probe. S:N increases are more striking for the cyanine dye labeled probes, with approximately a

US 7,582,432 B2

47

ten fold increase in S:N observed for the BH2 quenched Cy3 probe and a thirty fold S:N increase for the BH3 quenched Cy5 probe over identical structures quenched with DABCYL. This is consistant with the theory that efficiency of FRET is proportional to the magnitude of overlap between the donor and acceptor (Haugland et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 1969, 63, 23-30). DABCYL, which absorbs maximally at 474 nm, quenches the red shifted reporter dyes with decreasing efficiency, whereas the BHQs can be chosen accordingly to have maximum spectral overlap with the reporter of interest. 10

Data from the hybridization assay is presented in Table 3.

TABLE 3

donor/acceptor	Signal to noise ratios of dual labeled FRET probes								
	Noise			Signal			Average	Average	S:N
#1	#2	#3	#1	#2	#3	Noise	Signal	S:N	
FAMTAM	89.18	91.50	89.54	279.13	277.08	272.78	90.08	276.33	3.07
FAMDAB	89.97	81.03	86.74	348.98	323.82	352.00	85.92	341.61	3.98
FAMBH1	39.24	37.05	38.85	296.53	316.24	311.15	38.38	307.97	8.02
FAMBH2	67.12	66.64	56.79	445.48	415.78	442.75	63.52	434.34	6.84
Cy3DAB	19.66	19.65	19.39	147.70	139.83	154.35	19.57	147.29	7.53
Cy3BH1	1.86	2.09	2.41	140.72	135.20	135.25	2.12	137.06	64.51
Cy3BH2	2.02	1.94	2.08	149.65	148.89	150.40	2.02	149.65	74.15
Cy5/DAB	57.09	59.15	50.50	157.36	176.04	216.59	55.58	183.33	3.30
Cy5/BH2	19.92	21.47	22.53	263.64	288.20	256.07	21.31	269.31	12.64
Cy5/BH3	1.65	2.17	1.55	197.96	210.71	208.06	1.79	205.58	114.79

It is understood that the examples and embodiments described herein are for illustrative purposes only and that various modifications or changes in light thereof will be suggested to persons skilled in the art and are to be included within the spirit and purview of this application and are considered within the scope of the appended claims. All publications, patents, and patent applications cited herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

30 (c) detecting said change in said fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting said nucleic acid target sequence.

2. The method according to claim 1, wherein said detector nucleic acid has a format selected from molecular beacons, scorpion probes, sunrise probes, conformationally assisted probes and TaqMan™ probes.

35 3. The method according to claim 1, wherein said detector nucleic acid has an intramolecularly associated secondary

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 1

```

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 25
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: probe synthetic

<400> SEQUENCE: 1
atgcctccccccatggccatc ctgcg

```

25

What is claimed is:

1. A method for detecting a nucleic acid target sequence, said method comprising:

- (a) contacting said target sequence with a detector nucleic acid; comprising a single-stranded target binding sequence, said detector nucleic acid having linked thereto,
 - i) a fluorophore; and
 - ii) a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl

55 structure which is a member selected from hairpins, stem-loop structures, pseudoknots, triple helices and conformationally assisted structures.

4. The method according to claim 1, wherein said change in fluorescence is detected as an indication of the presence of said target sequence.

5. The method according to claim 1, wherein said fluorescence parameter is detected in-real time.

6. The method according to claim 1, wherein said detector nucleic acid has an intramolecularly base-paired secondary structure which comprises a portion of said target binding sequence.

US 7,582,432 B2

49

7. A method for detecting amplification of a target sequence comprising, in an amplification reaction:

- (a) hybridizing to said target sequence a detector nucleic acid comprising a single-stranded target binding sequence and an intramolecularly associated secondary structure 5' to said target binding sequence, wherein at least a portion of said detector sequence forms a single stranded tail which is available for hybridization to said target sequence, said detector nucleic acid having linked thereto,
 - i) a fluorophore; and
 - ii) a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond,
 wherein said detector nucleic acid is in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between said fluorophore and said quencher when said fluorophore is excited;
- (b) extending said hybridized detector nucleic acid on said target sequence with a polymerase to produce a detector nucleic acid extension product and separating said detector nucleic acid extension product from said target sequence;
- (c) hybridizing a primer to said detector nucleic acid extension product and extending the primer with said polymerase, thereby linearizing said intramolecularly associated secondary structure and producing a change in a fluorescence parameter; and
- (d) detecting said change in said fluorescence parameter, thereby detecting said target sequence.

8. The method according to claim 7, wherein said target sequence is amplified by a method selected from Strand Displacement Amplification, Polymerase Chain reaction 3SR, TMA and NASBA.

9. The method according to claim 7, wherein said secondary structure further comprises a partially or entirely single-stranded restriction endonuclease site.

10. The method according to claim 7, wherein a change in fluorescence intensity is detected.

11. The method according to claim 10, wherein said change in fluorescence intensity is detected in real-time.

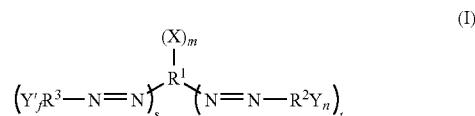
12. The method according to claim 7, wherein said intramolecularly base-paired secondary structure comprises a portion of said target binding sequence.

13. A method of ascertaining whether a first nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid hybridize, said first nucleic acid comprising a quencher of excited state energy having a structure comprising at least three residues selected from aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof, wherein at least two of said residues are covalently linked via an exocyclic diazo bond, covalently linked to said nucleic acid and a second nucleic acid, said method comprising:

- (a) contacting said first nucleic acid with said second nucleic acid;
- (b) detecting an alteration in a fluorescent property of a member selected from said first nucleic acid, said second nucleic acid and a combination thereof, thereby ascertaining whether said hybridization occurs.

14. The method according to claim 13, wherein said second nucleic acid comprises a fluorophore covalently attached thereto.

15. The method according to claim 1, wherein said quencher has a structure according to Formula (I)

50

wherein

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;

X , Y and Y' are members independently selected from reactive functional groups;

f is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when $(f \times s)$ is greater than 1, the Y' groups are the same or different;

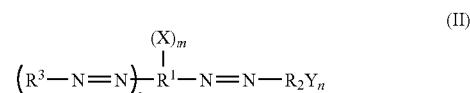
m is a number selected from 1 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different;

n is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when $(n \times t)$ is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different;

s is a number from 0 to 6, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1 the R^3 groups are the same or different; and

t is a number from 1 to 6, inclusive, such that when t is greater than 1 the R^2 groups are the same or different, and when t is 1 and s is 0, a member selected from R^1 , R^2 and combinations thereof is a member selected from substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic aryl and substituted or unsubstituted polycyclic heteroaryl groups.

16. The method according to claim 1, wherein said quencher has a structure according to Formula (II)



wherein

X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups;

m is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different;

n is a number selected from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the Y groups are the same or different;

s is a number selected from 1 to 5, inclusive, such that when s is greater than 1, the R^3 groups are the same or different;

R^1 , R^2 , and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl, and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl,

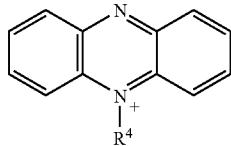
with the proviso that at least two of R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

US 7,582,432 B2

51

17. The method according to claim 16, wherein R² and R³ are members independently selected from aryl and aryl substituted with a member selected from amino, amino derivatives, nitro, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy and combinations thereof;

R¹ includes a structure according to Formula III:

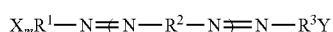


(III)

10

wherein R⁴ is a member selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

18. The method according to claim 1, wherein said quencher has a structure according to Formula IV:



25

wherein X and Y are members independently selected from reactive functional groups;

m is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when m is greater than 1, the X groups are the same or different;

c is a number selected from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R³ groups are the same or different;

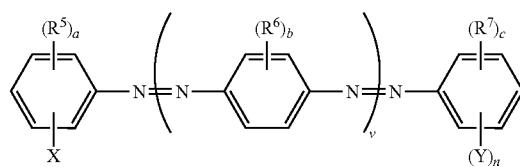
v is a number from 1 to 10 and when v is greater than 1, the R² groups are the same or different;

R¹, R², and R³ are members independently selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted or unsubstituted unsaturated alkyl, with the proviso that at least two of R¹, R² and R³ are members selected from substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl and combinations thereof.

19. The method according to claim 1, wherein said quencher has a structure according to Formula V:

(V)

50



55

wherein

R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from —NR'R'', substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy,

wherein R' and R'' are independently selected from H and substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl;

X and Y are independently selected from the group consisting of reactive functional groups;

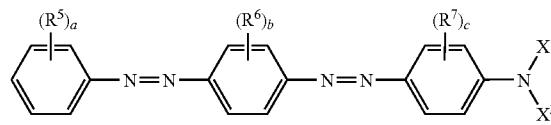
52

m is a number from 1 to 2, inclusive, such that when m is 2, the X groups are the same or different;

n is a number from 0 to 1, inclusive; a is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different; b is a number from 0 to 4, inclusive, such that when (vxb) is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different; c is a number from 0 to 5, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and v is a number from 1 to 10, inclusive, such that when v is greater than 1, the value of b on each of the b phenyl rings is the same or different.

20. The method according to claim 1, wherein said quencher has a structure according to Formula VI:

(VI)



wherein

R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are members independently selected from amine, alkyl amine, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, nitro, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy;

a is a number between 0 and 5, inclusive, such that when a is greater than 1, the R⁵ groups are the same or different;

b is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when b is greater than 1, the R⁶ groups are the same or different;

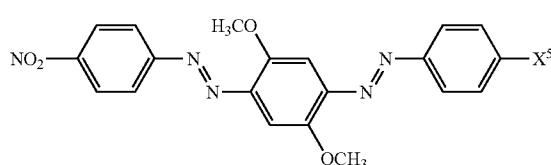
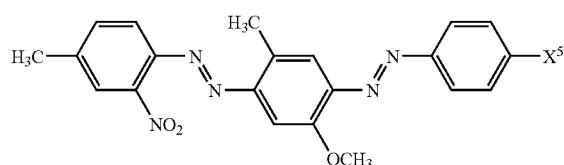
c is a number between 0 and 4, inclusive, such that when c is greater than 1, the R⁷ groups are the same or different; and

X¹ and X² are members independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl or C₁-C₆ substituted alkyl, —OH, —COOH, —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³)(NR'R'')

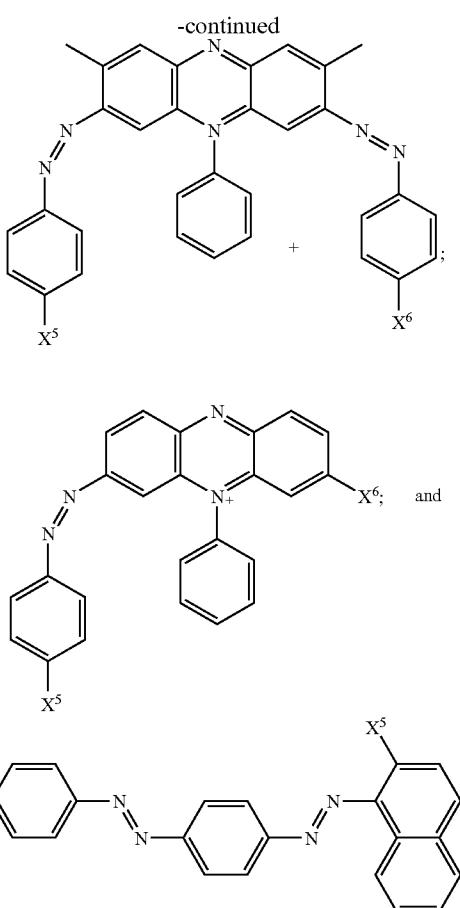
wherein

R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl.

21. The method according to claim 1, wherein said quencher has a structure which is a member selected from:



US 7,582,432 B2

53**54**

wherein

X^5 and X^6 are members independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_6 alkyl, —OR', —COOR', —NR'R'', —SH, —OP(OX³)N(X⁴)₂, in which R' and R'' are members independently selected from the group consisting of H, and alkyl or substituted alkyl, with the proviso that at least one of X^5 and X^6 is a reactive functional group

5

wherein

X^3 and X^4 are members independently selected from CN and substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_6 alkyl.

10

22. The method according to claim 1, wherein said nucleic acid target sequence is in a mixture.

15

23. The method according to claim 1, wherein said nucleic acid target sequence is part of a mixture, and wherein said mixture further comprises a second detector nucleic acid comprising a second single-stranded target binding sequence, wherein said second detector nucleic acid hybridizes to a second target sequence, said second detector nucleic acid having linked thereto,

20

i) a second fluorophore; and

ii) a second quencher of excited state energy;

25

wherein said second detector nucleic acid is in a conformation allowing donor-acceptor energy transfer between said second fluorophore and said second quencher when said fluorophore is excited.

30

24. The method according to claims 1, 2, 3, 7 and 23, wherein said detector nucleic acid is an oligonucleotide.

35

* * * * *